# THE ECONOMIC IMPACT OF CHANGING WATER QUALITY ON IRRIGATED AGRICULTURE IN THE LOWER VAAL AND RIET RIVERS

MF Viljoen · RJ Armour

WRC Report No. 947/1/02

Water Research Commission

# THE ECONOMIC IMPACT OF CHANGING WATER QUALITY ON IRRIGATED AGRICULTURE IN THE LOWER VAAL AND RIET RIVERS

FINAL REPORT

to the

**Water Research Commission**

by

**M.F. Viljoen and R.J. Armour**

**Department of Agricultural Economics**

**UNIVERSITY OF THE FREE STATE**

**November 2002**

WRC Report No. 947/1/02

ISBN No. 1-86845-951-9

**Disclaimer**

This report emanates from a project financed by the Water Research Commission (WRC) and is approved for publication. Approval does not signify that the contents necessarily reflect the views and policies of the WRC or the members of the project steering committee, nor does mention of trade names or commercial products constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The research in this report emanated from a project funded by the Water Research Commission and entitled:

THE ECONOMIC IMPACT OF CHANGING WATER QUALITY ON IRRIGATED AGRICULTURE IN THE LOWER VAAL AND RIET RIVERS

The Steering Committee responsible for this project, consisted of the following persons:

| | |
|---|---|
| Dr GR Backeberg | Water Research Commission (Chairman) |
| Mr HM Du Plessis | Water Research Commission |
| Prof MF Viljoen | Department of Agricultural Economics, University of the Free State |
| Prof LK Oosthuizen | Department of Agricultural Economics, University of the Free State |
| Prof CC du Preez | Department of Soil Science, University of the Free State |
| Mr JJ Janse van Rensburg | Department of Agriculture, Glen |
| Dr J van der Merwe | Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Bloemfontein region |
| Ms M Hinsch | Directorate Water Quality Management, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry |
| Dr J Oberholzer | Urban-Econ, Pretoria |
| Mr W Bruwer | Orange-Vaal Irrigation Board, Douglas |
| Mr B van Bergen | Orange-Vaal Irrigation Board, Douglas |
| Mr B Grové | Department of Agricultural Economics, University of the Free State |
| Dr HJ van der Spuy | Water Research Commission (Committee Secretary) |
| Mrs CM Smit | Water Research Commission (Co-ordinator: Committee Services) |

The financing of the project by the Water Research Commission and the contribution of the members of the Steering Committee is gratefully acknowledged.

This project was only possible with the co-operation of many individuals and institutions. The authors therefore wish to record their sincere thanks to persons who directly or indirectly contributed to this research.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## LIST OF TABLES

## LIST OF FIGURES

## ACRONYMS, TERMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

**WRC** Water Research Commission

**DWAF** Department of Water Affairs and Forestry

**GWK** The old Griqualand West Co-operative, now GWK Ltd.

**SALMOD** Salinity and Leaching Model for optimal Irrigation Development

**OVIB** Orange Vaal Irrigation Board

Sub-areas[1] of the OVIB:

**OL** Olierivier (from Soutpansdrift in the Lower Riet River to the Vaal Riet confluence) - Sub-area 1

**VL** Vaallus (from De Bad in the Lower Vaal River to the Vaal Riet confluence) - Sub-area 2

**AT** Atherton (northern side of the Lower Vaal River below the Vaal Barrage wall) - Sub-area 3

**BL** Bucklands (southern side of the Lower Vaal River below the Vaal Barrage wall) - Sub-area 4

**NB** New-Bucklands (southern side of the Lower Vaal River below Bucklands) - Sub-area 5

Water quality terms

**Water quality** High concentrations of inorganic salts have been identified as the main water quality problem for irrigation in the study area; thus, unless otherwise specified, the term water quality as used in this document refers to the salinity status of the irrigation water measured in EC or TDS.

**ECiw** Electrical conductivity of the irrigation water (measured in mS/m)

**ECe** Electrical conductivity of the saturated soil extract (measured in mS/m)

**TDS** Total dissolved solids (mg/l)

**SAR** Sodium adsorption ratio

Definitions

**CEB** - **Crop Enterprise Budget**. The CEBs set up in this report incorporate all crop enterprise income minus all directly allocatable costs, and are set up to per hectare gross margin (GM) level.

**GM** - **Gross Margin.** The GM for the enterprise referred to is the gross value of production for that enterprise minus all the directly allocatable costs. In this report fuel and lubrication, and maintenance and

[1] Olierivier, Vaallus, Atherton and Bucklands are descriptive names used to define sub-areas of the OVIB study area.

repairs have been allocated, but permanent labour not, only temporary labour. Permanent labour is included in the fixed cost component.

**NFI** - **Net Farm Income.** The NFI is the total gross margin (TGM) minus fixed costs.

**TGMASC** - **Total Gross Margin Above Specified Costs.** In SALMOD the TGMASC generated is at case study farm level and is the difference between all farm income and allocatable production costs, including water, electricity, an interest component and harvesting costs, as well as the annualised capital repayment costs of management options brought into the optimal solution. The specified costs include all annual non-allocatable costs, and is a constant in SALMOD, obtained from the financial analysis survey. TGMASC is equivalent to net farm income (NFI) excluding the depreciation component.

**Shadow price / Dual value / Reduced costs** - Used interchangeably to indicate the marginal value of a resource i.e. what the user of the resource can afford to pay for one extra unit of the resource. If the resource is not constraining, the shadow price will be zero; if constraining, then a positive value and if the resource is forced into use, then a marginal cost can arise, indicated by a negative dual value.

# EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

## INTRODUCTION

In the course of economic growth and development, there is an increasing use of water and also water return flows, which contributes to the gradual deterioration of water quality. This applies in particular also to the Vaal River system, where water quality (salinity) worsens as river flow reduces, but improves again with floods and good rains. These observations are pronounced below the confluence of the Riet and the Harts Rivers, indicating that irrigation itself, contributes to declining water quality. Although water quality does not worsen consistently over time, but fluctuates inter-seasonally and between wet and dry years, the irrigability of soils are affected as a result of accumulation of salts, which in turn impacts on the sustainability of crop production.

Seasonal or cyclical decline in water quality contributes to both private and external costs. Private costs involve e.g. artificial drainage, amelioration and application of additional water to leach salts while external costs refer to e.g. increasing salt loads in down stream river reaches. The causes and consequences of deteriorating water quality can be managed by adapting on-farm production practices and by introducing policy instruments such as pollution charges or limits.

## PROBLEM STATEMENT

In the Lower Vaal and Riet Rivers, rapidly fluctuating and generally poor irrigation water salinity has raised concern about the long-term financial sustainability of irrigation farming due to reduced yields in certain crops and the withdrawal of other more profitable crops. The financial feasibility of irrigation farming is further under pressure due to the current economic conditions and mounting pressure to use water more efficiently.

In previous salinity research irrigation water quality was relatively constant and methodologies used to calculate the impact of water quality on crop yield assumed constant water quality throughout the growing season. This research therefore had to develop a methodology for determining the effect of fluctuating irrigation water quality.

The Orange-Vaal Irrigation Board (OVIB) which serves farmers irrigating from the Lower Vaal and Riet Rivers, has 178 irrigation farmer members communally holding 8097 ha of irrigation rights of which nearly one quarter (1861 ha) are either slightly or severely affected by waterlogging or salinisation. 49% of the land irrigated is either medium or low potential irrigation land, 28% of the area is flood irrigated and 70% sprinkler irrigated with the trend being conversion to centre pivot irrigation (Van Heerden *et al*, 2000). Centre pivot irrigation allows far more efficient irrigation scheduling than flood irrigation, but this reduces the amount of unintentional leaching that has kept soil salinisation at bay in the past.

Salinity management options such as intentional leaching have to be weighed against other salinity management options such as accepting a lower yield or changing the composition of the crops planted. If intentional leaching were found to be the optimal management option, the resulting irrigation returnflows would also have to be dealt with. Furthermore, to apply intentional leaching, costly artificial drainage is required, especially in soils prone to waterlogging.

## STUDY AREA

A schematic representation of the hydrological system impacting upon the study area is shown in Figure 1. It can be deducted that the area is highly controlled and has a multitude of factors that interact to determine the water quality in the study area. The high level of control does however have the advantage of insuring an almost certain annual water quantity.

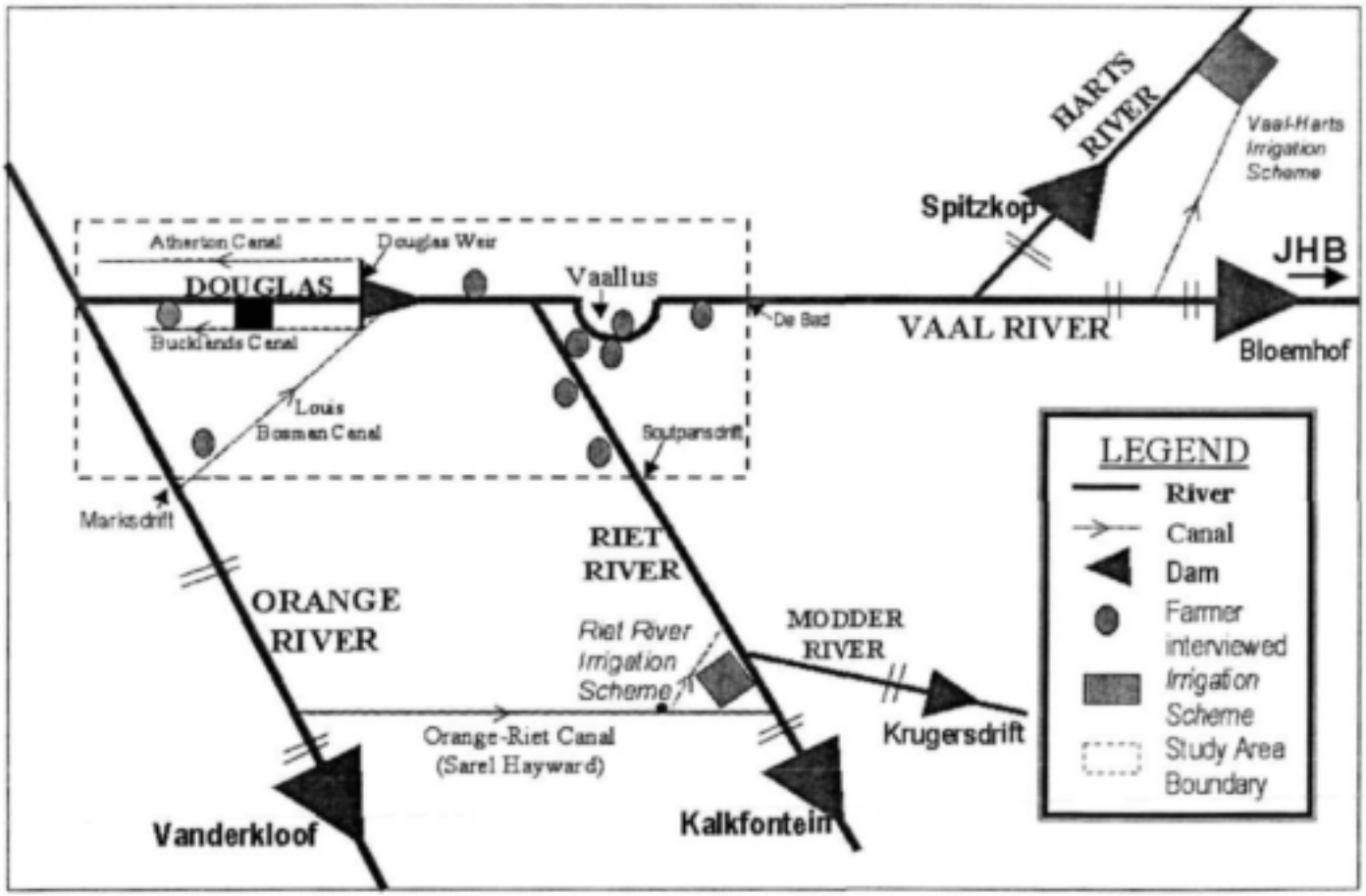



**Figure 1. A schematic representation of the positioning of the OVIB within the regional hydrology**

The OVIB has subdivided its service area into five sub-regions, each receiving a different average water quality as a result of being differently influenced by alternative regional level water management options. The soil types in the five sub-regions also differ markedly. The first sub-region, known as the Olierivier sub-region, includes all farmers irrigating from the Riet River; from the Vaal/Riet confluence to Soutpansdrift, the eastern boundary of the study area. The Second sub-region includes all farmers irrigating from the Vaal River between De Bad, the northern boundary of the study area, and the Douglas Weir. These are predominantly the Vaallus irrigation farmers, but also include farmers below the Vaal/Riet confluence, down to the Douglas Weir. The area below the Vaal/Riet confluence is not only influenced by the addition of very poor quality Riet River water, but also by 'pure' Orange River water pumped in via the Orange-Vaal (Louis Bosman) Canal. This results in two distinctly different water bodies that do not readily mix. The third and fourth sub-regions include the predominantly smallholding farms irrigating from the Bucklands and Atherton Canals that receive 'mixed' Orange River water. The fifth sub-region comprises newly established farms irrigating with Orange River water out of the Louis

Bosman Canal. As these farms are producing on relatively virgin soils (only in their 5th production season) and irrigating with "pure" Orange River water, they provide a good control for this water quality study.

## RESEARCH AIMS

The main aim of this research project was to develop and apply models to determine the financial and economic viability of irrigation farming in the Lower Vaal and Riet Rivers, with specific aims to:

- evaluate the relationship between changing water quality (salinity level), soil conditions and crop production;
- determine the impact on yield, crop choice, agronomic and water management practices, expected income and costs;
- develop models for typical farms in different river reaches, and apply these models to test the outcome of alternative scenarios regarding internal salinity management practices and external policy measures.

## METHODOLOGY

This research proceeded as follows to achieve the aims:

- The term water quality was first defined and the key problematic constituents in the Lower Vaal and Riet rivers were identified as irrigation water salinity and the resulting irrigated soil salinisation.
- The study area was delineated as the OVIB service area.
- A pilot survey was conducted to determine the magnitude and distribution of the problem and to identify case study farmers.

Based on the results of the pilot survey conducted in the study area, five case study farmers were selected, one from each of the different sub-areas of the OVIB. The case study farmers were representative of their sub-areas with regard to the hectares of irrigation water rights held, and jointly, also sufficiently representative of the OVIB region.

With the contradicting aims of improved water use efficiency and increased leaching for salinity management, the importance of a financial optimisation model was evident to solve the apparent paradox between saving water due to it's scarcity value and "wasting" water to leach out salts that build up in soils through the process of irrigation.

SALMOD (Salinity And Leaching Model for Optimal irrigation Development) was developed in GAMS (General Algebraic Modelling System). Using a linear programming model various management options and possible crops are weighed up against each other to find the profit maximising combination of crops and management options under different water quality (salinity) and external policy scenarios. Though not written in a user-friendly format, SALMOD is a generic model but requires a certain amount of initial setting up before being applied elsewhere. SALMOD is static, optimising only over one year; January to December (i.e. two production seasons) and relies on various assumptions, previously developed methodologies (e.g. Maas & Hoffmann (1977) salinity threshold and gradient values) and is more mechanistic than empirical.

The management options built into SALMOD are the appropriate leaching fraction to implement, and crop yield to accept for the optimal crop / resource combination calculated. The fixed capital management options included in SALMOD are the installation of artificial drainage, the change of irrigation system and the building of on-farm storage / evaporation dams for return-flow management.

To leach effectively, soils should have a good infiltration rate till beyond the root zone of the crop planted. In heavy soils and where waterlogging occurs artificial drainage is required - the heavier the soils, the greater the costs of artificial drainage installation. Thus the benefits and costs of leaching need to be quantified to be able to justify the capital expenses involved in relation to the soil and water quality degradation caused. At farm level SALMOD tests four management options:

1. whether to accept a lower yield, or
2. use extra water to leach salts out of the root zone,
3. the ability to pay to receive water of a better quality, and
4. the selection of the optimal cropping combination to match resource and salinity conditions.

The model consists of a simulation section in which, from a basic crop budget for each of the main crops grown in the study area, crop enterprise budgets are simulated for a range of soil types, irrigation technologies, water salinity levels, soil drainage abilities, leaching fractions and expected yields. The resulting net returns from the various cropping combinations are then incorporated into the linear programming optimisation section where the optimal crop enterprise combination is chosen, subject to various constraints such as land size, soil permeability, water price and availability and best management practice crop rotational constraints. The model also makes provision for a farmer to exceed his water quota by charging for increasing water volume application increments at an increasing block rate tariff structure as is done in practise. Also where the annualised costs of artificial drainage installation and alternative irrigation systems are offset by the increased returns they could generate, this option is automatically implemented in the model if activated.

**MAIN RESULTS**

Results show optimal enterprise composition under various water quality (salinity) situations. Artificial drainage installation and leaching are financially justified under certain water/soil quality scenarios. The results are also a strong motivation for a change in the current water pricing and quota allocation system used in the study area and elsewhere in South Africa. For a detailed discussion on the results see Chapter 5.

Useful data generated by SALMOD for use in environmental impact assessment are the estimated volumes of salt loaded return flows that either leach into groundwater aquifers or are returned into the river system as a "diffuse pollution source". The model gives a good indication of a farmer's specific contribution to the diffuse or non-point source pollution problem. The economic effects of constraining return flows and the effects of water pricing policy on the volume of return flows are also determined.

The shadow prices (Marginal Value Product) produced by the linear programming model indicate the price that resources should be to be incorporated into the optimal enterprise combination - for instance, the price that a

farmer can afford to pay for water of a certain quality. Results clearly indicate that irrigation waters of different qualities are different commodities for which different rates should be charged.

The % reduction in TGMASC from the long-term average ECiw (74 mS/m) to the worst expected Vaal River ECiw as predicted by Du Preez *et al, (*2000) for 2020 (159 mS/m), is 84% and 58% for the small farmers from Bucklands and Atherton respectively, between 13% and 16% for the Olierivier farmer, depending on whether the Vaal River of the Riet River has the major impact, 1% for the large and financially strong Vaallus farmer and 3% for the small yet resource strong New Bucklands farmer (see Figure 5.10). These results clearly show that the small and resource poor farmers will be the most affected by irrigation water salinity deterioration. Farming profitability of small farmers drops more rapidly than for larger farms, and by ECiw levels of 328 mS/m the smaller farms go out of production, while the larger farms are not as dramatically affected. One of the reasons for this is the limited crop choice that the smaller farmers currently plant due to management, labour and mechanisation constraints, and their generally poor resource endowment.

Scenario results from SALMOD further show that:

- Leaching is financially viable for all case study farmers
- Accepting lower yields on soils with insufficient leaching capacity is also financially viable
- For farmers with a limited area of well drained soils it can be financially viable to install artificial drainage
- The option of building on-farm storage dams when returnflows are constrained to 100 mm per hectare water rights held, is financially infeasible for all case-study farms and for all scenarios
- It is not financially viable for farmers to replace their current irrigation systems with more efficient systems, but in some instances with systems that can apply a greater leaching fraction
- At the worst-case scenario salinity conditions, farmers with below 60 ha water rights, and who don't grow cotton, will go out of production.

SALMOD has proved to be a valuable farm level salinity management tool. SALMOD is also potentially useful at regional and national level for determining the farm level financial impacts of various water quality and quantity scenarios where the farmers are affected by irrigation water salinity.

**ACHIEVEMENT OF THE RESEARCH AIMS**

The main aim of developing and applying models to determine the long-term financial and economic viability of irrigation farming in the Lower Vaal River area was achieved; results generated by SALMOD for water quality scenarios for 2020 calculated by Du Preez *et al* (2000) indicate that at the worst-case scenario of receiving Spitskop Dam irrigation water, the smaller part-time farmers go totally out of production, while the large farm studied at Vaallus was not as drastically affected, as was the relatively new, resource well endowed farm at New Bucklands. The Olierivier case study at even the predicted irrigation water salinity for the Riet River could still generate an income from production, but it did not cover the fixed expenses.

The specific aims of evaluating the relationship between changing water quality, soil conditions and crop production were thoroughly achieved and new methodologies developed to incorporate the biophysical relationships of irrigating with fluctuating saline irrigation water into an economic routine in SALMOD.

SALMOD was also applied to test the outcome of alternative scenarios regarding internal water quality management practices such as determining the profit maximising crop enterprise combination while optimising the allocation of cropping area according to, irrigation system leaching ability and soil drainage ability.

External policy measures modelled in SALMOD were the impact of increasing the water price, the effect of putting a constraint on irrigation returnflows and the determination of the farm level affordability of artificial drainage installation, and the building of on-farm storage dams to control irrigation return flows.

A qualitative assessment of the external policy measures revealed that by implementing policy constraining return flows, river and groundwater quality should be improved and prevented from deteriorating further. Under these improved water quality conditions the return flows from the resulting optimal crop compositions could be less than the maximum specified in the constraint, making the return flows constraint no longer necessary once farmers are using and managing their on-farm storage dams properly. This constraint is however initially required to get farmers to install drainage and build on-farm storage dams. Constraining irrigation returnflows must be coupled with the incentives of artificial drainage subsidisation and on-farm storage dam subsidisation.

## FURTHER RESEARCH NEEDS / SHORTCOMINGS OF THIS RESEARCH PROJECT

The dynamics of water -use, -pollution and -control are so tightly interwoven by a multitude of external factors that the traditional style of mono-disciplinary research is no longer suited to achieve overall satisfactory results (McKinney et al. 2000). To proactively manage and implement policy to anticipate problems and sustainably introduce change, the correct research tools are necessary.

By understanding the full dynamics and interactions between irrigation water quality and the soil salinity status on crop yield over irrigated time, mistakes made in the past by choosing unsustainable irrigation sites can be prevented. Furthermore the impact of various natural or artificial (e.g. policy mechanism) scenarios on existing schemes could be more accurately modelled, leading to increased economic efficiency and sustainability of the irrigation industry as a whole. However "current USDA Salinity Laboratory evidence suggests these interactions are far more complex than originally thought. .... Rhoades, the doyen of soil/plant/salinity interactions, contends that no one has succeeded in combining all the refinements necessary to overcome the inherent problems of relatively simple salt balance models and geophysical sensors, to address the enormous field variability of infiltration and leaching rates" (Blackwell, et al. 2000).

Current literature and research on salinity management in irrigation agriculture also fails to capture the stochastic nature of inter-seasonal irrigation water quality as well as the cumulative economic and sustainability effects of irrigating with stochastic water quality levels. "Further limitations for setting criteria for salinity include: (i) the need to make assumptions about the relationship between soil saturation extract salinity (for which yield response data is available) and soil solution salinity. (ii) the deviation of the salinity of the soil saturation extract from the mean soil profile salinity, to which crops would respond. (iii) The criteria for crop salt tolerance do not consider differences in crop tolerance during different growth stages" (DWAF, 1996).

The water quality problem was initially perceived with the main variable being the water quality changes of in stream irrigation water. DWAF data recorded over many years was studied and incorporated into models, but the essence of the problem remained unresolved. This being the indirect and long-term accumulation effects of

irrigation water carried constituents within irrigated soils and their underlying water tables, and the effects of the resulting returnflows from these soils and groundwater on downstream irrigation water quality.

## POTENTIAL USERS OF THE RESEARCH RESULTS

Examples of the importance of the results of this research for irrigators, the OVIB and policy makers are:

***For the irrigation farmer the results are important***

- to see how productivity gains can be made with existing resources through available management techniques,
- to highlight the importance of leaching and evaluate the financial feasibility of installing artificial drainage,
- to help in the decision of replacing or improving an old irrigation system, and
- to highlight the importance of irrigation return flow management and options for on-farm storage.

***Important decision making data for the OVIB are***

- what prices to charge farmers for water of different qualities,
- to determine the water transfer costs and water quality benefits of the various water transfer schemes, and
- to indicate to what extent a volumetric water rights allocation system would be better than the current system based on per hectare water rights held.

***At a national level this research can be useful in providing an indication of***

- the value of the dilution effect of Orange River water,
- the importance of leaching in irrigation and the need for subsidisation of artificial drainage,
- the need for management options or controls of irrigation return flows, and
- the right incentives for the promotion of leaching as a salinity management tool and at the same time the careful management of the resulting leachate.

# CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

*We shall never understand the natural environment until we see it as a living organism.*
*Land can be healthy or sick, fertile or barren, rich or poor, lovingly nurtured or bled white.*
*Today you can murder land for private profit.*
*You can leave the corpse for all to see and nobody calls the cops.*
***Paul Brooks: The Pursuit of Wilderness***

## 1.1. PROBLEM STATEMENT

In the course of economic growth and development, there is an increasing use of water and thus also returnflows, which contribute to fluctuation and the gradual deterioration of water quality. This applies in particular to the Vaal River system, where water quality worsens as river flow decreases, but improves again with floods. These observations are more pronounced below the confluence of the Riet and the Harts Rivers (Du Preez *et al*, 2000), which indicates that irrigation itself contributes to the fluctuations in water quality. Even if water quality does not worsen progressively over time, it is expected that the irrigability of soils could be affected, which in turn could impact on the financial sustainability of crop production.

There are clear indications that the tariff of water for all uses - including irrigation - will be adjusted upwards to better reflect the cost of supply according to Backeberg *et al, (*1996). The water quality problem, together with the current "price-cost squeeze" effect, has led to the questioning of the long-term sustainability of current irrigation practices in the OVIB region. The price currently charged for irrigation water is far below that paid by industry and municipal users and farmers, too, are not accountable for the returnflows coming off their lands. The National Water Act of 1998, however, addresses these issues and thus the need for functional models to help guide policy in the right direction, as well as to prepare farmers for the possible impacts of various water pricing and supply scenarios.

Seasonal or cyclical changes in water quality contribute to both private and external costs. Private costs involve *inter alia* artificial drainage, amelioration and application of additional water to leach salts while external costs refer to, for example, increasing salt loads in down stream river reaches. The rapid fluctuation in the quality of water, especially in the Lower Riet River arm makes crop production most unpredictable, leading to instability in the region. This has resulted in crop choice away from crops with the highest returns towards crops with the most predictable returns under the current water quality situation. Because the Lower Vaal River operates within a closed system (Du Preez *et al*, 2000:5) and because there are no restrictions on agricultural returnflows, all leachate that does result from either over irrigation, distribution losses or leaching, returns into the river system, thereby exacerbating the problem. The concentration of salts could eventually lead to a dramatic change in agricultural practices in the area if the problem should persist.

The question that therefore arises is: to what level can the causes and consequences of fluctuating water quality be managed by adapting on-farm production practices and by introducing policy instruments, and which farm, regional and policy level management options are most suitable for addressing the water quality problem in the Lower Vaal and Riet Rivers?

## 1.2. AIMS OF THIS RESEARCH

The main aim of this research is to develop and apply models to determine the long-term financial and economic viability of irrigation farming in the Lower Vaal River area.

Specific aims are to:

- evaluate the relationship between changing water quality, soil conditions and crop production;
- determine the impact on yield, crop choice, agronomic and water management practices, expected income and costs;
- develop models for typical farms in different river reaches; and
- apply the models to test the outcome of alternative scenarios regarding internal water quality management practices and external policy measures.

## 1.3. THE DELINEATION OF THE RESEARCH

Figure 1.1 indicates the main focus of this research as indicated by the path of the solid line. The other activities included in the flow chart along the broken lines, delineate the scope of this research. No forestry, and very little aquaculture or intensive agricultural production systems are practised in the area, and such systems will therefore not be included in this research. The effects of water quality on livestock production have been taken into account in Gouws *et al,* (1998:4), which states that the impact of Vaal River water salinity (even up to a TDS of 1200 ppm) will not directly influence the health or performance of livestock or game, but will rather manifest through indirect factors, such as the cost of production feed. Wheat, maize and lucerne are produced as cash crops and are not kept on the farm for livestock feed. No intensive livestock activities are thus included in this research.

In the study area it is mainly seasonal irrigated crop production that is affected by the poor water quality. Orchards have only recently been established as a long-term strategy to curb the effects of poor water quality and, according to the farmers interviewed, no yield reduction from vines takes place.

Factors influencing soil salinity, the management options that exist to prevent and control soil salinity and the effects on crops are dealt with in Du Preez *et al, (*2000). Yield reduction as a result of poor and fluctuating irrigation water quality through identified soil, crop and water interactions are then expressed in this research in financial and economic terms to determine the farm level impact.

When interpreting the financial and economic outcome, the secondary effects resulting from the change in production practices and management options also need to be taken into account. For example, the increased salinity of returnflows resulting from increased leaching and an expansion of the artificially drained area will result in down-stream environmental degradation and other socio-economic effects that need to be taken into consideration. It is of the utmost importance to accurately identify and also determine the secondary effects of recommendations based on the model results with a view to guaranteeing the sustainability of implementing the recommended course of action.

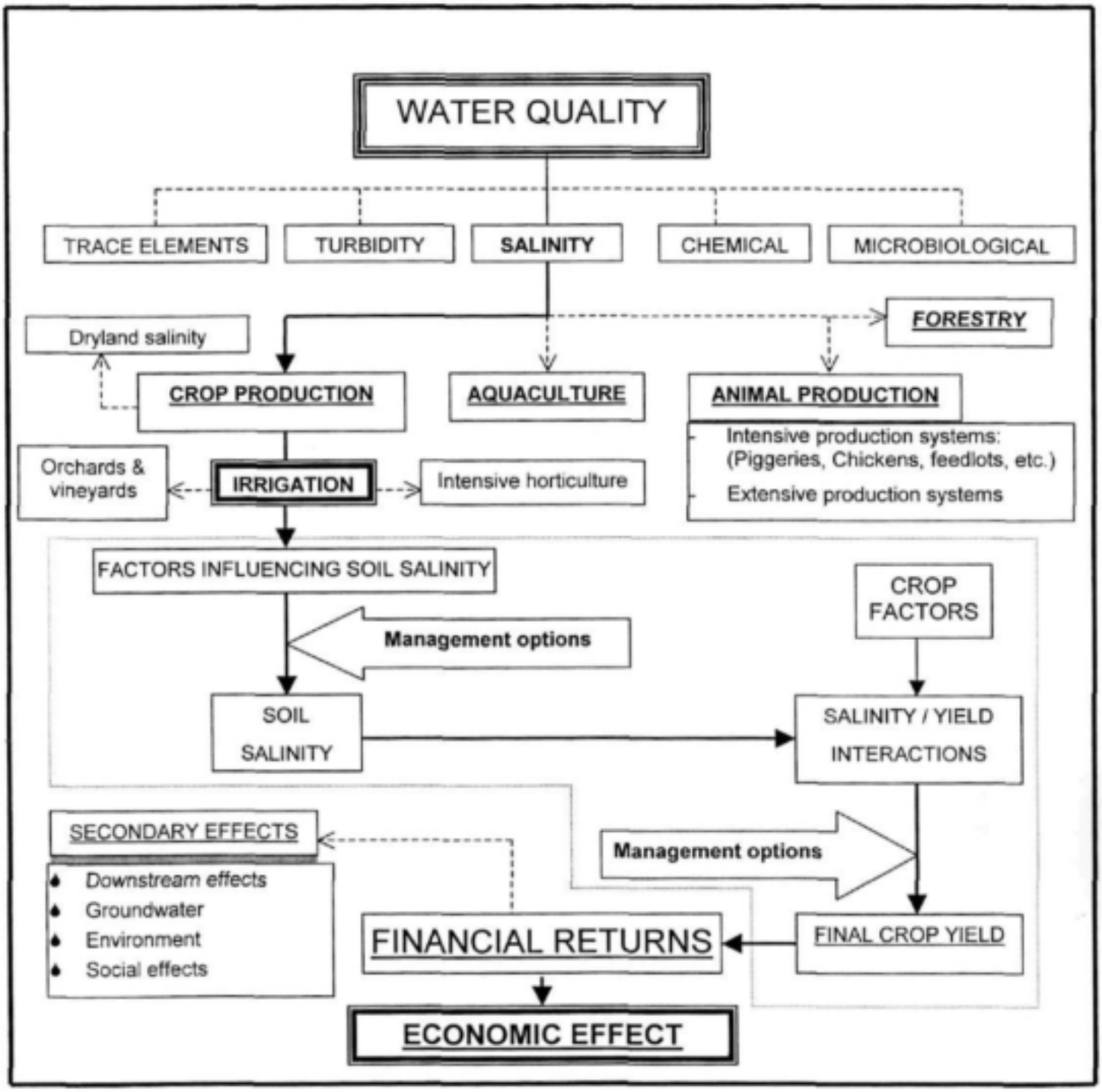



**Figure 1.1 A schematic layout of the focus of this research within the broader water quality spectrum (Adapted from Basson *et al*, 1997:3)**

## 1.4. THE IMPORTANCE OF THIS RESEARCH

Global climate change and the imminent threat of droughts or floods, necessitate the continued existence of irrigated agriculture because of the stability of supply it contributes to national food security. In Sub-Saharan Africa the potential irrigated area is estimated at 33 million ha with the currently irrigated area accounting for only 13% of

this. With Sub-Saharan Africa having by far the highest population growth rate in the world (2.9% per annum) compared with the world average of 1.5%, food shortages in this region loom in the not too distant future (Seckler *et al*, 1999). Mechanised, water efficient, irrigation agriculture is a potential solution to ensuring the nutritional needs and stability of Southern Africa. Tremendous pressure will however be placed on expanding the potentially irrigated area and increasing the productivity of existing schemes to meet nutritional needs. This could be at a disastrous cost to the environment and hence on the sustainability of such schemes, if the necessary precautions are not taken.

In a report by Seckler *et al*, (1999) titled Water Scarcity in the Twentieth Century, South Africa is classified under category 1; these countries face absolute water scarcity and will not be able to meet water needs in the year 2025. Water use efficiency in irrigation agriculture will thus become crucial as the per capita demand for water increases (Basson, *et al*, 1997). Currently irrigation agriculture in Sub-Saharan Africa is by far the largest user of stored water, using 83%, and in South Africa 51% (Backeberg *et al*, 1996:4). With the total water demand exceeding supply before 2020, industry and urban users in South Africa are going to be competing strongly for this most valuable resource. There are clear indications according to Backeberg *et al*, (1996:12), that the price of water for all uses, including irrigation, will be adjusted upwards to better reflect the cost of supply or perhaps even its value. The "price-cost squeeze" experienced by farmers over the past few decades, recent drastic fuel price increases and the increasing cost of labour further jeopardise the economic sustainability of irrigation agriculture, an industry so crucial to socio-economic stability in many rural areas.

Water of a very high quality, diverted from the Orange River into the Lower Vaal and Riet Rivers has a very important dilution effect, improving the water quality in the rivers markedly. With the possible diversion of Orange River Water via the Lesotho Highlands Water Scheme into the Vaal River for higher value industrial and urban use, the reduction in the dilution effect could hasten the pace of soil salinisation in the Lower Vaal and Riet Rivers and also lower downstream in the Orange River.

In South Africa alone, 1995 data reveal that about 110 000 ha of irrigated land was affected by waterlogging and/or salinisation. In the Orange Vaal Irrigation Board (OVIB) service area, the study area on which this research is based, 13% of the 8 091 ha irrigation water rights allocated in the OVIB area are slightly affected by salinisation and waterlogging to the extent that agricultural production can still take place, but that the production potential and/or choice is restricted, and a further 10% of the OVIB area is severely affected to such an extent that agricultural production can no longer take place without special remediation actions such as artificial drainage or gypsum application being applied (Van Heerden *et al*, 2000). With nearly a quarter of the irrigated area in the study area thus being affected by salinisation and a trend of declining water quality (Du Preez *et al*, 2000) the questionable economic and environmental sustainability of irrigation in the study area requires urgent attention.

Douglas, the main town within the study area, is almost entirely dependent on the forward and backward linkages of the irrigation industry, drawing water from the lowest reaches of the highly controlled and heavily utilised Vaal River, whose water is the life blood of the higher value mining and processing industries of Gauteng. With one of the objectives of the National Water Act (39 of 1998) being to direct water to the highest value users, one of the foremost tasks of this research is to identify possible productivity increases in water use in the study area under current water quality conditions and to determine what the effect of possible increases in water tariffs would be on the financial sustainability of various case study farms in the study area.

The following are examples of the importance of the results of this research to irrigators, the OVIB and policy makers are:

***For the irrigation farmer the results are important***

- to see how productivity gains can be made with existing resources through available management techniques,
- to highlight the importance of leaching and to evaluate the financial feasibility of installing artificial drainage,
- to help in the decision as to whether to replace or to improve an old irrigation system, and
- to highlight the importance of irrigation return flow management and options for on-farm storage.

***Important decision-making data for the OVIB are***

- what prices to charge farmers for water of different qualities;
- to determine the water transfer costs and water quality benefits of the various water transfer schemes; and
- to indicate to what extent a volumetric water rights allocation system would be better than the current system based on per hectare water rights held.

***At the national level this research can be useful in providing an indication of***

- the value of the dilution effect of Orange River water;
- the importance of leaching in irrigation and the need for subsidisation of artificial drainage;
- the need for management options or controls of irrigation returnflows; and
- the right incentives for the promotion of leaching as a salinity management tool and at the same time the careful management of the resulting leachate.

To conclude: Although from a national perspective, irrigation is not the highest value user of water, the secondary effects from irrigation, the food security that irrigation creates and the infrastructure and socio-economic services provided to rural regions of the country through irrigation are a convincing argument for the continued need for national resources to be spent on researching and managing irrigation and irrigation-induced and irrigation-affecting water quality problems.

With the need for water use efficiency highlighted above and the importance of leaching described in the literature study, the importance of a financial optimisation model is evident in order to solve the paradox between saving water due to its scarcity value and "wasting" water to leach out the salts that build up in soils through irrigation.

## 1.5. METHODOLOGY USED TO DETERMINE THE ECONOMIC EFFECTS OF CHANGING IRRIGATION WATER QUALITY

This section gives a summary of the methodology followed in this report. The layout of the rest of this chapter follows that of the flow diagram in Figure 1.2.

### 1.5.1. PROBLEM IDENTIFICATION

The first step in the methodology for determining the economic impact of irrigation water quality on farming returns was familiarisation with the theory and previous work conducted on the problem and also familiarisation with the study area. This was done by conducting a literature study on water quality and visiting the study area and holding panel discussions with farmers and experts affected by and involved with irrigation water quality. Results from Du Preez *et al*, (2000) indicate that the Spitskop Dam is the water body with the poorest irrigation water quality and

which has the potential for the greatest degradation. The area served by the Spitskop Dam, however, is very small and the dam is managed in such a way that the impacts of water releases are very small on irrigators downstream. It was therefore decided to choose the Orange Vaal Irrigation Board (OVIB) as a study area due to the complex nature of the hydraulics in the area and since the second poorest water quality conditions after the Spitskop Dam prevail in the area. A more detailed discussion on the study area appears in Chapter 2.

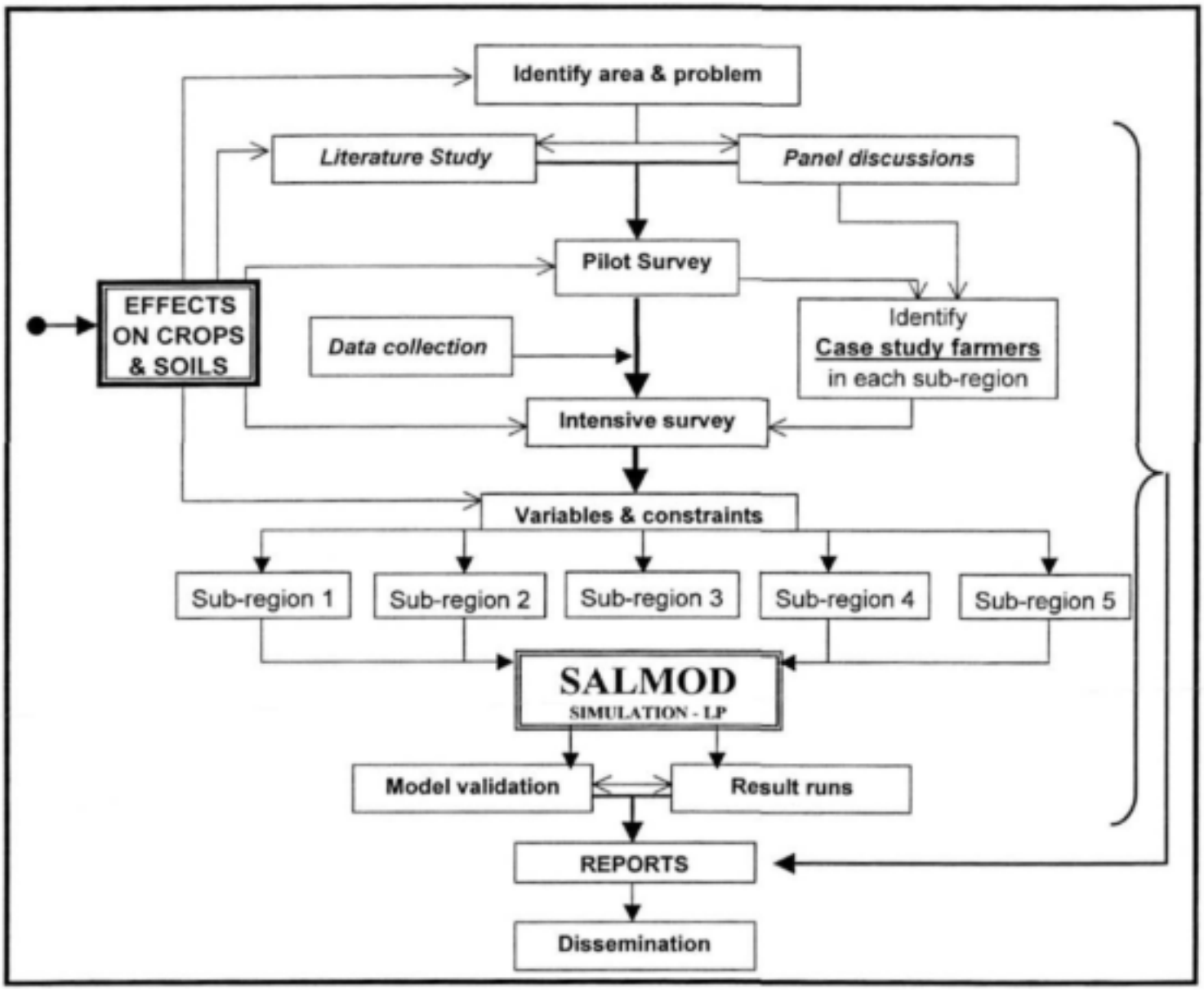



**Figure 1.2 A schematic layout of the methodology preceding SALMOD, the model-building phase**

The literature study that was conducted appears in Chapter 3. The first step was to define water quality and identify what particular aspects of water quality were problematic in the study area. The water quality constituent identified as the most problematic in the study area, after conducting a study on water quality literature, undertaking a familiarisation tour of the study area and having a panel discussion with farmers and experts, was agricultural salinisation. Previous research conducted on agricultural salinisation was then identified and reviewed and a methodology was formulated to quantify the economic effects of poor and fluctuating irrigation water quality by using a mathematical simulation model and a linear programming model constructed as one model using GAMS.

### 1.5.2. PILOT SURVEY

A pilot survey was conducted to gain insight into the range and magnitude of the water quality problem across the study area, to identify the worst areas and select a suitable range of case study farms to draw data from and to analyse. The type of questions asked in the survey were to gauge the farmers' understanding of the problem, how badly farmers in different regions were affected, what solutions the farmers proposed and what management and remediation practices the farmers were aware of and which they were already implementing. The irrigation board staff recommended survey participants that were known to have a good understanding of the problem. At least one farmer in each sub-area of the demarcated study area was selected as well as those farmers who were experiencing the worst water quality problems.

### 1.5.3. SELECTING CASE STUDY FARMS

Conducting the pilot survey and analysing the results gave a better understanding of the water quality problem in the study area and helped with the orientation of the research. An indication of data availability and data needs was also gained.

To aid in selecting the case study farmers, data was obtained from the OVIB. This data included a membership list of all irrigators in the OVIB area, and also listed irrigation rights and contact details and a list of the 1998 irrigation season's crops planted and the water requirements for each farmer.

By using this data, most of the case study farmers were selected from the farmers who had completed the pilot survey, and who were the most representative of their sub-area according to farm size, crop composition, irrigation system used and receiving water quality. Chapter 2 gives a description of the five case study farms that were selected for each OVIB sub-area.

### 1.5.4. DATA COLLECTION

The aim of this section is to describe the sources of the data required for this report. The secondary data is first discussed and then the primary data. After all the data required was accumulated and ready for implementation in SALMOD, a technical meeting was held with members of the Project Steering Committee and irrigation farmers to verify this data.

#### *1.5.4.1 Secondary Data*

Water quality data collected and processed by the DWAF for all gauging points in the study area were obtained and analysed. After electronically plotting a map of the study area, the data which included X and Y mapping co-ordinates, were arranged in the proper format to be viewed spatially using WISH, a Windows interpretation System for Hydrogeology (www.uovs.ac.za/igs/software.htm). All readings of the following water quality constituents, pH, EC (mS/m), and Total dissolved solids (TDS), Calcium (Ca), Magnesium (Mg), Sodium (Na), Potassium (K), Alkalinity, Chlorine (Cl), Sulphate ($SO_4$), Cations, Anions, Balance, Fluorine (F), Aluminium (Al), Iron (Fe), Magnesium (Mn) and Nitrogen (N) all measured in mg/l and N measured as mg/l $NO_3$ were colour coded according to the DWAF (1993) Water Quality Guidelines so they could easily be identified if the acceptable water quality limits were exceeded. In doing this, electrical conductivity (EC), a measure of irrigation water salinity, was identified as the most problematic water quality constituent for irrigation.

The data sources used in the collection of secondary data were the OVIB, DWAF, GWK Ltd., the literature study, and the Du Preez *et al,* (2000) and Van Heerden *et al,* (2000) studies. Primary data collection was conducted by means of a pilot survey and a financial analysis survey.

1.5.4.1.1 Results from the preceding research

According to Du Preez *et al,* (2000:42) the overall trend in water quality is one of fluctuation, rather than constant deterioration over time. Despite the fluctuation, a slight trend in salinity deterioration in the long term is also evident in especially the lower reaches of the rivers. As the study area used by Du Preez *et al,* (2000) was more extensive, and the analyses conducted for areas that corresponded to the study area of this research were grouped, the water quality data for the individual gauging stations had to again be requested from DWAF and re-analysed.

With the exception of the Olierivier case study farm and the site referred to as Jackson's by Du Preez *et al,* (2000), the soil analyses conducted in the Du Preez *et al,* (2000) research were from outside the study area. Jackson's is also situated within the Olierivier sub-area and was visited during the pilot survey but not selected as a case study farm. The same team that collected and analysed the soil samples for the du Preez *et al,* (2000) research was subcontracted to take samples of the major soil classes on each case study farm. These results appear in Table 2.7 in Chapter 2

1.5.4.1.2 Literature

The main data used from the literature are the crop response to salinity data, which consist of the threshold and gradient values for most crops as originally determined by Maas & Hoffmann (1977) and also used by Maas (1990), François & Maas (1994) and Ayers & Westcot (1985). These threshold and gradient values were determined under strictly controlled conditions with no soil, drainage and irrigation application variability, and the salinity of the irrigation water applied was set at a constant level by using an exact concentration of sodium and chlorine minerals only, for the entire duration of the crop's growth.

1.5.4.1.3 DWAF data base

The first river process data that were obtained were data already processed by Du Preez *et al,* (2000). Chemical water quality data of various sample points were obtained from the DWAF, identified through an inventory of chemical analyses available for hydrological gauging supplied by the DWAF. Du Preez *et al,* (2000) grouped many of these points together to obtain averages for different river reaches in their study area, which is larger than the area decided on for the purpose of this research. Their results were useful in identifying the area experiencing the worst water quality problems in the lower Vaal River system.

After the study area for this research was specified, the same inventory as used by Du Preez *et al,* (2000) was consulted to ungroup their results for this, a more intensive study of a smaller study area, the OVIB service area.

Water quality data collected and processed by the DWAF for all gauging points in the study area were obtained and analysed. After electronically plotting a map of the study area, the data which included X and Y mapping co-ordinates, were arranged in the proper format to be viewed spatially using WISH, a Windows interpretation System for Hydrogeology (www.uovs.ac.za/igs/software.htm). All readings of the following water quality constituents, pH, EC (mS/m), and TDS, Ca, Mg, Na, K, Alkalinity, Cl, $SO_4$, Cations, Anions, Balance, F, Al, Fe, Mn and N all measured in mg/l and N measured as mg/l $NO_3$ were colour coded in WISH according to the DWAF (1993) Water Quality Guidelines so they could easily be identified if the acceptable water quality limits were exceeded. By doing

this, electrical conductivity (EC), a measure of irrigation water salinity, was identified as the most problematic water quality constituent for irrigation.

1.5.4.1.4 OVIB water quality readings

The DWAF data was incomplete in some areas and did not cover all the OVIB sub-areas, so water quality data were obtained from the OVIB. Water samples monitoring for total dissolved salts (TDS) in mg/l, taken regularly from 1992 to 1994 for the research conducted by Moolman and Quibell (1995) were obtained from the OVIB. The OVIB has continued taking water quality (TDS) readings every two weeks from the major sampling points used by Moolman and Quibell (1995), which have been combined with the DWAF data for the results and discussion that appear in Chapter 2.

1.5.4.1.5 GWK data

The crop enterprise budgets (CEBs) used in SALMOD model runs have a marked impact on the results. Actual CEBs derived from the case study farmer in each sub-area are used in this research for evaluating the impacts of various management options on a case study farm basis. GWK Ltd. CEBs, set up to be representative of the whole GWK region, were also used in SALMOD runs for all study area sub-areas. What the model does not incorporate when using GWK CEBs is the economically viable size of operation for the production of various crops, and whether or not the farmer has the correct equipment to grow those crops. This is overcome when using the sub-area case study farmer's own CEBs, thus CEBs for crops that the farmer does not grow are not incorporated into the model.

***1.5.4.2 Primary Data***

Primary data on farm sizes, crops grown, crop water use and water quality was obtained from the OVIB office. Results of a pilot survey conducted in the study area gave a good introduction to the magnitude of the water quality problem, an orientation of the study area and an opportunity to get to meet the farmers in the area. Data gathered from the pilot survey were used to identify suitable case study farmers and the types of information that were required from these farmers. The results of the intensive survey together with information from GWK Ltd. provided the price, cost and input data required to set up crop enterprise budgets for each case study farmer and an average crop enterprise budget for the region.

1.5.4.2.1 Pilot survey (Douglas 16 – 18 April 1998)

The perceptions of the farmers were determined by conducting a pilot survey in the study area, the main aim being to determine to what extent the farmers are aware of the problem and how they have adapted their practices to the fluctuating water quality levels. The survey indicated that the farmers were very well aware of the problem and those affected had adapted production accordingly. The farmers were however reluctant to apply leaching practices due to high pumping costs and the extra management time required.

Nine farmers were interviewed in the pilot survey, with at least one representative from each sub-area. The survey covered 37% of the total area irrigated in the OVIB service area. Only a small number of farmers in the study area have other farming interests except irrigation farming. Only 25% of the total area owned by those farmers interviewed is irrigated. The livestock that is kept on the land not irrigated is barely of economic significance to the farmers, it being used mainly for own consumption, and game for hunting. This is an indication of the reliance of the farmers in the area on irrigation agriculture and thus the importance of ensuring water of an acceptable quality.

A farmer was identified in New Bucklands, situated near Marksdrift (see Figure 4.1) as a case study farmer and an ideal control for the research as irrigation is with unsaline (TDS <200mg/l) Orange River water emanating from the Louis Bosman canal. The land is only in its third to fifth year of production and yields are similar to the maximum physiological yields as calculated by Viljoen *et al, (*1992) and as initially used in the model as a basis from which to calculate the potential gains of improved water quality.

The pilot survey also revealed that because of the limits imposed by quotas, which are a certain volume per hectare irrigation rights held, farmers were irrigating far less than they could; where farmers could get two crops per year, because of the implementation of a fixed quota, they were only getting an average of approximately 1.3 crops. Farmers prefer to plant a full crop in the winter season, when evapotranspiration isn't as high and thus the negative effect of irrigating with poor quality water is minimized.

Results from the survey clearly indicate that the largest area is planted with wheat, followed by maize and then lucerne.

The main reservations heard from farmers regarding the practice of leaching is that nitrogen fertiliser is an expensive input that farmers do not want to flush away by leaching. As nitrates are applied at various stages during the growing season, the required leachings can be performed before nitrate applications. A pre-season leach could also be sufficient as long as there is enough time between harvesting and planting of the next crop. These practices are, however, contrary to the model assumptions that a constant leaching fraction is maintained. With good management however the same leaching fraction can be applied over a cropping season at different application rates to coincide with nitrogen applications so as not to waste and pollute.

1.5.4.2.2 Financial analysis survey

The case study farmers identified from the results of the pilot survey were visited and the necessary data accumulated to conduct a financial analysis for each case study farmer. An intensive financial analysis survey was conducted for the 1998/99 and 1999/2000 financial years as the financial year and water year/production season do not coincide. The financial analysis was necessary to verify model results set up using 2000 costs and prices with actual financial results for the same period. The results of this financial analysis appear in Chapter 2 in Table 2.10 for comparison between the 5 case study farmers.

Once all the data needed were accumulated and ready for implementation in SALMOD, a technical meeting was held with some of the members of the project steering committee and irrigation farmers to verify the data.

Chapter 4 provides a more detailed discussion on data formulation and use in this research.

The construction of SALMOD, the simulation and optimisation model employed to determine the financial effects of water quality in irrigation, progressed slowly over the course of the project. In the initial phases SALMOD was constructed using Microsoft Excel spreadsheets for simulating alternative crop enterprise budgets for different irrigation systems, soil types and leaching fractions based on a basic crop enterprise budget. This provided the range of crop gross margins to be used in Microsoft Excels' Solver, and later the WhatsBest! optimisation packages, to determine the profit maximising crop combinations for different irrigation water qualities, soil types and irrigation systems (high frequency vs. low frequency irrigation). As the model was refined and further cropping, resource and management options were added, the spreadsheet matrix became too cumbersome and large for

Excel. At this stage GAMS was studied and the model was converted to GAMS. The GAMS coding in mathematical notation, with a discussion on all input data needed and each equation used in SALMOD, is given in Chapter 4.

#### *1.5.4.3 Model runs and validation*

Before the final set of results from SALMOD were recorded for writing up of reports, SALMOD was set up and run with each individual case study farmer for validation of the input data and results. For this run with the farmers SALMOD was set up to include GWK Ltd. regional average crop enterprise budgets where the farmers did not supply their own enterprise budget for the specific crop. This led to unrealistic results as the farmers generally had good reasons for leaving a particular crop out. Once SALMOD was set up for the farmers with the crops not grown excluded, the farmers were excited about the results, additional information, management option feasibilities, and the potential total gross margin above specified costs (TGMASC) generated by SALMOD.

## 1.6. SUMMARY

Following the introduction, Section 1.3 serves as an outline and orientation for the rest of this report. The basic methodology that was followed in conducting this research is presented as an introduction to the relevant chapters that contain a more complete discussion. Section 1.4 lists the data sources used in this research. The data sources used in the collection of secondary data are the OVIB, DWAF, GWK Ltd., the literature study, and the Du Preez *et al* (2000) and Van Heerden *et al,* (2000) studies. Primary data collection was done by means of a pilot survey and also a financial analysis survey.

## 1.7. LAYOUT OF THIS REPORT

This chapter sets out the problem statement and aims of this research followed by a broad overview of the importance of irrigation and of effective salinity management to ensure the sustainability of irrigation. The methodology followed in conducting this research is then given together with the secondary and primary data used, and in conclusion, the potential usefulness of this research at farm, irrigation board and national level is discussed.

Chapter Two is a description of the study area and the case study farmers used in the research.

Chapter Three is a literature study in which the term water quality is defined and salinity identified as the most important water quality constituent for the study area. An overview of salinity management options and a review of models used in solving salinity problems are presented.

Chapter Four is a discussion on the mathematical formulation of SALMOD.

The first part of Chapter Five lists and discusses the series of results generated by SALMOD under current and parametrically varied results for each of the case study farmers, followed in the second part of the chapter by SALMOD results using Du Preez *et al* (2000) data predicting irrigation water salinity for 2025.

Chapter Six contains the summary, conclusions and recommendations of this research.

# CHAPTER 2. THE STUDY AREA

*The grass is rich and matted, you cannot see the soil. It holds the rain and mist, and they seep into the ground, feeding the streams in every kloof. It is well-tended, and not too many cattle feed upon it; not too many fires burn it, laying the soil bare. Stand unshod upon it, for the ground is holy, being even as it came from the Creator. Keep it, guard it, care for it, for it keeps men, guards men, cares for men. Destroy it and man is destroyed.*

***Alan Paton: Cry, The Beloved Country***

## 2.1. INTRODUCTION

The aim of this chapter is to describe and delineate the study area examined for the purpose of this research, namely the area managed by the Orange Vaal Irrigation Board (OVIB). In the first section a short historical overview of water management and control in the study area is given, followed by the demarcation of the study area. Water quality and land type characterisation of the study area follows and the chapter ends with a description of each of the case study farms within the study area.

## 2.2. WATER MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL IN THE STUDY AREA

The initial irrigation plots allocated in the study area (Bucklands and Atherton) were part of a government social-economic scheme after the drought and depression of the 1930's (DWAF, 1993:14). The sustainability of the soils on which these plots were established for irrigation agriculture was not a primary factor, as they were developed mainly for socio-economic purposes.

In 1984 an Irrigation Board was established to manage water allocations in the demarcated area. With the study area being right at the bottom of the Vaal River system, and water usage from the Vaal River prioritised for industrial and residential use in Johannesburg and for mining purposes in the Free State goldfields, times of drought in the upper catchment often led to water shortages in the study area. A particularly bad drought in 1992 led to the construction of the Louis Bosman Canal in 1994 to transfer Orange River water to the Douglas Weir. Together with the increased water security, farmers noticed a marked improvement in crop yields due to the improvement in water quality. Water quality improved dramatically after Orange River water was pumped into the system via the canal.

The reason for the poor water quality along the Lower Vaal River was initially believed to be as a result of industry and mining in the upper reaches of the Vaal River. It has, however, since been proved by various studies (Du Plessis 1982, Moolman & Quibell 1995 and Nell 1995) that the actual process of irrigation displaces certain salts in the soil and releases sodium, chloride and other salts into the water while at the same time breaking down the physical structure of the soil. These practices by the irrigation farmers in the middle and upper reaches of the Vaal, Riet and Harts rivers all contribute to the seasonal water quality fluctuation in the study area. The main problem of concern, however, is the building up of salts in irrigated soils.

Currently water use is allocated on a per hectare water rights possessed basis and not on a volumetric basis. This does not promote efficiency in irrigation water application, as there is no control on the quantity of irrigation water withdrawn. In the beginning of each irrigation season, farmers submit the proposed area of crops they will

be planting to the OVIB, which calculates water usage and charges according to these proposed areas, multiplied by the long-term average evapotranspiration and crop co-efficient for each crop. The OVIB also checks that the proposed areas correlate with the actual area planted later in the season. The only incentive to prevent farmers from over irrigating and to limit distribution losses is the actual cost of pumping. These pumping costs also make farmers reluctant to deliberately "over irrigate" to leach out salts that have built up in the soils from years of irrigating.

## 2.3. DEMARCATION OF THE STUDY AREA

Spitskop Dam at the bottom end of the Vaal-Harts irrigation scheme, the largest irrigation scheme in South Africa, is identified in Du Preez *et al* (2000) as one of the water bodies within their study area with the poorest water quality and the greatest potential for rapid further decline, closely followed by the Lower Riet River and then the Lower Vaal River, both of which are situated in the OVIB region. The Spitskop Dam, however, serves only a very small irrigation community and very little water is released from the Spitskop Dam back into the Vaal River. The OVIB region on the other hand is a very important irrigation region within South Africa and the complex interaction of the hydraulic systems impacting on the area make this a more applicable region for this research.

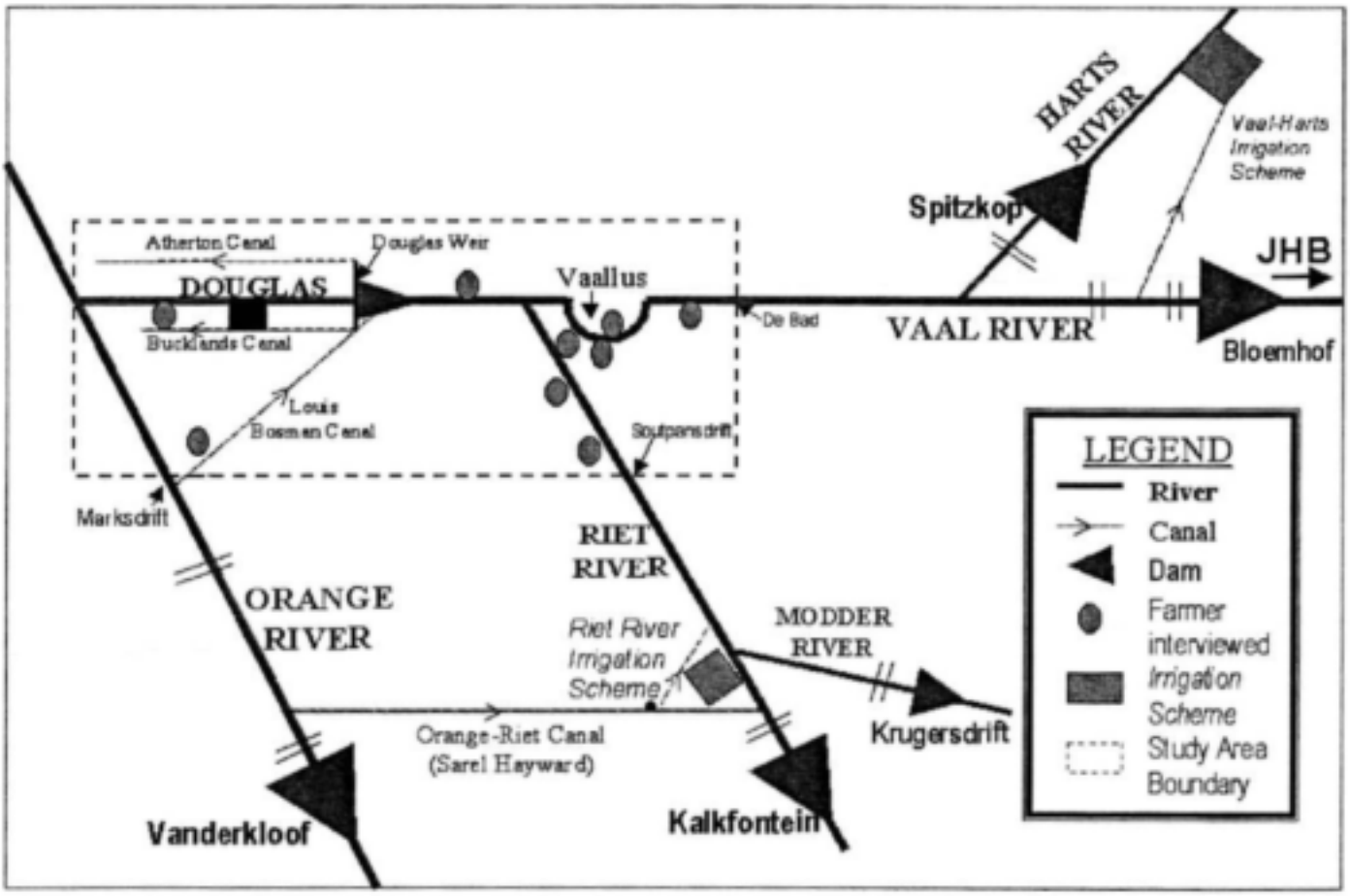



**Figure 2.1 A schematic representation of the positioning of the OVIB within the regional hydrology**

A schematic representation of the hydrological system impacting upon the study area is shown in Figure 2.1. It can be deduced that the area is highly controlled and has a multitude of factors that interact to determine the water quality in the study area. Yet, the high level of control does however create the possibility of ensuring an almost certain annual water quantity through water mixing (Moolman & Quibell, 1995). The accessibility of the water for dilution, the cost of pumping this water and the uncertainty of the real financial benefits of improving the water quality in the study area are factors that make this a not readily practised option.

The OVIB has subdivided its service area into five sub-areas, each receiving a different average water quality as a result of being differently influenced by alternative regional level water management options. Initially, there were only four sub-areas as demarcated in the Government Gazette No. 9498, 16 November 1984, but a fifth sub-area was added as new land was developed for irrigation. The soil types in the five sub-areas also differ markedly. The first sub-area, named Olierivier in this report, includes all farmers irrigating out of the Riet River, from the Vaal/Riet confluence to Soutpansdrift, the eastern boundary of the study area. The Second sub-area includes all farmers irrigating from the Vaal River between De Bad, the northern boundary of the study area, and the Douglas Weir. These are predominantly the Vaallus irrigation farmers, but also consist of farmers below the Vaal/Riet confluence, down to the Douglas Weir. The area below the Vaal/Riet confluence is influenced not only by the addition of very poor quality Riet River water, but also by 'pure' Orange River water pumped in via the Louis Bosman Canal. This results in two distinctly different water bodies that do not readily mix. The third and fourth sub-area include the predominantly smallholding farms irrigating from the Bucklands and Atherton Canals that receive 'mixed' Orange River water. The fifth sub-area comprises newly established farms irrigating with Orange River water from the Louis Bosman Canal. As these farms are planting on relatively virgin soils (only in their 5$^{th}$ production season) and irrigating with "pure" Orange River water, they provide a good control for this water quality research.

## 2.4. WATER QUALITY CHARACTERISATION

The seasonality of the EC/TDS fluctuations can be clearly seen in Figure 2.2 for Soutpansdrift where TDS and EC are plotted for ten years from 1990 till 2000. Directly translated, Soutpansdrift, means "salt pans weir " and this is exactly what it is. There are numerous saltpans in the vicinity indicating geologically saline soils and there is a weir at this border between the Riet River irrigation scheme and the OVIB area. All excess water and returnflows from the Riet River irrigation scheme flow into the Lower Riet River arm from which most Olierivier farmers extract their water.

The peaks in irrigation water salinity in Figure 2.2 for each year occur in September or October, which are also the months with the least evapotranspiration (see Figure 2.7). The drastic improvement in water quality that occurs between December and April is as a result of the onset of the rainfall season in the study area and the catchments in the upper river reaches. A less dramatic increase again occurs from April to August as excess irrigation water that has been applied to irrigate crops seeps through the soil and returns into the river laden with salts.

Figure 2.3 shows the impact of the volume of water flowing over the weir at Soutpansdrift. Flows of over approximately 9 000 000 $m^3$ per month resulted in a drop in the TDS to below the acceptable level of 600 mg/l. These flows are generally attributed to good rains in the upper reaches of the Riet and its tributaries or large

excesses of water pumped from the Orange River via the Orange-Riet (Sarel Hayward) Canal for the Riet River Irrigation Scheme. The fact that the lower volume flows have high TDS concentrations is most probably a result of irrigation returnflows. Note also that most of the peaks in TDS correspond to flows of less than 3 000 000 $m^3$ per month. Moolman and Quibell (1995:35) suggested in their report that by increasing the flow over the Soutpansdrift Weir to $30x10^6$ $m^3$ per year using Orange River water, reduce the salinity in the Lower Riet River arm to acceptable levels.

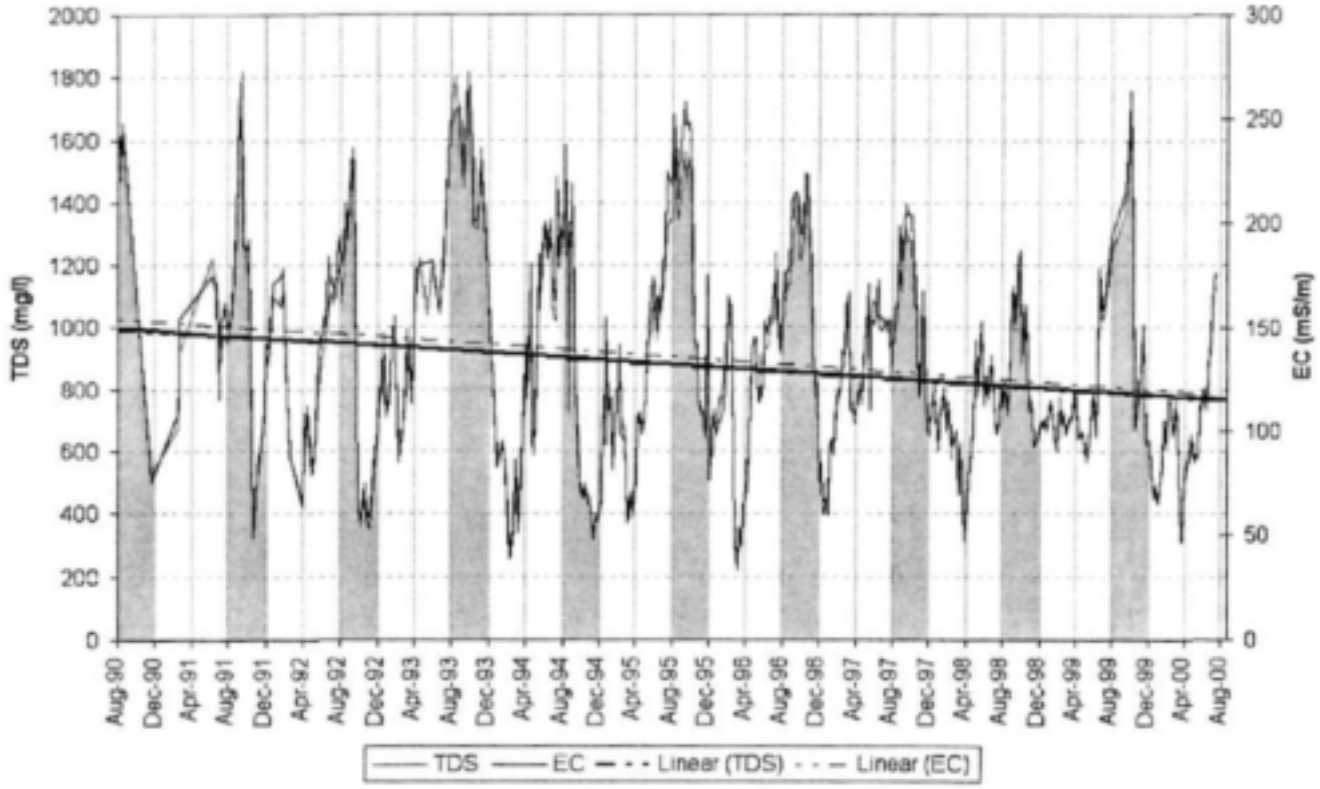



**Figure 2.2 Salinity fluctuations measured as EC(mS/m) and TDS(mg/l) at Soutpansdrift on the Riet River, DWAF 1990-1997**

Also noteworthy in Figure 2.2 is the declining or improving trend in water quality over the ten year period. This could be due to improved irrigation efficiencies brought about by the price-cost squeeze and the improved irrigation management resulting in less leaching, or it could be as a result of more Orange River water being transferred into the system and having a dilution effect.

Figure 2.4 is set up for a much longer period than Figure 2.2 to show the impact of completing the Louis Bosman Canal and diverting Orange River water into the Vaal River system at the Douglas Barrage wall. The period from 1990 till 1998 also displays the seasonal trend as observed for Soutpansdrift, but not to as great an extent. From 1977 till 1983 water quality progressively deteriorated due to drought in the region and upper reaches and from little releases of water upstream. Diminishing water quantity (ECiw / TDS) necessitated the building of the Louis Bosman Canal that was completed in 1984. The dramatic improvement in water quality after 1984 is clearly visible in Figure 2.4. Data are missing from 1989 to 1992, but the sharp decrease in water salinity in 1988 is probably attributable to a reduction in the pumping of Orange River water once the dams in

the upper reaches of the Vaal and Riet Rivers were full again. There is also a declining / improving trend in water quality at the Douglas Weir over the twenty year period for which the data are plotted.

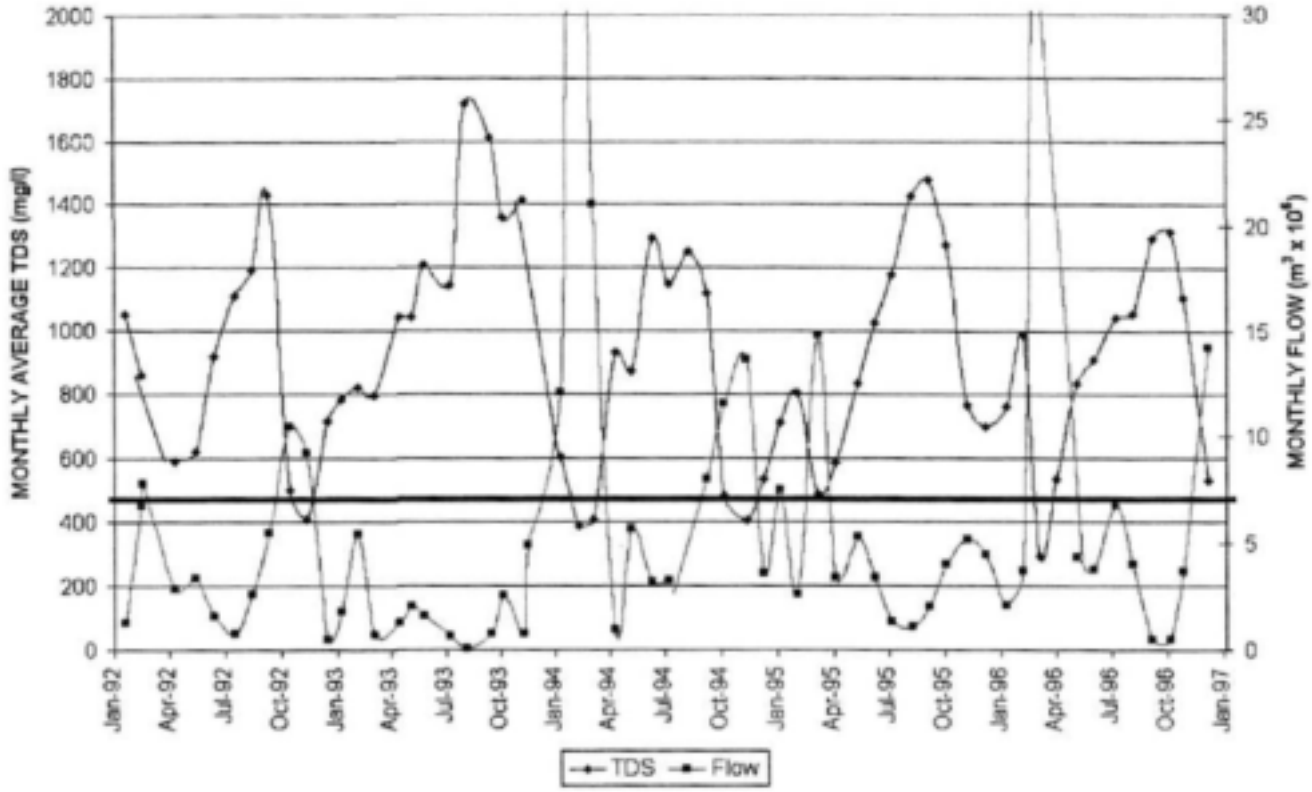



**Figure 2.3 The impact of monthly flow ($m^3$) over the Soutpansdrift weir on salinity (TDS) fluctuations at Soutpansdrift on the Riet River, DWAF 1992-1997**

Figure 2.5 displays basically the same data as Figure 2.4 for the period from 1990 to 1998. This data is recorded where the Bucklands canal flows from the Douglas Barrage wall and is therefore very similar to the data recoded at the Barrage wall and also to the Atherton water quality which is diverted from just the other side of the Barrage wall.

A very sharp declining / improving trend can also be observed for the six year period from 1992 to 1998 in Figure 2.5 and is very similar to that of the Lower Vaal River, from its confluence with the Riet River to the Douglas Barrage, the Bucklands canal and also the Atherton Canal.

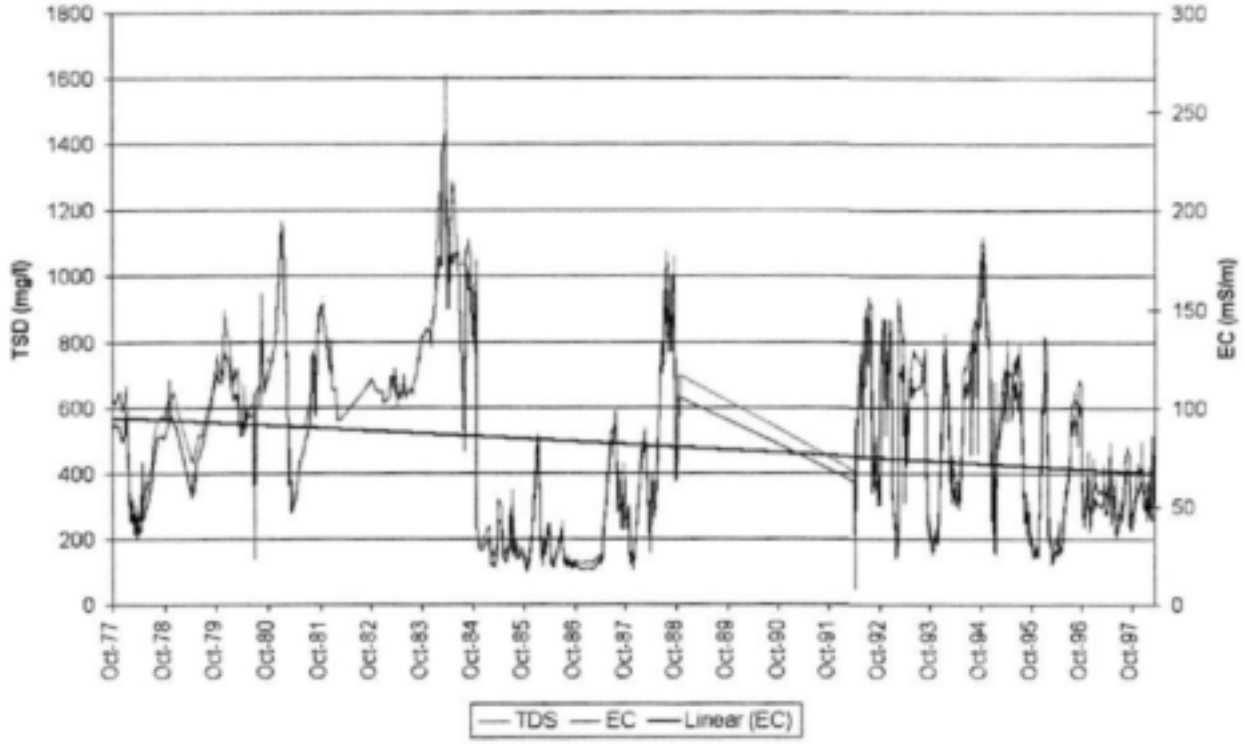



**Figure 2.4 Salinity fluctuations measured as EC(mS/m) and TDS(mg/l) at the Douglas Barrage on the Vaal River, DWAF 1977-1997**

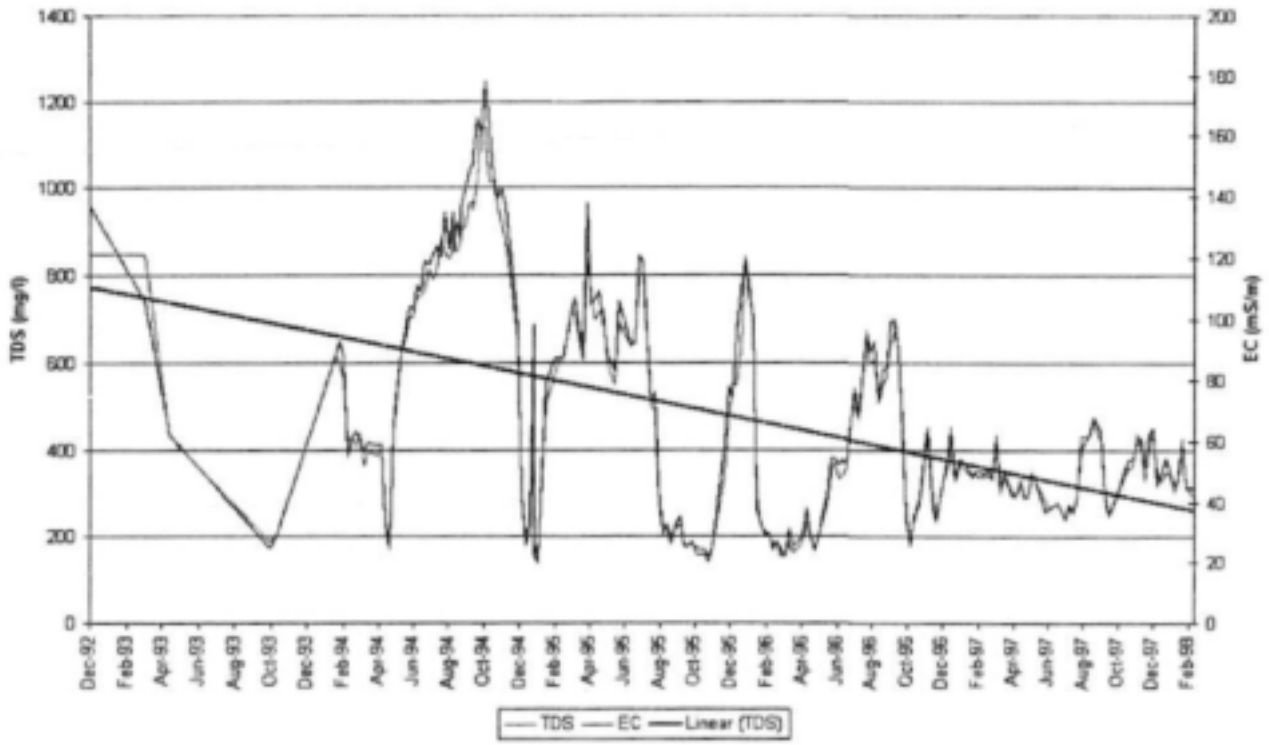



**Figure 2.5 Salinity fluctuations measured as EC(mS/m) and TDS(mg/l) at the Douglas Barrage in the Atherton Canal, DWAF 1992-1997**

In Figure 2.6 the monthly average water qualities (EC) for 1998 of the different river reaches in the study area are plotted against one another for comparison of the sub-areas. As the DWAF does not have gauging stations in all sub-areas of the OVIB, OVIB water quality data is combined with DWAF data in Figure 2.6. At Olierivier (OL) readings are taken by both the OVIB and the DWAF, both of which are plotted in Figure 2.6 for comparison. From January to July the two separate sets of EC readings (OL(DWAF) and OL(OVIB)) are correlated by a narrow range (between 10 and 30 mS/m), with the DWAF readings (OL(DWAF)) being the highest, but from August to December there is no longer a correlation between the readings. The reason for this is unknown.

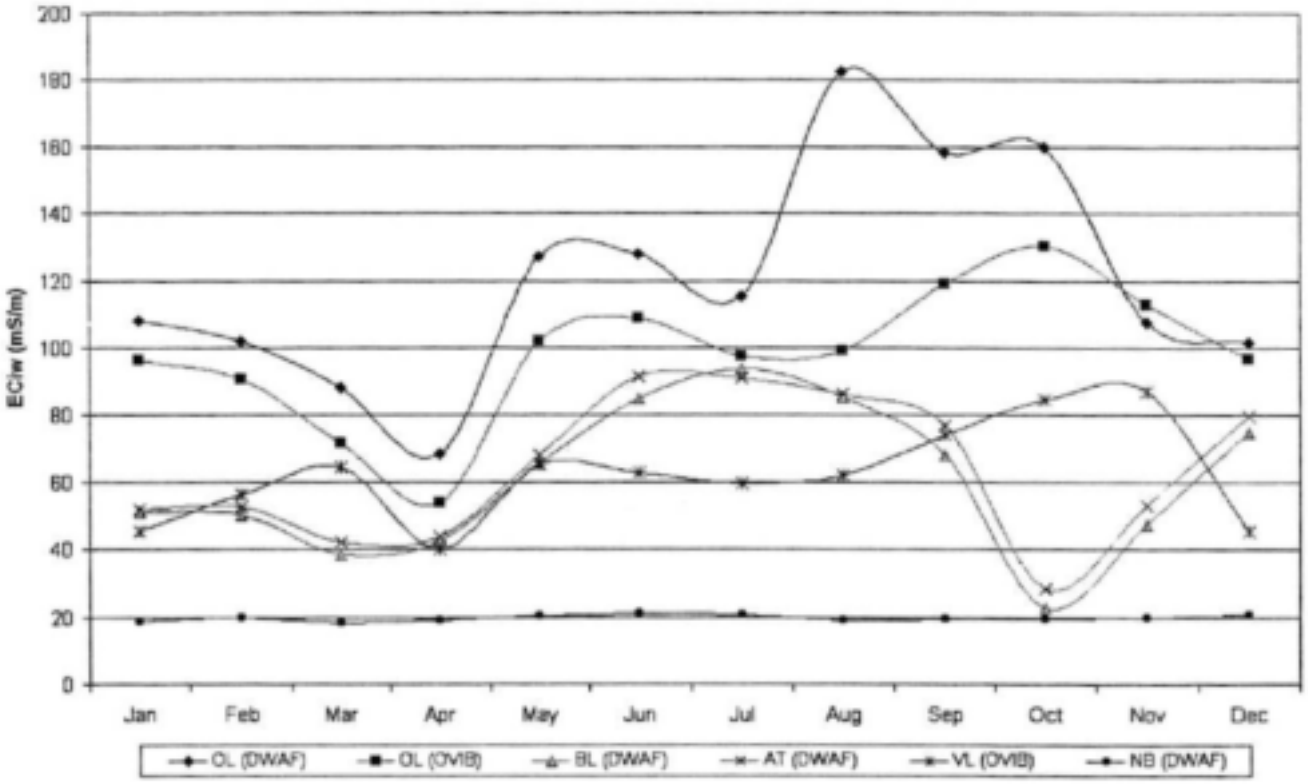



**Figure 2.6 Monthly ECiw fluctuation of the OVIB sub-areas, DWAF and OVIB 1998**

What Figure 2.6 clearly shows is that Olierivier receives the worst water quality throughout the year and that it is highly variable, whether measured by the OVIB or the DWAF, and that the New Bucklands sub-area constantly receives the best water quality at a very constant EC level of around 20 mS/m. New Bucklands receives its water directly from the Louis Bosman Canal, which diverts Orange River water pumped at Marksdrift to the Douglas Weir (see Figure 2.1). The Lower Vaal River water quality as measured at Vaallus (VL) by the OVIB generally follows a similar pattern to that of Lower Riet River water quality at Olierivier (OL) measured by the OVIB, but not to the same magnitude. Water quality in the Atherton (AT) and Bucklands (BL) canals is very similar, as their abstraction points from the source are very close each other. Their source, the Douglas Weir, which lies below the confluence of the Vaal and the Riet Rivers and where Orange River water pumped via the Louis Bosman Canal, enters the Douglas Weir, is highly influenced by the water quantity and qualities entering it from the various sources. Generally where the Atherton (AT) and Bucklands (BL) water quality is poorer than

the Vaal River (VL) water quality level, it is as a result of inflows from the Riet River and where AT and BL water quality is better than VL water quality, Orange River water is being pumped into the weir.

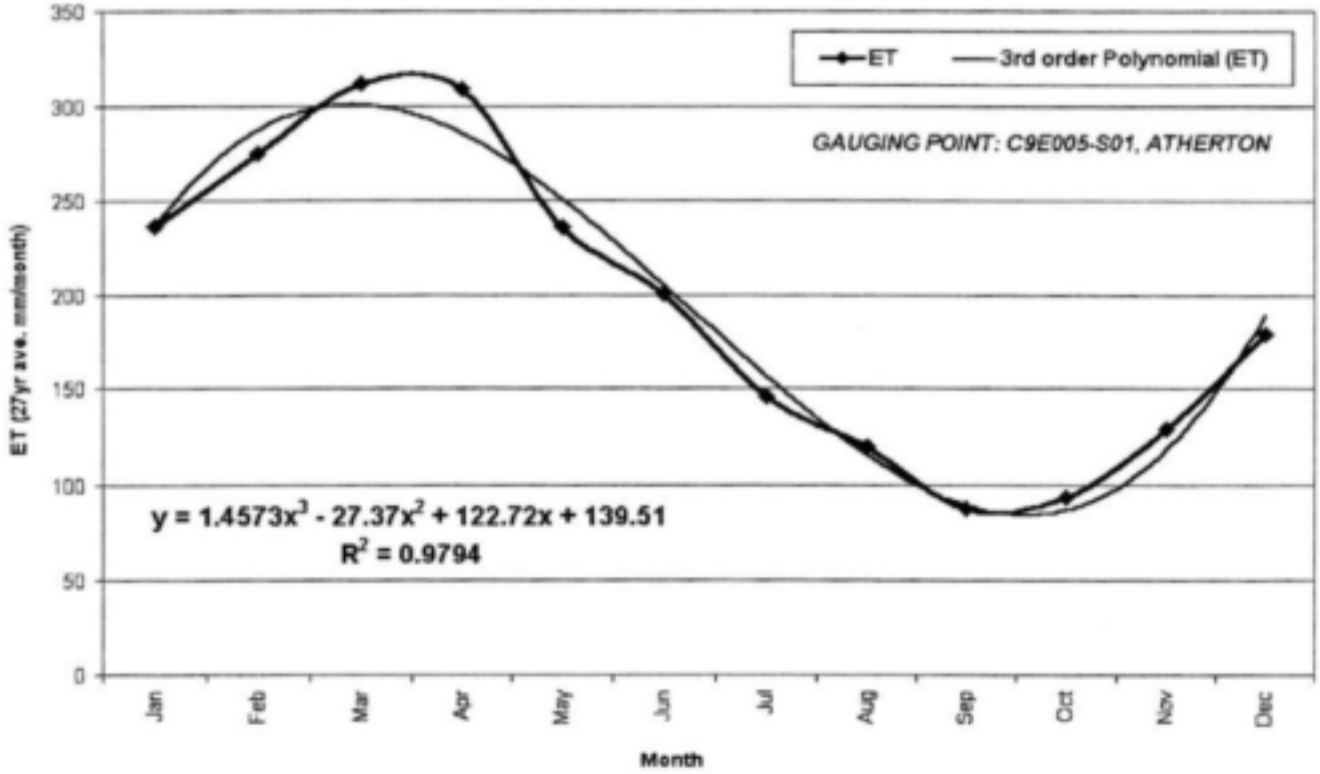



**Figure 2.7 Monthly average evapotranspiration in the OVIB, DWAF 1970-1997**

Figure 2.7 shows the monthly average evapotranspiration measured at Atherton from 1970 till 1997. These values are used by the OVIB and multiplied by crop specific factors to determine crop water requirements and hence what to charge for water usage. It is clear that in the irrigation season; pre-year (July to November) evapotranspiration is at its lowest and for the rest of the year high.

**Table 2.1 Long-term monthly average rainfall (mm) at the Douglas Weir, DWAF 1986-1998**

| | 86 | 87 | 88 | 89 | 90 | 91 | 92 | 93 | 94 | 95 | 96 | 97 | *98* | Ave. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Jan | 33.5 | 14 | 3 | 75 | 21 | 112 | 4 | 9 | 102 | 100 | 0 | 36 | *29.4* | **42** |
| Feb | 12.5 | 87 | 314 | 89 | 55 | 121 | 0 | 94 | 124 | 10 | 46 | 38 | *76.0* | **83** |
| Mar | 34.5 | 42 | 119 | 40 | 36 | 108 | 173 | 7 | 23 | 110 | 12 | 133 | *70.5* | **70** |
| Apr | 14 | 19 | 112 | 40 | 57 | 0 | 3 | 21 | 21 | 0 | 36 | 43 | *27.9* | **31** |
| May | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 15 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 35 | 0 | 46 | *5.7* | **8** |
| Jun | 4 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 17.5 | 44 | 0 | 2 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 16 | *3.6* | **7** |
| Jul | 0 | 16 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 22 | 8 | *1.8* | **4** |
| Aug | 4.5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 11 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | *7.5* | **2** |
| Sep | 24 | 33 | 22 | 12 | 0 | 24 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 6 | 0 | *12.3* | **10** |
| Oct | 7 | 7 | 14 | 0 | 0 | 86 | 4 | 65 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 8 | *28.4* | **16** |
| Nov | 15 | 85 | 30 | 27 | 29 | 26 | 18 | 26 | 49 | 93 | 60 | 0 | *29.3* | **38** |
| Dec | 0 | 37 | 110 | 1 | 39 | 28 | 5 | 31 | 0 | 78 | 73 | 9 | *42.3* | **34** |
| Total | **149** | **340** | **724** | **288** | **272** | **549** | **218** | **258** | **322** | **430** | **255** | **337** | *335* | **345** |

The high evapotranspiration from February to April is offset by good rainfall (see Table 2.1) in these months, resulting in an improvement in water quality (see Figure 2.6), with the exception of the Lower Vaal River. With relatively high evapotranspiration in May and June and little rainfall, a sharp deterioration in water quality takes place. The situation then stabilises until August when wheat, the main crop in the study area, starts getting the largest percentage of its water requirement applied. Water quality then continues to deteriorate till November when wheat no longer needs to be irrigated and when it usually starts raining again.

## 2.5. LAND USE CHARACTERISATION IN THE STUDY AREA

Whereas the previous section focussed on the water resources of the study area and in particular the quality of these resources, this section gives an overview of the number of farmers in each sub-area, their water rights and irrigation areas, the irrigation potential of the soil and the extent of salinisation and waterlogging, followed by a brief discussion on enterprises to be included in the study area and their tolerance to salinity.

Table 2.2 lists the number of farmers served by the OVIB and their numbers and communal water rights owned in each sub-area. Of the 178 farmer members of the OVIB the majority of the members farm in the Atherton sub-area on the smallest average farm size of 11 ha, and possess the third largest hectares of irrigation rights, namely 1341.5 ha. Olierivier which has 23 farm members, follows this, but the largest total hectares water rights, namely 3124.7 ha, resulting in an average number of hectares per farmer of 135.9. The case study farmer used in Olierivier has 141 ha water rights, which is very close to the sub-area average. Vaallus, with 15 members who hold 2659.1 ha irrigation rights communally, has the highest average number of water rights per farmer. Bucklands with 11 members holds 349.4 ha water rights with and average of 31.8 ha per farmer. Finally, the newest irrigation sub-area, New Bucklands, has 7 members holding 622.4 ha water rights with an average of 88.9 ha between them. This results in a total of 178 members in the OVIB area and a total of 8097.1 ha of irrigation rights issued with each hectare irrigation right having access to between 9000 and 11000 $m^3$ of water per year, of which 60% can be used in the pre-year (July to November) and the remaining 40%, together with the unused portion from the pre-year, to be used in the after-year (December to June).

**Table 2.2 Orange-Vaal Irrigation Board (OVIB) membership numbers and hectares water rights held in 1998**

| | Sub-area | | | | | Total / ave. / min / max |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | |
| | Olierivier | Vaallus | Atherton | Bucklands | New Bucklands | |
| *OVIB member numbers:* | *23* | *15* | *11* | *122* | *7* | ***178*** |
| Member water rights: | 3124.7 | 2659.1 | 349.4 | 1341.5 | 622.4 | **8097.1** |
| Average: | 135.9 | 177.3 | 31.8 | 11.0 | 88.9 | ***45.5*** |
| Case study farms | 141 | 339 | 58.4 | 28.9 | 100 | ***133.5*** |
| Mode: | 111.1 | 83.6 | | 2.0 | 100.0 | ***2.0*** |
| Standard deviation: | 103.6 | 143.9 | 30.5 | 19.0 | 35.3 | ***82.2*** |
| Minimum values: | 27.0 | 39.0 | 1.2 | 0.1 | 31.9 | ***0.1*** |
| Maximum values: | 441.3 | 526.4 | 93.0 | 174.1 | 131.0 | ***526.4*** |

The case study farmers used in this research for each sub-area of the OVIB service area were selected *inter alia* according to the hectares water rights held in relation to the sub-area average. The number of water rights possessed by case study farmers is also given in Table 2.2 for comparison with the sub-area average water right, as well as with the mode, standard deviation, minimum and maximum for each sub-area.

**Table 2.3 Area (ha) under different irrigation systems in the OVIB region (adapted from Van Heerden *et al*, 2000)**

| Sub-area | | IRRIGATION SYSTEM | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Micro & Drip | Sprinkle | Flood | TOTAL |
| **1** | Olierivier | 31 | 2969 | 125 | **3125** |
| **2** | Vaallus | 27 | 1861 | 771 | **2659** |
| **3** | Atherton | 59 | 175 | 115 | **349** |
| **4** | Bucklands | 40 | 54 | 1247 | **1341** |
| **5** | New Bucklands | 19 | 598 | 0 | **617** |
| ***TOTAL*** | | ***176*** | ***5657*** | ***2258*** | ***8091*** |
| **%** | | 2 | 70 | 28 | 100 |

Table 2.3 indicates that 28% of the OVIB area is flood irrigated and 70% sprinkler irrigated. The trend is towards conversion to centre pivot irrigation, which is a potential problem as it is difficult to leach for salinity management with centre pivot irrigation systems. In other areas where salinity is a problem, flood irrigation on laser-levelled lands seems to be the most efficient and effective. Most of the vineyards in the study region, which predominantly occur in Bucklands and Atherton, are irrigated with micro and drip irrigation systems. The larger farms, which occur in Olierivier, Vaallus, and New Bucklands predominantly have centre pivot irrigation systems. In Atherton, of the 175 hectares under sprinkle irrigation, dragline sprinklers irrigate most.

**Table 2.4 Irrigation potential of the irrigable soils in the OVIB region (adapted from Van Heerden *et al*, 2000)**

| Sub-area | | IRRIGATION POTENTIAL | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | High (%) | Medium (%) | Low (%) | TOTAL (Ha) |
| **1** | Olierivier | 73 | 14 | 13 | **3125** |
| **2** | Vaallus | 41 | 59 | 0 | **2659** |
| **3** | Atherton | 76 | 24 | 0 | **349** |
| **4** | Bucklands | 0 | 50 | 50 | **1341** |
| **5** | New Bucklands | 83 | 16 | 1 | **617** |
| ***TOTAL*** | | ***51*** | ***36*** | ***13*** | ***8075*** |

Wiid, J.A. (1999) of GWK Ltd. at Douglas was contacted with regard to irrigation scheduling. He stated that two sources are used to determine irrigation-scheduling data, namely neutron moisture meter readings and weather station evapo-transpiration readings. Farmers who make use of the scheduling service offered by GWK Ltd.

also have drainage curves drawn up for their soils. Farmers usually irrigate 12 to 16mm per pivot round (usually weekly) during Ruraflex tariff times from ESCOM to save on electricity. With a heavy irrigation (usually pre-planting or once all soil Nitrogen is used up or just before another Nitrogen application), up to 30mm per ha can be irrigated to leach out salts (i.e. ±50% leaching fraction). According to Du Preez *et al,* (2000:155) the leaching of excess salts from the root zone with centre pivot irrigation proved to be almost impossible because of the high application rates required at the outer circumference of the fields when irrigating more than 30mm per round.

Table 2.4 indicates that the majority of the soils In Olierivier, Atherton and new Bucklands, are high potential irrigation soils, while in Vaallus nearly 60% of the soils are medium potential soils, and in Bucklands 50% medium potential and the other 50% low potential soils.

What is further disturbing is that nearly one quarter (1861) of these hectares are either slightly or severely affected by waterlogging or salinisation as shown in Table 2.5. The largest percentage of affected soils occurs in Vaallus followed by Olierivier.

**Table 2.5 Soils affected by salinisation and waterlogging in the OVIB region (adapted from Van Heerden *et al,* 2000)**

| | | LEVEL OF SALINISATION AND WATERLOGGING | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Sub-area** | | **Slight[1] (%)** | **Severe[2] (%)** | **TOTAL (ha)** |
| **1** | Olierivier | 16 | 4 | **625** |
| **2** | Vaallus | 40 | 40 | **2127** |
| **3** | Atherton | 5 | 0 | **17** |
| **4** | Bucklands | 5 | 3 | **107** |
| **5** | New Bucklands | 0 | 2 | **12** |
| ***TOTAL*** | | ***13*** | ***10*** | **2888** |

[1] Slight salinisation and waterlogging is defined as that agricultural production can still take place, but that production potential and/or choice are restricted.

[2] Severe salinisation and waterlogging is defined as that agricultural production can no longer take place without special remediation actions such as artificial drainage or gypsum application being applied.

## 2.5.1. IRRIGATION ENTERPRISES

This section is a motivation for the six crops selected for modelling in this research. Although livestock production and aquaculture are also practised in the study area these are irrelevant for the purposes of his research.

### *2.5.1.1 Perennial and horticultural crops*

Vineyards are perennial and not suited to this seasonal research study. Results from the pilot survey indicate that, according to the farmers interviewed that had vines no yield reduction from vines takes place as a result of poor water quality There is also little prospect of expansion as the GWK Ltd. wine cellars have their grape delivery quotas filled. As a result, some farmers have started planting olive trees. Mainly olive and also some

pecan nut orchards have recently been established as a long-term strategy to reduce the impact of increasing input costs and deteriorating water quality, and in some cases, to keep water tables down.

A farmer interviewed during the pilot survey, who irrigates from the Lower Riet River arm, had to spend a great deal extra on his horticultural tunnel operation because of poor water quality. Not much other intensive horticulture is practised in the study area, though on one farm carrots and beetroot are grown extensively.

#### *2.5.1.2 Annual crops*

In Table 2.6 it can be seen that wheat, the major crop in the study area, uses up more than half (4407) of the hectares irrigation rights in the OVIB (8075 ha), followed by maize - 2729 ha, lucerne – 1309 ha, potatoes – 454 ha, etc. The crops included in this research for analysis are wheat, maize, lucerne, potatoes, cotton and groundnuts. Sunflower is not included as only very few farmers grow sunflower. These farmers have a contract to produce sunflowers for seed purposes and are not representative of the region. Irrigated pastures are very variable among the farmers as is the livestock component utilising the grazing.

**Table 2.6 Cropping composition (ha) of major crops in the OVIB region, 1998 / 1999 production season**

| Sub-area | | Wheat | Maize | Lucerne | Potatoes | Sunflower | Cotton | Irrigated pastures | Vineyards | Onions | Groundnuts |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *1* | Olierivier | 1 872 | 1 359 | 708 | 227 | 14 | 158 | 40 | 25 | 93 | 90 |
| *2* | Vaallus | 1 551 | 657 | 144 | 197 | 354 | 136 | 128 | 75 | 47 | |
| *3* | Atherton | 88 | 52 | 116 | | 35 | | 15 | 50 | | |
| *4* | Bucklands | 112 | 88 | 310 | | | 10 | 18 | 25 | | |
| *5* | New Bucklands | 783 | 573 | 31 | 30 | | | | 7 | 15 | 40 |
| **Total** | | **4 407** | **2 729** | **1 309** | **454** | **403** | **304** | **202** | **182** | **155** | **130** |

The onion crop is dominated by a few farmers and is not a representative crop of the area. Groundnut production is incorporated in this research as many farmers grow a small area to groundnuts or drybeans. The main constraints for groundnut production are the hectares available of suitable sandy soils and the long time period before groundnuts can be planted on the same soils again. Being a legume groundnuts are also good to include in a crop rotation system, and while conducting the pilot survey several farmers stated that they had a water quality problem particularly with groundnuts, especially when sprinkler irrigated, during the daytime.

The three major crops according to hectares planted remain wheat, maize and lucerne, and in financial terms, potatoes. Wheat is relatively tolerant to saline conditions, while maize and potatoes are equally sensitive to salinity and lucerne is only moderately tolerant.

## 2.6. DESCRIPTION OF THE CASE STUDY FARMS

The aim of this section of the chapter is to describe the case study farms with regards to their soil resource endowments, farming structure and financial positions in 1999.

Previous studies on selecting a representative farmer for a specific study area have dealt extensively with the topic (e.g. Backeberg 1984, Swart 1989, Symington 1993, etc.). In this research case study farmers are selected mainly for the purpose of testing and evaluating the farm level model described in this report. Criteria by which the specific farmers used in this research was selected are:

- the availability of accurate data,
- the source and quality variability of irrigation water,
- the farmers knowledge of irrigation farming in the OVIB region as a whole, and
- the hectares irrigation water rights in relation to the other farmers in the sub-area.

Table 2.2 lists the average hectares of water rights held in each sub-area as well as the hectares water rights held by the case study farmers for comparison. Taking all the above points into consideration, the case study farmers are generally close to the average with regards to hectares irrigation rights held.

Table 4.10 shows an example of the sets that irrigation land is divided up into for use in SALMOD to reflect the soil clay percentage, drainage status and the irrigation system used. In the sub-area case study farm descriptions that follow the abbreviations within brackets correlate with the elements of these sets.

### 2.6.1. AN ANALYSIS OF THE SOIL RESOURCES OF THE CASE STUDY FARMS

Table 2.7 shows the results of soil samples taken in the study area. The table consists of a key that lists the irrigation extraction points for each sampling point, and a water sources table that displays the electrical conductivity of the irrigation water (ECiw) and the calculated average electrical conductivity of the saturated soil paste (ECe) at each sampling site, which together are used to calculate the ECiw to ECe conversion factors. The table provides ECe, clay and silt%, and Ca, Mg and Na concentrations measured in milli-equivalents per litre (me/l) readings. The total dissolved solids in the irrigation water (TDSiw) is calculated from the ECiw using the following formula:

$$TDSiw = (7.3 \times ECiw) - 34. \qquad (2.1)$$

The sodium adsorption ratio (SAR) is calculated for each sampling point from the Ca, Mg and Na concentration values using the following formula:

$$SAR = Na / \sqrt{(Ca + Mg)/2} \qquad (2.2)$$

**Table 2.7 Results of soil samples taken on the case study farms, 2000**

**KEY:**

| Sub Area | Irrigating mainly from: |
|---|---|
| Sub.1.1 | Vaal River near Riet confluence |
| Sub.1.2 | Riet River near Vaal confluence |
| Sub.2* | Vaal River at Vaalkus |
| Sub.3* | Atherton canal |
| Sub.4.1 | Bucklands canal |
| Sub.4.2 | Bucklands canal |
| Sub.5 | Louis Bosman Canal (Orange River water) |

*for these two sub-regions samples were taken 23-24 August 2000

**Water sources**

| | Sub.1.1 | Sub.1.2 | Sub.3* | Sub.2* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| TDSiw: | 550 | 959 | 149 | 506 |
| ECiw: | 80 | 136 | 25 | 74 |
| Ave.ECe | 158 | 385 | 5194 | 248 |
| **ECiw-ECe** | **2.0** | **2.8** | **207.7** | **3.4** |

**Water sources**

| | Sub.4.1 | Sub.4.2 | Sub.5 |
|---|---|---|---|
| TDSiw: | 134 | 134 | 105 |
| ECiw: | 23 | 23 | 19 |
| Ave.ECe | 45 | 111 | 26 |
| **ECiw-ECe** | **2.0** | **4.8** | **1.4** |

**ECiw - TDSiw conversion:**

TDSiw = ( 7.3 x ECiw ) - 34

| Depth: | Sub.1.1 | Sub.1.2 | Sub.2* | Sub.3* | Sub.4.1 | Sub.4.2 | Sub.5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | ECe(mS/m) | | | | | | |
| 1 | 98 | 292 | 234 | 5526 | 45 | 51 | 26 |
| 2 | 67 | 441 | 263 | 4861 | 44 | 190 | 22 |
| 3 | 262 | 370 | | | 46 | 93 | 29 |
| 4 | 205 | 437 | | | | | 28 |
| Ave. | 158 | 385 | 248 | 5194 | 45 | 111 | 26 |
| | Clay% | | | | | | |
| 1 | 6 | 20 | 40 | 57 | 32 | 24 | 6 |
| 2 | 8 | 24 | 43 | 59 | 35 | 18 | 8 |
| 3 | 8 | 18 | | | 32 | 16 | 10 |
| 4 | 10 | 24 | | | | | 9 |
| Ave. | 8 | 22 | 42 | 58 | 33 | 19 | 8 |
| | Ca (me/l) | | | | | | |
| 1 | 2 | 8 | 6 | 142 | 1 | 2 | 1 |
| 2 | 2 | 11 | 5 | 41 | 1 | 9 | 1 |
| 3 | 10 | 11 | | | 1 | 3 | 1 |
| 4 | 4 | 13 | | | | | 1 |
| Ave. | 5 | 11 | 5 | 92 | 1 | 5 | 1 |
| | Na(me/l) | | | | | | |
| 1 | 7 | 10 | 15 | 330 | 2 | 2 | 1 |
| 2 | 3 | 17 | 17 | 278 | 1 | 4 | 1 |
| 3 | 7 | 19 | | | 2 | 3 | 1 |
| 4 | 8 | 16 | | | | | 1 |
| Ave. | 6 | 16 | 16 | 304 | 2 | 3 | 1 |

| Depth: | Sub.1.1 | Sub.1.2 | Sub.2* | Sub.3* | Sub.4.1 | Sub.4.2 | Sub.5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | TDSow | | | | | | |
| 1 | 681 | 2098 | 1673 | 40306 | 295 | 341 | 152 |
| 2 | 453 | 3185 | 1886 | 35451 | 287 | 1353 | 124 |
| 3 | 1879 | 2667 | | | 303 | 645 | 176 |
| 4 | 1463 | 3156 | | | | | 173 |
| Ave. | 1119 | 2777 | 1780 | 37879 | 295 | 780 | 156 |
| | Silt% | | | | | | |
| 1 | 2 | 9 | 13 | 18 | 14 | 14 | 2 |
| 2 | 2 | 8 | 12 | 8 | 15 | 10 | 4 |
| 3 | 2 | 8 | | | 15 | 10 | 4 |
| 4 | 2 | 8 | | | | | 5 |
| Ave. | 2 | 8 | 13 | 13 | 15 | 11 | 4 |
| | Mg(me/l) | | | | | | |
| 1 | 2 | 7 | 8 | 205 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| 2 | 1 | 8 | 5 | 156 | 1 | 5 | 1 |
| 3 | 10 | 8 | | | 1 | 2 | 1 |
| 4 | 5 | 8 | | | | | 1 |
| Ave. | 5 | 8 | 7 | 180 | 1 | 3 | 1 |
| | SAR(me/l) | | | | | | |
| 1 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 25 | 2 | 2 | 1 |
| 2 | 2 | 6 | 7 | 28 | 1 | 2 | 1 |
| 3 | 2 | 6 | | | 2 | 2 | 0 |
| 4 | 4 | 5 | | | | | 1 |
| Ave. | 3 | 5 | 7 | 27 | 2 | 2 | 1 |

#### *2.6.1.1 Sub-area 1 (Olierivier ) case study farm*

Sub.1.1 and Sub.1.2 represent two sampling points on the Olierivier case study farm, representative of the main soil types on the farm. The samples for Sub.1.1 were taken from the edge of a centre pivot irrigated field from four different depths with 30cm spacing in-between, from depth 1, being the soil surface, to depth 4, measuring 1.2 meters below the surface, and similarly so for all the other samples taken. The average soil clay percentage is 8% indicating a loamy sand soil. The field is situated near the confluence of the Vaal and the Riet rivers, but irrigating with Vaal River water with an ECiw of 80 mS/m. Sampling point Sub.1.2 is also situated near the confluence of the Vaal and the Riet Rivers, but irrigating with Riet River water with an ECiw of 136 mS/m. With an average clay percentage of 22%, Sub.1.2 is a sandy loam soil, bordering on a sandy clay soil. The poor ECiw and high clay percentage result in the ECe being considerably higher (385 mS/m) than Sub.1.1 (158 mS/m). The readings for all the other sub-areas are calculated similarly.

The Olierivier farmer has 100 ha of naturally drained (NDS) loamy sand soils (LMS) that have a clay percentage greater than 15%, and a further 20 ha also on loamy sand soils and centre pivot irrigation (CPI), but with artificial drainage (ADS) installed. 10 ha on sandy loam (SNL) soils are waterlogged (WLS) with 5 ha under centre pivot irrigation and 5 ha flood irrigated (FIS). 30 ha limited drainage (LDS) loamy sand soils are flood irrigated, and a further 40 ha centre pivot irrigated.

#### *2.6.1.2 Sub-area 2 (Vaallus) case study farm*

For the Vaallus (Sub.2) and Atherton (Sub.4) case study farmers only one sample was taken at a later date using a soil bore for sample collection instead of a backhactor, so these were not taken to 90 and 120 cm depths. After 60cm the clay was very heavy and the soil bore could not penetrate. For Sub.3.1 and Sub.3.2 where the backhactor was used, a water table was detected after 90 cm.

The sampling point for the Vaallus case study farmer, Sub.2 has a high clay percentage of 42% and proportionately high Ca, Mg and Na values resulting in a very high SAR of 7. These soils will be very expensive to drain in order to remediate and, with the high SAR the structure, can easily break down causing further impenetrability.

The Vaallus case study farmer has 50 ha of naturally-drained (NDS), sandy loam soils (SNL) under centre pivot irrigation (CPI), a further 320 ha also under centre pivots but on sandy clay soils of which 200 ha are naturally drained and the other 120 ha artificially drained (ADS). The 61 ha under drip irrigation (DIS) on the sandy loam naturally-drained soils are planted to vineyards, which are not included in this seasonal research study.

#### *2.6.1.3 Sub-area 3 (Atherton) case study farm*

Sub.4 was measured as an indication of the worst-case scenario possible in the study area; the sample was taken from a portion of the case study farmers' land that had been withdrawn from irrigation. Non-point source irrigation seepage from higher lying neighbouring lands transpires from the specific piece of land, leaving the salts behind. Salts have accumulated to be 207 times greater than the receiving ECiw. Because of the high clay percentage of the soil (58%), it is unfeasible for the farmer to drain and try remediating the soil.

The soil plot sampled in Atherton was a worst-case scenario to show the magnitude of the effects of soil salinisation, however the data recorded in SALMOD are a more representative division than that which appears

in the analysis in Table 2.7. The Atherton farmer has 22 flood irrigated (FIS) ha on clayey soils (CLY) with limited drainage.

#### *2.6.1.4 Sub-area 4 (Bucklands) case study farm*

The Bucklands sampling point Sub.3.1 has a high clay percentage and the same receiving ECiw and SAR as Sub.3.2 which has a much lower clay percentage yet the ECiw to ECe conversion factor is very good at 2 compared with Sub.3.2 which has a very high factor of 4.8. It was observed when taking the samples that the cracks which form on these clayey soils as they dry out go very deep into the soil; so, if allowing the soils to dry out well before irrigating, i.e. low frequency irrigation, a very good infiltration results which seems to have leached out most of the salts. The same irrigation practices and receiving water quality are applied in Sub.3.2, though with the lower clay percentage (19% vs. 33%) doesn't get as much salts leached. Low frequency irrigation is thus a management option on clayey soils if the crop is tolerant to the ECiw applied.

The Bucklands case study farmer indicated that he had only 50 ha of flood irrigated (FIS) clayey soils (CLY), which have a clay percentage of greater than 45% clay, on limited drainage soils (LDS). The analysis in Table 2.7, however, shows that the soils are sandy clay (35% - 45% clay) and sandy loam soils (15-25% clay) soils.

#### *2.6.1.5 Sub-area 5 (New Bucklands) case study farm*

Sub.5 is the sampling point on the New Bucklands case study farm used as a control in this research. The ECiw of 19 mS/m is the best in the study area and the loamy sand soils with 8% clay are well drained resulting in the lowest ECiw to ECe conversion factor of 1.4. The SAR of 1 is also by far the lowest in the study area.

The New Bucklands case study farmer has 145 ha irrigable land, all on loamy sand soils (LMS) of which 110 ha are centre pivot irrigated (CPI), 30 ha flood irrigated (FIS) and 5 ha drip irrigated (DIS). 100 ha are naturally drained, 22 ha have limited drainage (LDS), 10 ha are artificially drained (ADS) and 10 ha are waterlogged (WLS). Five ha of olive trees are drip irrigated on the stony limited drainage ground, and should essentially also be left out of the seasonal crop analysis.

### 2.6.2. THE CURRENT FARMING STRUCTURE OF THE 5 CASE STUDY FARMERS

The crop enterprise budgets (CEBs) used in SALMOD for all crops and for each case study farmer appear in Appendix 2. This CEB data, irrigable land division data and the data in Table 2.9 are the only specific case study farm level data required for SALMOD. Table 2.8 provides a description of the table headings in Table 2.9 that lists the individual case study farm data required for SALMOD.

A function is built into SALMOD that calculates that the irrigation area (IA) hectares listed in Table 2.9 have to correspond with the sum of the hectares listed in irrigable land division tables; if not an error message is displayed stating that the areas of irrigated land do not correspond with the soil type, irrigation system and drainage status data. IA shows that all case study farmers have more irrigable land than irrigation rights (IR). The cost of irrigation water (WC) is constant for the whole study area at R0.17/mm/ha irrigation rights (IR). Pumping costs are however vastly different in each sub-area and within each sub-area, depending on where the field is in relation to the water extraction source. For this reason, and because the financial effect of irrigation water quality and not the effect of pumping costs, this study focuses on the pumping costs set at the GWK

average for the region at R0.56 /mm/ha water rights held. In reality, the New Bucklands and Atherton farmers irrigate directly from a passing water distribution canal at a very low cost.

**Table 2.8 SET CSF, the case study farmer data set headings description**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| IA | Total current irrigable area | (ha) |
| IR | Current irrigation rights per allocated quota | (ha) |
| WC | Water costs - can be varied for each sub-area | (R per mm) |
| PC | Pumping costs - will vary within sub-areas | (R per mm) |
| FC | Non-allocatable annual fixed costs | (R per annum) |
| MPC | Maximum production capital availability | (R) |
| MCL | Maximum fixed capital improvement loan availability | (R) |
| TKWA | Total kilowatts available | (kW) |
| TLA | Total labourers available | (person) |
| LABC | Average Labour Costs (\person\ 24 working day month) | (R) |

**Table 2.9 OVIB individual case study farm data required for SALMOD, 1999**

| | IA | IR | WC | PC | FC | MPC | MCL | TKWA | TLA | LABC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Units* | *ha* | *ha* | *R/mm/ha* | *R/mm/ha* | *R* | *R* | *R* | *kW* | *Men* | *R/month* |
| **OL** | 200 | 141 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 561000 | 300000 | 600000 | 280 | 16 | 1000 |
| **VL** | 461 | 339 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 2475015 | 500000 | 1000000 | 720 | 18 | 1000 |
| **BL** | 50 | 58.4 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 38000 | 100000 | 200000 | 46 | 2 | 1000 |
| **AT** | 22 | 28.9 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 130000 | 150000 | 300000 | 120 | 4 | 1000 |
| **NB** | 145 | 100 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 1049109 | 600000 | 1200000 | 300 | 14 | 1000 |
| OL,VL,BL,AT & NB are the Olierivier, Vaallus, Bucklands, Atherton and New Bucklands case study farmers | | | | | | | | | | |

A full financial analysis was conducted for all the case study farmers to be able to compare their financial solvability, liquidity, profitability and efficiency. The only data from this analysis used in SALMOD however are the crop enterprise budgets and the fixed cost component (FC) calculated for each case study farmer for all income and expenses for all activities excluding the CEB income and expenses of the six crops and management option expenses modelled in SALMOD.

The value in Rand of the maximum production capital (MPC) loan available to the farmers for one production season was obtained when conducting the financial analysis survey. The maximum fixed capital loan (MCL) is calculated as double the MPC loan. This value is used in SALMOD as a constraint to limit the capital expenditure on fixed capital management options.

The total kilowatts available (TKWA) in traction power, the total labour available (TLA) in men and the labour costs (LABC) in Rand per man per month are built into the model as constraints, but not activated for the model runs on which this research is based as the impact of water quality related and not other farm constraints are to be examined.

### 2.6.3. THE FINANCIAL POSITIONS OF THE 5 CASE STUDY FARMS

Within the top five lines of Table 2.10, the land and water resources available for the five case study farmers are listed, as well as a percentage value which indicates what percentage of the financial analysis data listed is from the six irrigation farming activities modelled in SALMOD alone. The Vaallus case study farmer for example has

a total farm size of 3383 ha of which only 461 are irrigated and for which only 314.8 ha water rights are held. Other income is derived from the land not irrigated, but as the farmer keeps separate records for the different farming enterprises, only the irrigation activities data was supplied and therefore the results show 100% of the income is from seasonal irrigation farming alone. The Atherton farmer however is a part-time farmer, as is typical in the Atherton and Bucklands sub-areas, and in particular in Bucklands the area referred to in Afrikaans as "Die Erwe", translated as "the plots", due to their close proximity to the town of Douglas. The financial data analyses for the Atherton case study farmer included his income from his job in town, his extensive cattle farm and therefore only 53% of the income derived in the statements is from irrigation farming alone. The Bucklands case study farmer's wife's income from her private job in town is also included in the statements and thus only 68% of the income derived in the statements is from irrigation farming alone. The basic history of the case study farmers is as follows. The Olierivier farmer has been farming for over 20 years on his farm which is situated right at the confluence of the Vaal and the Riet Rivers, but following the devastation caused to his farm by the 1988 floods is still in a building up phase. The Vaallus farmer has also been farming for over 15 years and is expanding rapidly. The Bucklands farmer has recently started farming, subcontracting his mechanisation and growing flood irrigated lucerne. The Atherton case study farmer farms part-time on an extensive livestock farm and a small irrigation plot that he inherited. A portion of the plot area has been withdrawn from irrigation due to salinisation (see worst case scenario in Table 2.7), and therefore there is an excess of hectares water rights held (28.7) in relation to the area irrigated (22 ha). The New Bucklands farmer had only been farming for 5 years at the date of this analysis, on good virgin irrigation soils and with very good quality irrigation water.

Looking at solvability (Table 2.10), the net capital ratio varies from 5.23 for the Atherton farmer, who is over capitalised having one large tractor and implements for the small area of lands he works, down to 2.24 for the Bucklands farmer, which is the general level for even the larger farmers. The leverage ratio is best for the Atherton case study farmer (0.24), the smallest case study farmer, followed by the largest case study farmer from Vaallus (0.42) and is worst (0.81) for the Bucklands case study farmer, the second smallest case study farm. The own capital ratio is highest for the Atherton case study farmer (80.87%) and second highest for the Olierivier farmer (70.38%), with the other farmers being just over 50%. The solvability of the irrigation farmers is therefore not dependent on the size of the irrigated area.

The norms for liquidity ratios (Table 2.10) are for general farming and could be adjusted lower for the capital-intensive nature of irrigation. The small farms (Bucklands and Atherton) show a current ration greater than 1 while for the larger farms it is around 0.30. The acid test ratio also shows large results for the two small farms and lower results for the larger farms. The low intermediate ratio of the Olierivier farmer reflects the re-build-up phase of his irrigation operation after the floods, and the very high ratio of the Atherton farmer reflects the other sources of income obtained by the farmer.

The results for farm profitability and profitability on own capital show that profitability is a function of farm size and resource endowment. The two small farms, Bucklands and Atherton, have a farm profitability of –4.89% and 1.66% and a profitability on own capital of –53.4% and –6.43% respectively, while the largest farm, the Vaallus case study farm has a farm profitability of 16.77% and profitability on own capital of 23.38%. The New Bucklands farm is half the size of the Olierivier case study farm, yet it achieves a farm profitability of 15.88% and profitability on own capital of 18.62%, which is due to its good resource endowment.

**Table 2.10 Financial analysis of the case study farms, March 1998 - February 1999**

| | | | | Olierivier | Vaallus | Bucklands | Atherton | New Bucklands |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | ***Sub-areas:*** | | | | | |
| | | | ***Total Farm size (ha):*** | 344 | 3383 | 60.4 | 2035 | 145 |
| | | | ***Irrigable (ha):*** | 200 | 461 | 50 | 22 | 100 |
| | | | ***% Income from irrigation reflected in statements:*** | 97% | 100% | 68% | 53% | 83% |
| | | | ***Water rights (ha):*** | 140.3 | 314.8 | 58.4 | 28.7 | 100 |
| **1. SOLVABILITY** | | **Formula:** | **Norms:** | | | | | |
| a. Net Capital Ratio | = | Total Assets / Total Liabilities | ( >2:1) | 3.38 | 2.36 | 2.24 | 5.23 | 2.30 |
| b. Leverage Ratio | = | Total Liabilities / Own Capital (Net worth) | ( 1:1) | 0.42 | 0.74 | 0.81 | 0.24 | 0.77 |
| c. Own Capital Ratio | = | Own capital / Total Assets * 100 | ( <50%) | 70.38 | 57.57 | 55.30 | 80.87 | 56.57 |
| | | | | | | | | |
| **2. LIQUIDITY** | | | | | | | | |
| a. Current Ratio | = | Current Assets / Current Liabilities | ( >2:1 ) | 0.39 | 0.26 | 1.28 | 1.44 | 0.30 |
| b. Acid Test Ratio | = | Current Assets – Stocks / Current Liabilities | ( 1:1) | 0.36 | 0.26 | 0.97 | 0.53 | 0.23 |
| c. Intermediate Ratio | = | Total Current+ Medium Term Assets / Total Current + Medium Term Liabilities | (>4:1) | 1.30 | 2.22 | 2.24 | 9.98 | 2.49 |
| | | | | | | | | |
| **3. PROFITABILITY** | | | | | | | | |
| a. Farm Profitability | = | NFI / Ave. Capital use | | 7.52 | 16.77 | -4.89 | 1.66 | 15.88 |
| b. Profitability on Own Capital | = | Net Farm Profit / Ave. Own Capital | | 3.05 | 23.38 | -53.40 | -6.43 | 18.62 |
| | | | | | | | | |
| **4. EFFICIENCY RATIOS** | | | | | | | | |
| a. Capital Turnover Ratio | = | Gross Value of Production / Average Total Capital used | | 0.40 | 0.51 | 0.25 | 0.21 | 0.34 |
| b. Cost Ratio | = | Total Expenditure / Gross Value of Production | | 0.81 | 0.67 | 1.20 | 0.92 | 0.53 |
| c. Debt Servicing Ratio | = | Debt servicing (instalment + interest) / Gross Value of Production | | 0.13 | 0.06 | 0.40 | 0.33 | 0.21 |

When looking at the efficiency ratios, the capital turnover ratio definitely correlates to the size of irrigable land possessed, with the smallest farm, Atherton having a ratio of 0.21 and Vaallus the largest at 0.51. The cost ratio shows that the Bucklands farmer doesn't cover his expenditures with his production income alone, and the Atherton farmer barely covers his expenses. The Olierivier farmer value of 0.81 also shows much expenditure. The low cost ratio of 0.53 for the New Bucklands farmer, who has recently started farming, reflects the very good yields obtained on the new ground with very good quality irrigation water. The debt-servicing ratio also reflects farm size and length of time in operation, with the Bucklands and Atherton farmers having a debt serving ratio of 0.40 and 0.33 respectively, followed by the New Bucklands farmer (0.21), the Olierivier farmer (0.13) and a very low 0.06 for the Vaallus farmer, who puts all his profits from his farming operations directly back into his irrigation expenses.

## 2.7. SUMMARY

### 2.7.1. OVIB STUDY AREA

The OVIB has a total of 178 irrigation farmer members who hold a total of 8097 ha of irrigation rights. Particularly disturbing is the fact that nearly one quarter (1861) of these hectares are either slightly or severely affected by waterlogging or salinisation and that 49% of the land irrigated is either medium or low potential irrigation land. 28% of the area is flood irrigated and 70% sprinkler irrigated with the trend being conversion to centre pivot irrigation. This is a potential problem as it is difficult to leach for salinity management with centre pivot irrigation systems. The three major crops in the study area are wheat, maize and lucerne and, financially, potatoes.

The OVIB service area is subdivided into 5 sub-areas, Olierivier, Vaallus, Atherton, Bucklands and New Bucklands with average hectares water rights possessed ranging from 11 ha in Atherton to 137 ha in Vaallus. Looking at water quality in the different sub-areas, Olierivier received by far the poorest irrigation water.

The dilution effect of the Orange River on water quality at the Douglas barrage is clearly evident in Figure 2.4. With the construction of the Louis Bosman Canal, the increased incidence of Orange River water mixing with Lower Vaal and Riet River water may be the reason for the declining/improving trend in water quality from 1992 to 1998. With the possibility of a reduction in Orange River supply following the outcome of the Orange River Development Project Replanning Study (DWAF 1998), this trend could be reversed.

### 2.7.2. CASE STUDY FARMS

The case study farm in the New Bucklands sub-area has the most ideal irrigation water and soil conditions of all the case study farms in the study area and is therefore used as a control in this research, whereas the Atherton farmer's soil analysis was taken from an area withdrawn from irrigation due so soil salinity build-up and is used as a worst-case scenario. In SALMOD similar conditions as used for the Bucklands study area are used for the Atherton case study farm, to get realistic results for the portion of the farm which is not yet degraded.

The Vaallus case study farmer is in a phase of rapid expansion, putting all profits from farming back into the irrigation farm, while the Olierivier farmer is in re-build-up phase after the 1988 floods, which caused major damage to his farm.

In comparing the financial position of the case study farmers in the 5 sub-areas there is a strong correlation of the financial position of the farmers with irrigated farm size and resource endowment. The financial analysis also shows that the Bucklands and Atherton case study farmers need to have an alternative income source for them to survive financially with the current crops planted on the small areas irrigated.

In conclusion, although the hectares of water rights held by the case study farmers are more or less similar to the sub-area averages, the range of farms studied are very diverse in respect of resource endowment and financial position. With data being unavailable for the average financial position of farmers in each OVIB sub-area, the author speculates that the financial position of the case study farmers will also reflect the average financial positions of all irrigation farmers for each sub-area. This would allow the results of this research to be

extrapolated to sub-area level to determine the economic impact of water quality on the OVIB region as a whole. This, however, is beyond the scope of this research which focuses on the farm level model.

# CHAPTER 3. LITERATURE STUDY

*The rise and fall of a number of past civilizations have been linked to their ability to sustain irrigated agriculture. The inability to control salinisation and degradation of irrigated lands are mostly viewed as the main causes for their decline.*
***South African Water Quality Guidelines DWAF 1993***

## 3.1. INTRODUCTION

With the initial aim of this research being to determine the economic impact of water quality on irrigated agriculture, the term 'water quality' first needed to be defined and understood. In identifying the constituents of water quality and conducting a review of water-related literature on the study area, salinisation was identified as the main water quality constituent impacting on the study area. Next the factors that cause or influence salinisation needed to be identified and understood so that the complex interactions between the soil, the water and the crop could be isolated and built into an irrigation salinisation simulation model. The various management options to prevent salinisation from taking place and options to remediate affected soils and water bodies were also researched and, where relevant, incorporated into the model to determine the financial feasibility and financially optimal management combinations. Existing models and methodologies to manage irrigation salinisation were also reviewed to conceptualise both the methodology and the structure of the model to be employed to determine the economic impact of water quality on irrigated agriculture in the lower Vaal and Riet rivers.

As this literature study focuses on aspects relevant to the study area, comments relating the findings of the literature study to the study area, are included.

## 3.2. THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF WATER QUALITY

'Water quality' is a term which used to express the suitability of water to sustain various uses or processes. Any particular use or process will have certain requirements for the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics of the water (Bartram & Balance, 1996:9). Water quality is thus a lumped term used to define the state of water and comprises different components, each influencing the applicability for an intended use of the specified water body. These components are: sedimentation, harmful synthetic organic and inorganic compounds, micro-organism contamination, micro-element toxicity, heavy metal accumulation, eutrophication and salinity.

Water quality is assessed by relating actual measured concentrations of the constituent being examined to the published guidelines. These guidelines link some impact to the user, for example crop yield reduction, for a given concentration range. Although generalised water quality guidelines for South Africa are available (DWAF, 1993), the quality of water required for irrigation depends on the crop being irrigated, the type of irrigation system used and the suitability of the soil for irrigation. Farm management practices such as drainage and gypsum application will also impact on guidelines for irrigation. Moolman & Quibell (1995:11) therefore recommend that site-specific guidelines be formulated.

According to Backeberg *et al, (*1996:22), water quality is becoming of increasing concern to irrigation, both from a supply point of view and in respect of the environmental impacts of irrigation. As the use of the water resources of

South Africa intensifies, the general quality of supplies, both surface and ground water declines. The most significant water quality problems facing irrigation are according to Backeberg, *et al,* (1996:22) are:

- high sediment loads of surface runoff usually resulting from poor land use and soil conservation practice;
- high salinity resulting from natural sources as well as from the discharge of waste water into river systems;
- eutrophication of stored water resulting from enrichment by nitrates and phosphates; and
- raised water temperatures in some isolated cases.

Experience has shown that water quality constituents of concern to irrigation can be subdivided into a number of tiers based on the frequency in which they have been found to determine a water's fitness for use in practice.

**a) Potentially toxic ions.** Ions are viewed as toxic to plant growth when they cause crop damage or reduced yield at concentrations which are lower than their relative contribution to soil salinity. The ions of primary concern are boron, chloride, and sodium. It is partially concluded that waters impacting upon the study area do not have microelement concentrations of, for example chloride (which affects mainly the quality of crops such as potatoes and tobacco) and boron, so high as to have an impact on the crops grown in the area. According to TAMU AGNEWS (1998) crops grown on soils that have an imbalance of calcium and magnesium may also exhibit toxic symptoms. Sulphate salts affect sensitive crops by limiting the uptake of calcium and increasing the adsorption of sodium and potassium, resulting in a disturbance in the cationic balance within the plant. The bicarbonate ion within the soil solution harms the mineral nutrition of the plant through its effect on the uptake and metabolism of nutrients. High concentrations of potassium may introduce a magnesium deficiency and iron chlorosis. An imbalance of magnesium and potassium may be toxic, but increasing the calcium levels can reduce the effects of both.

**b) Trace elements.** Trace elements that negatively affect plant growth are also viewed as being essentially toxic. The trace elements of heavy metals are easily absorbed by the soil and accumulate within the surface layers, and once absorbed cannot be easily removed.

**c) Miscellaneous problems.** Other problems associated with the composition of irrigation water are:

- high nitrogen concentrations which cause excessive vegetative growth, lodging, and delayed crop maturity;
- high bicarbonate, gypsum or iron concentrations, which can result in unsightly deposits on leaves and fruits;
- chloride at relatively low concentrations affects the quality, but not the yield of tobacco; most other crops are also affected by high chlorine concentrations;
- the greatest hazard of unusual pH values is the corrosive effect on irrigation equipment;
- water induced corrosion and encrustation of irrigation equipment;
- a degree of restriction of use due to clogging of sprayers or drippers and/or increased wear on equipment by suspended material; and
- dissolved organic compounds (e.g. herbicides) that can be toxic to plants and soil microorganisms when present in sufficient concentrations.

**d) Salinity and Sodicity.** As far as water quality constituents are concerned, the salinity and sodicity of water have been found to be the most important factors in determining its fitness for use and are often combined in

systems attempting to classify irrigation water quality. Irrigation with saline water induces soil salinity. This causes a reduction in crop yields once the threshold soil salinity is exceeded. By irrigating with sodic water, soil sodicity is induced which results in reduced soil permeability. Salinity and sodicity of water also interact with one another in soil. High irrigation water salinity levels serve to counteract the negative effect that elevated sodicity levels have on soil permeability.

Ragab (2001) states that salinity is of great concern in the irrigated lands of arid and semi-arid zones because of the small contribution of rainfall to leaching and the often-poor quality of irrigation water. It is well established that soil salinity does not reduce crop yield significantly until a threshold level is exceeded. Beyond this threshold, yield decreases almost linearly as salinity increases. To avoid yield loss when salt concentration exceeds the crop tolerance limit, excess salts must be leached below the root zone. In areas where rainfall rate and regime are not adequate to provoke that process, irrigation water must be applied in excess. Therefore, when calculating the irrigation depth, an additional amount of water according to the salinity level should be added for leaching (Oster 1994, and Bresler & Hoffman 1986). The leaching requirement (LR), however, is usually defined, assuming a steady state regime.

Gouws *et al,* (1998:8) lists the three water quality components that have a financial impact on crop production as: the total salt effect, specific ion toxicity and sodium effect on soil properties. The concentration of dissolved salts however, be it from natural or anthropogenic causes, currently poses the greatest threat within the study area. This research will therefore deal specifically with the economic effects due to salinisation.

The total dissolved solids (TDS) concentration increases in static and slow-moving water bodies subject to large scale evaporation, as well as, according to Basson (1997:57), in rivers and river reaches receiving large quantities of effluent, mainly due to salinity build-up which results from the addition of salts through most uses of water. Construction of dams and weirs in a river course for the purpose of water storage, often lead to the problem of salination because, except for increasing the susceptibility to evaporation, thus also make the water available for use and reuse.

If the TDS concentration in water is high enough, the negative effect of irrigating with such waters can be immediate: alternatively, salts will accumulate in the soil. A high salt concentration in the soil body creates a physiological drought for the crops planted therein and thus climatic factors are important in salinity management. Sodification can also take place by which calcium and magnesium ions in the clay particles are replaced by sodium ions leading to a breakdown in soil structure making the soil impermeable and impenetrable to germinating seeds.

With regard to the water quality components (sedimentation, harmful synthetic organic and inorganic compounds, micro-organism contamination, micro-element toxicity, heavy metal accumulation, eutrophication and salinity) in the study area:

Sedimentation is not a problem in the study area because of conscientious soil conservation practices and a low annual precipitation. Although synthetic herbicides and pesticides are used in the study area, and various industrial and mining activities take place upstream in the river system, there have been no reports of concentrations reaching harmful levels within the study area.

Microbiological contamination (e.g. high *E.Coli* count) is also not perceived to be a problem within the study area. It is partially concluded that waters impacting upon the study area of this study do not have micro-element

concentrations of, for example chloride and boron, so high as to have an impact on the crops grown in the area. Chloride affects certain plants differently. Tobacco, for example, can produce excellent yields but if the chloride content of the water that it was irrigated with is past a certain threshold level then it is picked up in the grading resulting in financial losses due to the lower grades. Moolman and Quibell (1995:25) identified boron concentrations in excess of the water quality guidelines for poor and medium soils in parts of the study area. While a necessary nutrient, high boron levels cause plant toxicity, and concentrations should not exceed a certain plant-specific threshold value. Wheat, groundnuts and beans are sensitive to boron while cotton and lucerne are tolerant (DWAF 1996:41).

Stringent water quality standards and point source controls in the industrial areas upstream as well as the mixing of Vaal Barrage and Vaal Dam water to obtain a certain concentration as described by Bath & Quibell (1997:1), have resulted in low enough heavy metal concentrations that significant accumulation in soils does not occur. Nor is Nitrate pollution of such a magnitude so as to result in large-scale eutrophication. The concentration of dissolved salts, however, be it from natural or from anthropogenic causes, currently poses the largest threat within the study area.

### 3.2.1. THE ROLE OF CLIMATE IN WATER QUALITY ASSESSMENT

Climate is a major factor in determining the acceptability of a given water quality. According to Maas (1990) in DWAF (1993:222), crops can tolerate greater salt stress when the weather is cool and humid than when it is hot and dry. Three climatic variables are considered to be of importance in this regard: total precipitation, evaporation demand and seasonality of rainfall.

- *Total precipitation.* The higher the rainfall the lower the irrigation requirements and also, therefore, the load on irrigation water variables;

- *Evaporation demand.* Crop water requirement usually increases as a ratio of evaporative demand. The higher the evaporative demand, the higher the crop water requirement and the more irrigation water is required to satisfy this demand;

- *Seasonality of rainfall.* Rain occurs predominantly during either Summer or Winter in the areas under irrigation in South Africa. Winter rainfall leaches from the soil the salts that accumulated during the summer irrigation season, depending on the quantity of the rain and the ease with which a particular soil is leached. This could provide a practically salt-free topsoil and seedbed for the germination of crops planted in Spring. Under Summer rainfall conditions it often rains during the period of maximum crop water requirement. Rainfall thus reduces soil salinity in proportion to its share in total water application. The OVIB area, however, does not receive Winter rainfall, and annual Summer precipitation is possibly too low to have a major effect.

It is proposed that climate not be considered in the derivation of general water quality guidelines in DWAF (1993). Ideally, climate should be considered as part of a dynamic model that simulates crop response to climatic factors, irrigation applications and the resultant soil changes. It is, however, stated in DWAF (1996) that incorporating climatic variables in irrigation water quality assessment is problematic.

3.2.2. THE ROLE OF SOIL IN WATER QUALITY ASSESSMENT

Soil characteristics play an important role in ensuring the success of an irrigation project. Although practically any soil can be irrigated with appropriate management techniques and skills, irrigation soils are mostly selected on the basis of economic viability and the requirement that average management skills and techniques should suffice to irrigate them successfully (DWAF, 1993:223).

The bracketed area shown in Figure 3.1 is the vadose zone that incorporates the root zone. Salt accumulation in this region has the effect on plant growth that affects yield and thus crop returns. Without artificial irrigation drains the salts either accumulate in the vadose zone or are washed into the groundwater which either discharges the saline water back into the river system or which rises into the vadose zone causing waterlogging and heavy secondary salinisation.

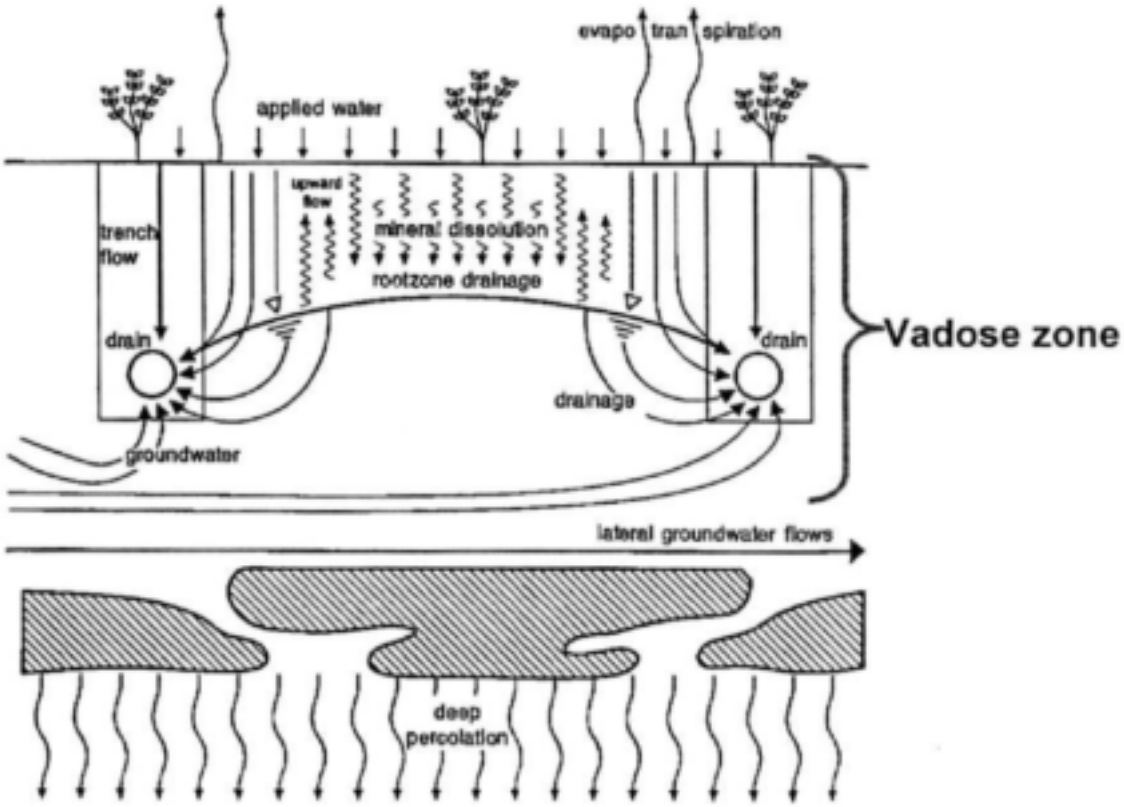



**Figure 3.1 A graphic representation of the paths of water movement in an irrigated system (Dinar & Zilberman 1991:54)**

Soil properties that according to DWAF (1993) have implications for water quality requirements include:

*Susceptibility to sodicity* – Although permeability is largely determined by soil texture and mineralogy, the combined effect of exchangeable sodium percentage of the soil and salt concentration of the water are often the most important factors in determining permeability;

*Soil pH and free lime* – Irrigation water pH, and especially the potential for lime precipitation could, over the long term, determine the pH of an irrigated soil;

*Soil texture* – Soil texture is one of the primary factors determining permeability and water-holding capacity. The presence of clay minerals and organic matter provides soils with an exchange capacity which buffers soils from rapid changes in their chemical composition; and

*Soil microbiology* – Soil microbial activity plays an important role in the breakdown of potentially harmful organic compounds that may occur in irrigation water. While compounds toxic to microbes may occur in irrigation water they may reduce soil microbial activity.

Moolman & Quibell (1995:11), classified soils for the Riet River according to their suitability for irrigation, as follows:

*Class 1* – Soils highly suited to irrigation, consisting of soil types that are well drained and that have a 10-25% clay content. There is very little, if any accumulation of salts in these soils and soil water salinity is low. As a result of the good drainage, crops grown on these soils can tolerate higher salt concentrations in the irrigation water.

*Class 2* – Soils moderately suited to irrigation, consisting of soil types made up of 15-35% clay with moderate internal drainage and soil water salt concentrations are higher than those of Class 1.

*Class 3* – Soils poorly suited to irrigation, having poor internal drainage and consisting of 35-55% clay. Salts, therefore, tend to accumulate in these soils and soil water EC is high. The poor drainage will cause crops grown on these soils to display the highest yield loss as a result of salt in the irrigation water.

In TAMU AGNEWS (1998), salt affected soils are classified as saline and/or sodic. Both the electrical conductivity of the saturated soil paste (ECe) and the sodium adsorption ratio (SAR) are commonly used to classify salt affected soils. Salinity and sodicity are two types of salt problems that are very different. Soils may be affected only by salinity or by a combination of both salinity and sodium.

i) **Saline soils** normally have a pH value below 8.5, are relatively low in sodium and contain principally sodium, calcium and magnesium chlorides and sulphates. These compounds cause the white crust that forms on the surface. The compounds which cause saline soils are very soluble in water, therefore leaching is usually very effective in reclaiming these soils. According to Grobler in Aihoon *et al,* (1997:270), soil salinisation (i.e. mineralisation) is a result of accumulated salts – primary chlorides and sulphates of calcium, magnesium, sodium and potassium – in the surface soils of arid and semi-arid regions because of insufficient rainfall to flush them from the upper soil layers. The sources of these salts are the weathering of rocks and minerals (usually, sedimentary and metamorphic rocks of coastal origin), rainfall (in regions that lie close to the sea), groundwater and irrigation. The use of agricultural fertilizers exacerbates this problem. Water salinisation is therefore the result of runoff from the catchment basin of such areas, carrying with it a load of dissolved salts into the rivers into which they run. Groundwater can also become salinised in such areas through deep percolation and may in turn salinise the rivers into which they eventually run.

***Salinity Hazard*** – High concentrations of salt in the soil, as a result of irrigating with water with a high $EC_{iw}$, can result in a "physiological" drought condition. That is, even though the field appears to have plenty of moisture, the plants wilt because the roots are unable to absorb the water.

ii) **Sodic soils** generally have a pH value between 8.5 and 10. These soils are called "black alkali soils" due to their darkened appearance and smooth, slick-looking areas caused by the dispersed condition. In sodic soils sodium has destroyed the permanent structure, which tends to make the soil impervious to water, thus leaching alone will not be effective.

***Sodium Hazard*** – Continued use of water having a high SAR (sodium adsorption ratio) leads to a breakdown in the physical structure of the soil. Sodium is adsorbed and becomes attached to soil particles. The soil then becomes hard and compact when dry and increasingly impervious to water penetration. Fine textured soils, especially those high in clay, are most subject to this action. Certain amendments may be required to maintain soils under high SARs. Calcium and magnesium, if present in the soil in large enough quantities, will counter the effects of the sodium and help maintain good soil properties. Sodium hazard is usually expressed in terms of SAR (sodium adsorption ratio) calculated from the ratio of sodium to calcium and magnesium, which counter the effects of sodium. For waters containing a significant amount of bicarbonate, the adjusted sodium adsorption ratio (SARadj) is sometimes used. Soluble sodium percent (SSP) is also used to evaluate sodium hazard. SSP is defined as the ratio of sodium in epm (equivalents per million) to the total cation epm multiplied by 100. A water with a SSP greater than 60 percent may result in sodium accumulations that will cause a breakdown in the soil's physical properties (TAMU AGNEWS, 1998).

### 3.2.3. NORMS, MEASURES AND CONVERSIONS

#### *3.2.3.1 Norms*

The norms used by DWAF (1993:17) to categorise the quality of irrigation water into classes of fitness of use are the following:

*Crop yield* – the effect of irrigation on profitability is the main criterion used to determine the fitness of use of irrigation water;

*Soil degradation* – sustainability is an important prerequisite of irrigation farming. The fitness of use of irrigation water is largely determined by the degree to which water quality affects the soil degradation and sustainable production;

*Management options* – crops and soils vary in their sensitivity to the different water quality constituents effecting fitness for use. The degree to which different management options need to be employed to alleviate undesirable effects, affects the fitness for use of irrigation water.

A summary of the exact concentrations and levels used to classify irrigation water can be found in DWAF (1993:65).

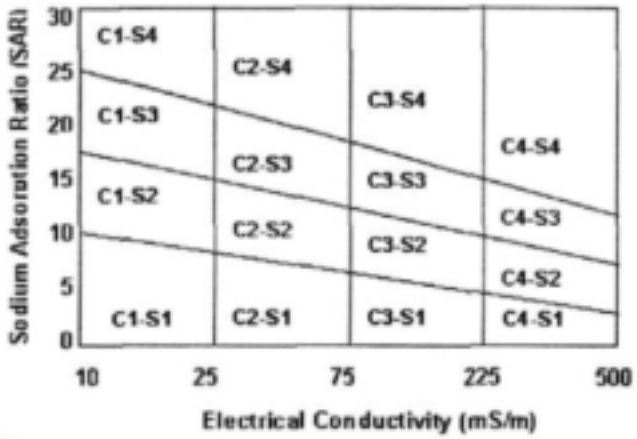
The classification of water in terms of its fitness for use for irrigation according to Van Veelen (1991) in DWAF (1993:18) is as follows:

*Class 1* – The water can be used for even the most sensitive crops and soils without any reduction in yield or the need for special management practices.

*Class 2* – The water can be used for all but the most sensitive crops and soils, with no reduction in yield or the need for special management practices.

*Class 3* – Some yield loss is experienced even though special management practices are implemented, but a reasonable profit is realised.

*Class 4* – Yield losses and/or the need for special management practices are such that the economic variability of irrigation is questionable. Certain crops can, however, still be produced in special circumstances or by using special management practices.




**Where:**

**S1 class** : Low sodium hazard to soil physical conditions. May harm sensitive crops.

**S2 class** : Appreciable sodium hazard to fine textured soils.

**S3 class** : May produce harmful levels of exchangeable sodium in most soils. Require good management.

**S4 class** : Generally unsatisfactory except at lower salinity levels (where gypsum amelioration is feasible)

**C1 class** : Suitable for most crops on moist soils.

**C2 class** : Suitable for moderately salt-tolerant crops without need for special leaching practices.

**C3 class** : Suitable for soils with restricted drainage. Require crops with good salt tolerance.

**C4 class** : Suitable only under special conditions.

**Figure 3.2 Diagram for the classification of irrigation water quality (DWAF, 1993:244)**

Figure 3.2 narrows this classification down for the classification of irrigation water according to the SAR and EC of the irrigation water. This is the same classification system as used by the US Salinity Laboratory and published in the USDA Handbook No.60 (1945).

Crop response is almost as dependent on the way irrigation applications are managed as on the water composition itself. The composition of irrigation water impacts upon crops principally through the changes it induces in soil properties such as soil solution salinity or percentage of exchangeable sodium (DWAF, 1993:211, Appendix 1). In the Vaal River system water quality deteriorates with increased usage pressure and the resulting reduced flow, but improves again with flooding. Water quality displays seasonal or cyclical fluctuations but does not actually progressively worsen over time. It is, however, expected that the irrigability of the soils can be affected as salts accumulate in the soils, and this in turn impacts on the sustainability of crop production. According to Du Preez *et al*, (2000:42) the overall trend in water quality is one of fluctuation, rather than increase over time. Despite the fluctuation, a slight trend in water quality deterioration is also evident in especially the lower reaches of the rivers.

#### *3.2.3.2 Measures*

Irrigation water salinity is measured as TDS (total dissolved solids) or EC (electrical conductivity).

- TDS is sometimes referred to as the total salinity and is measured or expressed in parts per million (ppm) or in the equivalent units of milligrams per litre or mg/l (1mg/l = 1ppm). TDS(lb/ac-ft) = TDS(mg/l) X 2.72.
- EC is a measure of electrical current and is reported in mmhos/cm, μmhos/cm or dS/m (1dS/m = 1mmhos/cm = 1000μmhos/cm).
- Subscripts are used with the symbol EC to identify the source of the sample:
- $EC_{iw}$ is the electrical conductivity of the irrigation water.
- $EC_e$ is the electrical conductivity of the soil as measured in a soil sample (saturated extract) taken from the root zone.
- $EC_d$ is used to determine the salinity of the drainage water that leaches below the root zone.

#### *3.2.3.3 Conversions*

Various TDS to EC (and *vice versa*) conversions are published in the water quality literature, but these are usually very vague and / or site specific.

EC is an indirect measure of the concentration of the total dissolved solids in solution – the greater the concentration of salts in solution, the greater the ability to conduct an electrical current. EC (mS/m) is measured more easily than TDS (mg/l or ppm) and thus used more widely in databases storing water quality data. EC is related to TDS by multiplying EC by a factor of between 6 and 7, depending on the composition of dissolved salts (DWAF, 1993:31-35).

Marshall & Jones (1997) use electrical conductivity measured in deci-Siemens per metre (dS/m) as a measure of soil salinity. Milli-Siemens per metre (mS/m) is however most commonly used and will be used in this analysis. In Marshall & Jones (1997) the TDS to EC conversion used was 650mg/l = 1mmohs/cm where 1dS/m = 1mmhos/cm.

## 3.3. THE IMPACT OF SALINITY ON IRRIGATED AGRICULTURE

By way of introduction to the impact of salinity on irrigated agriculture over time, two quotations:

> " Irrigation has been an important base for agriculture in Mesopotamia (what is now Iraq and part of Iran) for 6000 years. But Mesopotamia is very different from Egypt. Mesopotamia has low rainfall, and is supplied with surface water by only two major rivers, the Tigris and the Euphrates. Although they are much smaller than of the Nile, they have much more dramatic spring floods, from snowmelt in the highlands of Anatolia, and they carry more silt. Furthermore, the plains of Mesopotamia are very flat, and poorly drained, so that the region has always had persistent problems with poor soil, drought, catastrophic flooding, silting, and soil salinity.
>
> Mesopotamia has had times of successful irrigation, and times of silt and salinity crises: the latter around 2000 BC, 1100 BC, and after 1200 AD. The first crisis may have been caused by water politics. In any irrigation system, the farmers most downstream are those most likely to be short of water in a dry year, or to receive the most polluted water. In Sumeria, the city of Lagash was rather far downstream in the canal system based on the Euphrates. Apparently Entemanna of Lagash decided that he would instead cut a canal to tap Tigris water, but the addition of poor-quality water led to rapid salinisation of the soil." R Cowen **www-geology.ucdavis.edu/faculty.html (2001)**

" The Aral Sea will disappear by the year 2010, leaving behind an ecological and social desert. Massive irrigation projects in the region have reduced the Aral Sea to less than 40% of its original volume and more than tripled its salinity. More than 80% of animals once found in the region have disappeared. Increasing wind erosion has covered agricultural land with salt deposits from the newly exposed seabed, and both daily and annual temperature ranges are increasing significantly. As a final injustice, draining the Aral Sea has changed the regional climate sufficiently so that it can no longer support the vital irrigated cotton crop for which the sea was originally sacrificed. " **Perry and Vanderklein (1996)**

The accumulation of salts in soils and the frequently accompanying problem of drainage have plagued irrigated agriculture for centuries. Such accumulation results when plants transpire pure water leaving behind most of the salts in the soil solution; over time salts may concentrate to such an extent that they hinder germination, seedling, and vegetative growth, and consequently the yield and quality of crops (ASCE, 1990:13).

The ways in which a society manages water quality is a telling reflection of political, cultural, and economic processes within that society (Perry & Vanderklein, 1996, p.1). Backeberg *et al, (*1996:iii) states that practically all government water schemes (in South Africa) were built for socio-economic objectives; economic viability criteria were not accorded much importance. Cost recovery (even operational and maintenance) was usually not required for state expenditure on government irrigation schemes. Large capital subsidies were paid to irrigation boards and private irrigators in certain areas. Although project design was technically sound (soil/water/crop interactions), long-term social and environmental sustainability was not the order of the day then and therefore not considered.

According to Backeberg *et al, (*1996:i), approximately 40 000 small-scale farmers, 15 000 medium-to-large-scale farmers, 120 000 permanent workers, and an unknown number of seasonal workers are involved in irrigation farming, which consumes approximately 51% of South Africa's water on some 1,3 million ha and contributes 25 to 30 % of South Africa's agricultural output. From these figures the importance of irrigation farming to the South African economy is evident. If water quality degradation, and the accompanying environmental impacts, were to jeopardise the irrigation industry the socio-economic consequences could be disastrous for South Africa.

Although the impacts of irrigating with water of a poor quality along the Lower Riet and Vaal rivers may not be felt directly (i.e. the quality of the water is not so bad as to influence the crop directly or else the crop is tolerant to the quality of the water applied), the problem is that water of a poor quality deposits a salt load onto the soil, which slowly builds up and jeopardises the sustainability of the specific production practise. At a certain level of salt accumulation it will become economically feasible (depending on the soil type and depth) to over-irrigate to leach out salts, yet this eventually results in soils becoming waterlogged and underground drainage thus becomes necessary. The water quality problem now becomes an observable externality because returnflows to rivers are now direct, less filtration takes place and fertilisers and chemicals supplement the water applied to the crops irrigated. The practice in California and Australia is that these agricultural returnflows have to be managed on the farm or be strictly controlled with heavy fines for exceeding fixed limits.

## 3.4. MANAGEMENT OPTIONS TO IMPROVE WATER QUALITY

One of the aims of this research was to investigate various management options for the improvement of water quality. Although the main water quality constituent identified as problematic in the study area is salinisation, management options for other constituents will also be mentioned in the discussion to follow. After an introduction,

the water quality management options discussed are grouped into farm, regional and national level water quality management options.

### 3.4.1. INTRODUCTION

It is stated in DWAF (1993:221) that both the physical and chemical water quality constituents and properties can be manipulated in order to improve the quality of water for irrigation. Filtration removes particles that would otherwise clog drippers; pH is adjusted to acceptable levels or to decrease the adjustable sodium adsorption ratio and bicarbonate concentrations (lowering a low pH), or to precipitate heavy metals (raising a low pH). Adding agricultural gypsum increases the calcium-to-sodium ratio in order to decrease the sodicity hazard. Addition of a chelating agent prevents the oxidation of iron, which causes precipitation problems or rust-like blemishes on fruit. An improved composition can also be achieved by mixing with other water sources, as has also been proposed by Moolman & Quibell (1995) for the improvement of water quality in the Lower Vaal River near Douglas.

DWAF (1993:221) further states the following problem associated with water quality amelioration: Although it is technologically possible to ameliorate the quality of practically any water until it is suitable for an intended use, it is seldom economically justifiable. Other undesirable compounds could also be introduced during the amelioration process. It is generally however not the responsibility of the irrigator to remove undesirable constituents added to the river source by a previous user.

According to O'Keeffe *et al, (*in Aihoon *et al,* 1997) salinisation is a particularly intractable problem; the only known remedies are dilution with less saline water or reverse osmosis to remove dissolved salts, which is a very expensive process. The solution to water quality degradation is therefore prevention and not cure.

### 3.4.2. FARM LEVEL WATER QUALITY MANAGEMENT OPTIONS

With regard to water quality management in general, Cooper & Keim (1996) list the following management practices that can be implemented by farmers as water quality protection practices: integrated pest management, legume crediting, manure testing, split application of nitrogen and soil moisture testing for accurate irrigation scheduling. Appendix 1 of DWAF (1993:211) also lists the role of on-farm irrigation management practices and other considerations in determining water quality guidelines.

In respect of salinity in particular, Lee & Howitt (1996:41) state that applying more irrigation water, installing drainage systems, and planting salt-tolerant crops are among the alternatives available to farmers for mitigating the effects of rising water salinity levels, but when all the feasible alternatives are exhausted, cropland can and has gone out of production.

Numerous management practices exist for handling salinity and drainage problems in irrigated agriculture. They include: modifying crop rotations, changing the volume and timing of irrigation water, investing in improved irrigation systems, installing subsurface drainage systems, reusing drainage water, and treating or disposing of water collected in subsurface drains. (ASCE 1990:530)

Different on-farm management strategies for irrigation can produce a large range of soil salinity or soil sodicity values. These different on-farm management practices have been found to play a major role in the quality of water that can be used for irrigation. The following are important in irrigation management:

### *3.4.2.1 Understanding the effects of water quality on plants and crop yields*

Yield reductions of different crops vary for different levels of soil salinity as measured by the ECe under normal growing conditions. Plants usually have a certain threshold value up to which no yield reduction is experienced, but, as that threshold value is exceeded there is a steady reduction on yield as ECe deteriorates (Maas and Hoffman, 1977, Ayers and Westcot, 1985).

Certain crops are also susceptible to foliar injury from spray irrigation with water containing sodium and chloride. Irrigating with the same water quality, but at night, instead of during the day can reduce the level of foliar injury.

### *3.4.2.2 Leaching for salinity management*

ASCE (1990:414) lists alternative leaching methods, namely: continuous ponding, intermittent ponding, sprinkling, alternative row or border leaching and surface flushing.

Leaching is the basic management tool for controlling salinity. Water is applied in excess of the total amount used by the crop and lost to evaporation. The strategy is to keep the salts in solution and flush them below the root zone. The amount of water needed is referred to as the leaching requirement or leaching fraction. According to TAMU AGNEWS (1998) the time interval between leaching does not appear to be critical provided that crop tolerances are not exceeded. Hence, leaching can be applied by applying extra water with every irrigation, every few irrigations, once yearly, or even every few years depending on the severity of the salinity problem and the salt tolerance of the crop.

The leaching fraction is commonly calculated using the following relationship:

$$LF = EC_{iw} / EC_e \qquad (3.1)$$

Where:

$LF$ (leaching fraction) is the fraction of applied irrigation water that must be leached through the root zone

$EC_{iw}$ is the electric conductivity of irrigation water

$EC_e$ is the electrical conductivity of the soil at the bottom of the root zone

The leaching requirement is thus based on the electrical conductivity of the irrigation water and that of the drainage water at the bottom of the root zone.

Managing soil salinity by increasing the leaching fraction poses several problems. These arise from the fact that, in order to increase the leaching fraction, larger volumes of irrigation water are required. For example, to satisfy a leaching fraction of 0.1 (10%) for a crop with an evapotranspiration requirement of 1 000 mm, a total of 1 111 mm irrigation water needs to be applied. According to DWAF (1993:213) the following problems arise from this:

- the cost to acquire, distribute and apply the additional volume of water will be high;
- the infrastructure on most existing irrigation schemes would be unable to cope with a significant increase in water allocation;
- the possibility of irrigating a smaller area in order to increase the volume of water available for leaching per unit area, is not attractive;
- total income would be reduced while the expense per unit area would increase;

- To prevent probable waterlogging following water applications for an increased leaching fraction, artificial drainage will probably have to be installed.
- The increased throughput of water could reduce the aeration of the soil profile to such a degree that secondary problems such as root rot may arise.

Depending upon the mechanisms associated with irrigation return flow (e.g. the displacement of saline ground water bodies or leaching of saline geological strata), increased leaching fractions could promote the salinisation of rivers by mobilising the salt sources and leaching them into river systems. This has already been identified as a threat in the Vaalharts irrigation scheme by Herold & Bailey (1996) and will result in potentially drastic downstream effects on the study area of this research.

#### *3.4.2.3 Subsurface drainage*

Shallow water tables complicate salinity management since water may actually move upward into the root zone, carrying with it dissolved salts. Crops through evapotranspiration then extract soil-water and the salts are left behind. Shallow water tables also contribute to the salinity problem by restricting the downward leaching of salts through the soil profile. Installation of a subsurface drainage system is about the only solution available for this situation. Proper spacing and depth of the subsurface drains maintain the water level at an optimal level.

Herold & Bailey (1996) mentioned the following problem with regard to artificial drainage: besides the tremendous cost implications, the problem when soils reach saturation levels within the root zone and when subsurface drains are installed, is that the returnflows back into the river are greater and with it, increased salinity pollution for down-stream users.

#### *3.4.2.4 Seed placement*

Obtaining a satisfactory stand is often a problem when furrow irrigating with saline water. Growers sometimes compensate for poor germination by planting two or thee times as much seed as is normally required. However, planting procedures can be adjusted to lower the salinity in the soil around the germinating seeds. Good salinity control is often achieved with a combination of suitable practices, bed shapes and irrigation water management. Where seed germination or young plants are sensitive to salinisation, seeds must be placed away from the area where salts accumulate. In furrow irrigated soils or when planting in raised rows, seeds should be placed on the shoulders above the water line. When irrigating with drip emitters or micro sprinklers salts tend to move outward and upward (Rhoades *et al*, 1992:99).

#### *3.4.2.5 Irrigation systems as a management option*

The appropriate irrigation system is often determined by the soil properties, rather than irrigation water quality. The interaction between soil properties and water quality does however determine the most appropriate irrigation system. This consideration influences the cost-benefit relationship. Where high frequency is needed to keep the soil profile wet, drip and sprinkler irrigation are more suitable than flood systems as they are easier to manipulate and control and thus improve water use efficiency (Rhoades *et al*, 1992:103).

It is imperative when installing an expensive irrigation system such as a centre pivot irrigation system that the delivery capacity not only meets the crop requirement, but also the potential leaching requirement and, importantly, also be matched to the infiltrability of the soil. The larger the centre pivot irrigation system is, the greater the volume

per second that needs to be delivered at the edges of the system. These very high delivery rates should not exceed the rate at which the water can infiltrate into the soil. Irrigating on slopes exacerbates this problem and runoff damage can occur (Du Preez *et al*, 2000:155).

#### *3.4.2.6 Management of production inputs and resources*

One environmental benefit derived from use of land is its "sink value" i.e. its ability to accumulate and neutralise the hazardous effects of some fund pollutants deposited on it from natural and anthropogenic (i.e. stemming from human production and consumption activities) sources. The sink value of land results from microbial activities and natural reactions that detoxify hazardous substances. Intensification of farming, especially by applying more fertilizer, manure or pesticides per unit of land, increases the level of pollution. Conversely, if the land area is increased for production while all other farming inputs, such as the quantities of fertilizers applied are held constant, the level of pollution should decrease. The quantities of pollution emitted from this land should decrease accordingly. Unfortunately sink value does not apply to all pollution situations involving land (Aihoon *et al*, 1997:276). This is the case with stock pollutants as opposed to fund pollutants (Tietenberg, 1992:361).

In Aihoon (1994:181) the following hypotheses were proved: The functional relationship existing between the quantities of salt(s) emitted, as the dependent variable and the area of land cultivated, as the independent variable is either positive or negative, depending on the main source of the salt(s). If the salt is mainly anthropogenic in source, the relationship is negative, and if the salt is mainly geologic in source, then the relationship is positive. Aihoon (1994) further established that agricultural activities have an effect on the emission of chlorides in the Loskop Valley, but the main source of chlorides in the valley is the land, and that agricultural practices in the Loskop Valley result in the materialisation of surface water, such that the quantities of salts (minerals) emitted into the Olifants River draining the Loskop Valley are a function of the area of land cultivated to crops; the amount of rainfall received; and the quantities of fertilizer applied to crops on the land. From these quantities which Aihoon (1994) determined, he calculated elasticities which are: 2.57 for land (i.e. a 1% increase(decrease) in the total land area cultivated to tobacco leads to a decrease(increase) of 2.57% in the emission of total dissolved salts); between 2.07 and 2.65 for rainfall (i.e. a 1% change in rainfall induces a change in the same direction of between 2.07 and 2.65 % in the emission into the river); and 2.93 for fertilizer (i.e. a 1% increase in the annual total quantity of fertilizer (tons) applied to crops leads to an increase of 2.93 % in the total quantity of dissolved salts emitted to the river).

Rainfall in the study area - the lower Vaal River - is relatively low in comparison with the Loskop Valley with the result that it probably will not have as large an elasticity as that of the Loskop study area; however, rainfall in the Vaal, Modder and Riet River catchment areas will have an effect, but only if the storage capacity in the various dams in these rivers is exceeded. In Moolman & Quibell (1995:5) it is stated that when these schemes (Orange-Riet and Douglas Weir) were first planned it was first envisaged that occasional floods would wash these salts (built up as a result of irrigation returnflows) from the system. But this does not often occur as the dams along these rivers normally store most of the rainfall runoff from their catchment areas. Furthermore, saline water has a higher density than fresh water, so when flooding events occur the fresh water washes "over" the saline water. Consequently proper flushing does not take place.

Rainfall is an uncontrollable variable, but land area cultivated and the fertilizer application rate can be varied to improve the quality of irrigation returnflows. Therefore, to reduce the effect of agriculture on water quality and in

doing so improve the quality of water used for irrigation, farmers could either extensify land use and/or reduce the amount of fertilizer applied.

#### *3.4.2.7 Other salinity management techniques*

Techniques for controlling salinity that require relatively minor changes are: more frequent irrigations, selection of more salt-tolerant crops, additional leaching, pre-plant irrigation, bed forming and seed placement. Alternatives that require significant changes in management are changing the irrigation method, altering the water supply, land levelling, modifying the soil profile, and installing subsurface drainage. A brief explanation of some of these techniques follows:

***More frequent irrigations*** - Salt concentrations increase in the soil as the crop extracts soil water. Typically, salt concentrations are lowest following irrigation and higher just before the next irrigation. Increasing irrigation frequency maintains more constant moisture content in the soil. Through implementing higher frequency irrigation, more salts are kept in solution, which aids the leaching process. In Heynike (1987), it is stated that under high frequency irrigation the soil is not allowed to dry-out, which retards the effects of high salt concentrations in the crop root zone. Such a system could maintain high crop yields, but to attain this advantage, additional irrigation equipment and management ingenuity is required as well as a water source that must always be available. With proper placement, drip irrigation is very effective at flushing salts, and water can be applied almost continuously. Both sprinkler and drip provide more control and flexibility in scheduling irrigation than furrow systems.

***Pre-plant irrigations*** - Salts often accumulate near the soil surface during fallow periods, particularly when water tables are high or when off-season rainfall is below normal. Under these conditions, seed germination and seedling growth can be seriously reduced unless the soil is leached before planting.

***Residue management*** - Exposed soils have higher evaporation rates than those covered by residues. Leaving crop residues behind between harvest and planting will thus reduce evaporation, fewer salts will accumulate and rainfall will be more effective in providing for leaching.

***Changing irrigation method*** - Surface irrigation methods such as flood, basin, furrow and border are usually not sufficiently flexible to permit changes in the frequency of irrigation or the depth of water applied per irrigation. Irrigating more frequently using these systems will improve water availability to the crop but will also waste water and increase the incidence of waterlogging. Converting to surge furrow irrigation may be the solution to many furrow systems. Otherwise a sprinkler or drip system may be required.

***Chemical amendments*** - Chemical amendments such as gypsum applications, lime applied in conjunction with organic material, or sulphur-containing amendments are effective only on sodium-affected soils. Amendments are ineffective for saline soil conditions and will often exacerbate the existing salinity problem. The choice of an amendment for a particular situation will depend upon its relative effectiveness judged from its improvement of soil properties and crop growth, the availability of the amendment, the relative costs involved, handling and application difficulties, and time allowed and required for the amendment to react in the soil to replace adsorbed sodium effectively (Rhoades *et al*, 1992:101).

### 3.4.3. IRRIGATION BOARD / WATER USERS ASSOCIATION LEVEL WATER QUALITY MANAGEMENT OPTIONS

Moolman & Quibell (1995) discuss the possibility of utilising excess capacity in the Orange/Riet Canal to dilute the salt saturated water trapped by the Douglas Weir in the Lower Riet River. This, however, doesn't improve salinity in the lower Vaal and Vaallus irrigation area, upstream from where the Vaal converges with the Riet. Excess water will have to be released from either the Bloemhof or Spitskop Dam. The water quality of the water released from the Bloemhof Dam is far better than that of the Spitskop Dam (Du Preez *et al*, 2000), though Spitskop has more capacity to release water. Rough calculations by Moolman & Quibell (1995) show that the benefits exceed the costs, but as water becomes scarcer and more expensive or drought conditions persist, this option is not feasible. Furthermore Orange River water could be diverted into the Vaal River system if further phases of the Lesotho Highlands Water Project are implemented (DWAF, 1998). After being used and reused as it passes through Gauteng the quality of this water could be questionable.

Any open water delivery system is subject to evaporation, which leads to higher salt concentrations in the water. The salinity content of irrigation water can thus increase during the entire time water is transported through irrigation canals or stored in reservoirs. Replacing irrigation ditches with pipe systems will help stabilise salinity levels, increasing the amount of water available for leaching, as well as improve water use efficiency by reducing the water lost to canal seepage.

### 3.4.4. NATIONAL LEVEL WATER QUALITY MANAGEMENT OPTIONS

Irrigation farming is known, together with urban, industrial and mining effluents, to be a major contributor to salinisation of South African rivers. The DWAF has had some success in tracing industrial, urban and mining effluents entering water bodies to their sources, but this is not so for agricultural effluents. While the DWAF pursues the 'polluter pays' principle with other polluters, it has not been possible for it to do so with agricultural polluters. The main reasons according to Aihoon *et al, (*1997:269) are:

- Agricultural pollution is non-point source, rendering liability allocation difficult;
- The quantification of pollution and the assessment of the costs of pollution damage is time consuming and expensive;
- Agricultural pollution involves a large number of producers that are geographically widely dispersed; and
- The political influence of South African farmers has made past governments reluctant to initiate policies that affect their incomes negatively.

While the irrigation water quota is based on the number of hectares of irrigation rights a farmer possesses, as is the practice in the study area, and as it is not volumetrically based, there will be little control over irrigation returnflows. There is also no incentive for the installation of irrigation drainage.

It is the author's personal experiences that in Australia and California in the USA, irrigation water returnflows are managed intensively and are not allowed by law to re-enter the source of the irrigation water. The irrigators in Australia pump their returnflows into evaporation basins or practise serial biological concentration (SBC), whereby returnflows from a sensitive crop are used to irrigate a more tolerant crop. In the Coachella valley in California the irrigation water management authority monitors the irrigation returnflows of individual farmers and manages the returnflows collectively.

## 3.5. A REVIEW OF PREVIOUS AGRICULTURAL SALINITY MODELLING WORK

Numerous mathematical models have been developed for agricultural salinity management. Linear programming (LP) models were generally used in the early stages of salinity research (Moore *et al,* 1974, Gardner & Young 1988, Johnson *et al,* 1991, Dandy & Crawly 1992, Marshall & Jones 1997, etc.) These models, however, most closely resemble the type of problems to be addressed in this research. More recently the focus has been on dynamic linear programming (DLP) models (Dinar *et al,* 1993, etc.) and stochastic and dynamic programming models (Feinerman & Yaron 1983, Dinar *et al,* 1986, Knapp 1992, Feinerman 1994, etc.).

The dynamic linear programming (DLP) models constructed either optimised only one crop on one soil type or were more regional hydraulic management optimisation models, as were the stochastic and dynamic programming models. These models if conducted for crops required data from tightly controlled experimental data specifically set *up for the model and would not work with the South African water quality data limitations as identified by Du Preez et al, (*2000:154).

The Generalised Algebraic Modelling System (GAMS) (GAMS Development Corporation, www.gams.com) was identified as the ideal programming platform for building the salinity and drainage management model required for this research. Other water quality management models constructed using GAMS are by Lee and Howitt (1996) which is used for modelling regional agricultural production and salinity control alternatives within a water quality policy analysis framework, and by Percia *et al,* (1997) which is used to determine the optimal operation of a regional system with diverse water quality sources. Both these models, however, optimise regional system operations and not farm level financial returns.

Coupling or integrating these models with a Geographical Information System (GIS) to create spatial optimisation models (Rhoades *et al,* 1999, Johnston 1994, Bende 1997, Engel *et al,* 1993, Negahban *et al,* 1996, Wolff-Piggott 1994) was identified as the latest trend and reinforced by DWAF(1996) (see paragraph 3.5.1, ii) but would fall beyond the scope and budget of this research.

Ragab (2001) proposes transient models that use the basic flow equation of water and solute to compute the soil water and solute contents as a function of time and depth of inundation. These models use a root extraction term added to the flow equations that relate the soil water salinity level and the crop yield. A sink term in these models accounts for the osmotic potential. The theory of a transient model is that when the osmotic and matrix potential exceed a critical level, transpiration ceases. These models do not account for crop salt tolerance and are thus not reliant on the Maas and Hoffmann (1977) type crop threshold and gradient values. Data limitations and expertise would also limit the use of this type of model in this research.

Most of the models mentioned above are a combination of two or more separate models, usually a simulation model and an optimisation model (Johnson *et al,* 1991,). The proposed methodology, aimed at integrating the results generated from different models to create a holistic water quality management tool, makes use of both optimisation and simulation techniques. Negahban *et al, (*1997), defines an optimisation technique as "a tool which can sift through the numerous combinations of local choices to pick those which, when combined, will produce an optimum plan which best meets regional goals within the constraints imposed on combinations of activities". The use of both optimisation and simulation is motivated in ASCE (1990:530): "One approach to select the best management practice is to simulate alternative management policies using crop-water production functions and

then choose the best according to some criterion. Another approach is to formulate a dynamic optimisation problem and then solve it with the appropriate algorithms. The simulation approach allows construction of a detailed physical chemical and biological processes model but does not optimise beyond simple enumeration or trial and error. Dynamic optimisation finds the best management practice under specific conditions, but computational considerations usually limit model complexity. The two approaches may be combined for some applications. First, the various options are screened with an optimisation model, and then one or more simulation models are used to evaluate the selected options."

### 3.5.1. LIMITATIONS OF PREVIOUS SALINITY MODELS

To determine the impact of various natural or artificial (e.g. policy mechanism) scenarios on existing schemes to provide answers to assist in increasing the economic efficiency and sustainability of the irrigation industry as a whole, the full dynamics and interactions between irrigation water quality and the soil salinity status on crop yields over irrigated time would need to be incorporated into a model. Blackwell *et al* (2000) however state that current USDA Salinity Laboratory evidence suggests these interactions are far more complex than originally thought, and that Rhoades, the doyen of soil/plant/salinity interactions, contends that no one has succeeded in combining all the refinements necessary to overcome the inherent problems of relatively simple salt balance models and geophysical sensors, to address the enormous field variability of infiltration and leaching rates. Blackwell *et al* (2000) further state that current literature and research on salinity management in irrigation agriculture also fails to capture the stochastic nature of inter-seasonal irrigation water quality as well as the cumulative economic and sustainability effects of irrigating with stochastic water quality levels. This is reinforced by Ragab (2001) and DWAF(1996), with the latter stating that further limitations for setting criteria for salinity include:

(i) The need to make assumptions about the relationship between soil saturation extract salinity (for which yield response data is available) and soil solution salinity.

(ii) The deviation of the salinity of the soil saturation extract from the mean soil profile salinity, to which crops would respond.

(iii) The criteria for crop salt tolerance do not consider differences in crop tolerance during different growth stages.

Ragab (2001) states that there is a need for more process-oriented dynamic models that integrate the various factors affecting the crop growth (which he backs up quoting Van Aelst *et al*, 1988 and Ragab *et al*, 1990) instead of simple statistical models describing the Crop-Water-Yield-Function relationships.

### 3.5.2. THE WEAKNESSES OF THE YIELD PERCENTAGE (YP) METHODOLOGY

The key formula of the YP methodology determines the leaching requirement (LR) percentage over a fixed range of targeted yield percentages. The formula as used in Ayers & Westcot, (1985:26) is:

$$LR_{c,yp} = A\_EC\_CW_c / (5*(TRSH_{c,yp} - A\_EC\_CW_c)) \quad (3.2)$$

where: $TRSH_{c,yp}$ is a matrix of the ECe limits for each crop ($_c$) at which no crop yield reduction will be observed below the specific yield percentage ($_{yp}$) as water quality deteriorates (Maas & Hoffman, 1977), adapted to be a function of the expected yield percentage, and

$A\_EC\_CW_c$ is the average electrical conductivity of the crop water.

The shortfall of the YP methodology is that it assumes the ECiw to ECe conversion factor constant over all soil types, drainage statuses and irrigation systems used. This is not the case in practice and is better captured in the leaching fraction (LF) methodology used in Chapter 4. The YP methodology can be used in conjunction with the LF methodology because it calculates the exact leaching fraction required for a specific yield percentage target, while the LF methodology calculates the actual percentage of optimal yield attainable (yield percentage) for a specific fixed leaching fraction.

## 3.6. A SYNTHESIS OF THE LITERATURE STUDY

In this literature study, the term water quality is defined and broken down into its various constituents. The main water quality constituent impacting on the study area was identified as salinity. The fluctuation of irrigation water salinity is the immediate problem impacting directly on irrigation agriculture , but the deposition of salts on irrigated soils will have very little or no effect until it has accumulated to exceed the threshold level for the particular crop.

The importance of effective, water efficient, well managed and environmentally sound leaching was also identified and various leachate management options touched on. The building of an on-farm storage dam to manage irrigation returnflows was identified as an option to include in the model.

Various farm level management options were selected for the management, prevention and remediation of water quality problems and were assumed to be implemented and therefore not built directly into the model, except for the two major capital-intensive options, namely the installation of underground drainage and the conversion of an irrigation system. The proposed National Policy option of imposing restrictions on the volume of returnflows allowed is incorporated in SALMOD at the farm level by determining the feasibility of building an on-farm storage dam to contain returnflows that exceed the proposed limit.

Finally, from the essence of a literature study conducted to identify existing models and methodologies used to simulate and optimise for water quality management in irrigation agriculture, it was concluded that a simulation model and LP optimisation model would be constructed using GAMS to determine the economic effects of not only poor, but fluctuating irrigation water salinity in the study area.

The limitations and voids in previous work were also addressed in the literature study and it was resolved to attempt to address these voids while heeding the statement by Blackwell *et al* (2000) that no one has yet succeeded in combining all the refinements necessary to overcome the inherent problems of relatively simple salt balance models.

To achieve this, two key mathematical equations were identified, the yield percentage (YP) equation as used by Ayers & Westcot (1985), (of which the weaknesses are listed in this chapter) and the leaching fraction (LF) equation by Maas and Hoffmann (1977) on which the rest of this research is based.

# CHAPTER 4. SALINITY AND LEACHING MODEL FOR OPTIMAL IRRIGATION DEVELOPMENT (SALMOD): FORMULATION AND USE

*"Farming looks mighty easy when your plough is a pencil and you're a thousand miles from the corn field"*
**Dwight D. Eisenhower**

## 4.1. INTRODUCTION

The main aim in constructing SALMOD (Salinity And Leaching Model for Optimal Irrigation Development) was to determine the financial magnitude of the salinity problem in different reaches of the Lower Vaal and Riet rivers. This was necessary to identify the most appropriate stewardship actions, and to justify the cost of these actions to the farmers, water user authorities and policy makers.

To determine the financial magnitude of the water quality problem on irrigation, the *status quo* first had to be simulated as closely as possible and the interactions between the irrigation water, the soil and certain management options understood. Then, using this framework various model constants were changed to test the impact of various scenarios.

Weighted average electrical conductivity data had to be constructed due to the fluctuating irrigation salinity levels in the study area over the growth period of the crops planted. The methodology derived in this research to calculate the average electrical conductivity, weighted according to monthly irrigation water requirements and effective rainfall, is demonstrated in this chapter.

SALMOD is constructed using GAMS 2.50 (GAMS Development Corporation, www.gams.com) coding in two sections. See Figure 4.1 for a schematic representation of SALMOD. Contrary to ASCE (1990:530) the simulation section of SALMOD precedes the optimisation section. The simulation section determines the range of gross margins and water requirements for all possible combinations of six crops, four soil types, four soil drainage statuses and three irrigation system combinations for various leaching fractions, resulting in approximately 1700 crop combination activities to choose from in the optimisation section of SALMOD.

As a point of departure some of the assumptions and limitations of SALMOD are briefly discussed, followed by a section on data requirements. Thereafter the layout of the rest of this chapter will follow the structure as depicted in Figure 4.1.

## 4.2. MODEL ASSUMPTIONS AND LIMITATIONS

In constructing a mathematical model, the main factors impacting the problem being analysed need to be identified, isolated and built into the model so that the model is as close a representation of the reality as possible. In reality, however, a far greater multitude of factors interact to affect an outcome being analysed than could be integrated into a model. A model cannot, with 100% accuracy, simulate an outcome in reality and as such is only a representation of what could happen. The use of a model is to try to understand why a certain outcome occurs, to predict the possible magnitude of alternative scenarios and to identify the main factors responsible for the problem.

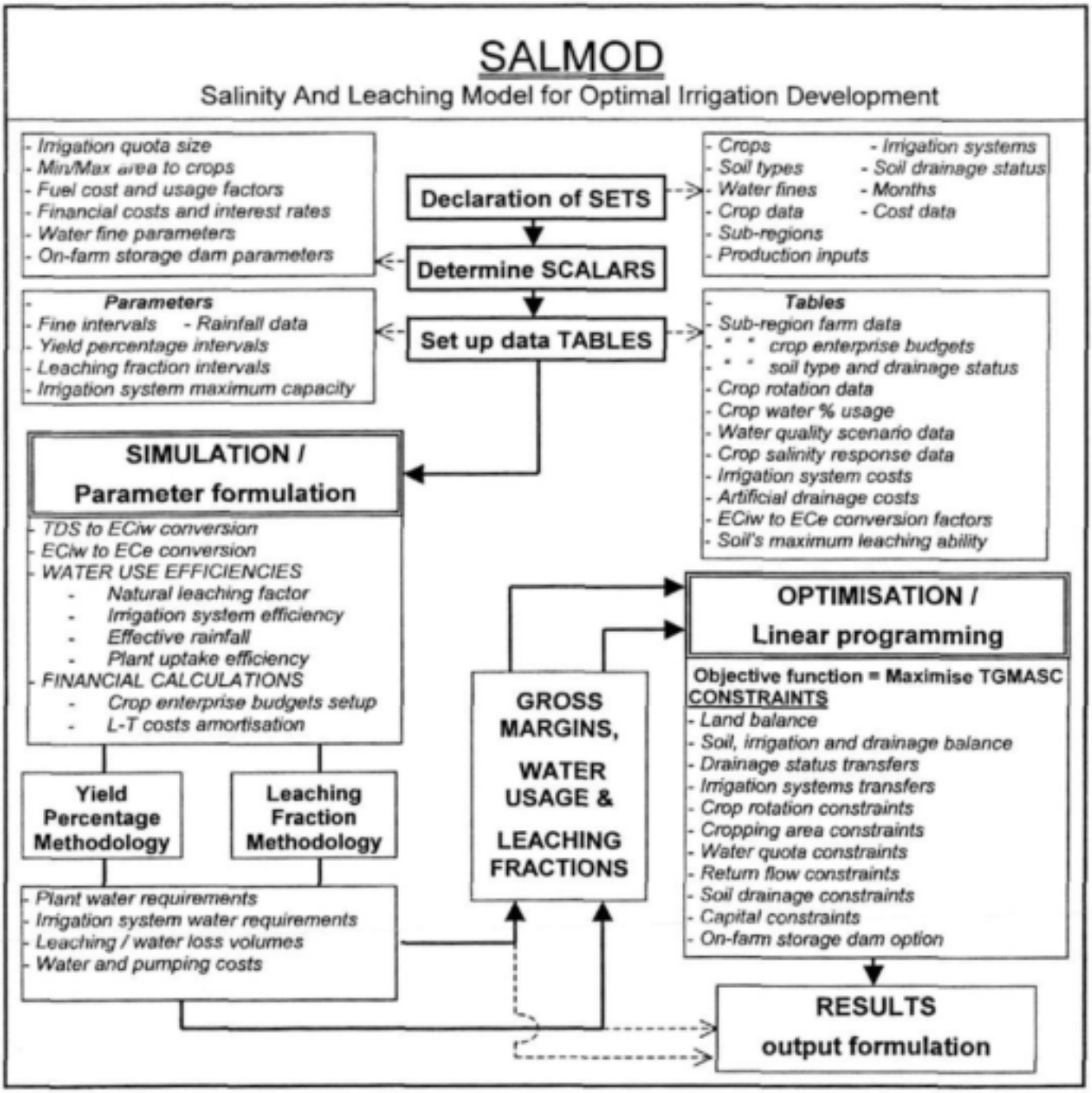



**Figure 4.1 A schematic representation of SALMOD**

Various assumptions are therefore needed. SALMOD, for instance, is set up so that the total kilowatt-hours available (traction component of the farm) can be constraining, but was not activated for the model runs discussed in this report, leading to Assumption 1.

**Assumption 1:** Case study farmers are assumed to have sufficient kilowatt-hours available to perform the mechanisation tasks required in the SALMOD optimal cropping combination results.

This puts the sub-area case study farmers on an equal footing for sub-area comparison. The same holds true for labour requirements:

**Assumption 2:** Case study farmers are assumed to have sufficient labour hours available to perform the labour tasks required in the SALMOD optimal cropping combination results.

Further assumptions and limitation of SALMOD will be mentioned in their relevant contexts in the discussion to follow in this chapter and a full list of the assumptions is compiled in the summary at the end of this chapter.

## 4.3. SALMOD DATA REQUIREMENTS

The aim of this section is to describe the manipulation and derivation of the data required for the operation of SALMOD. SALMOD specific data requirements are the model constants, value judgement data, maximum physiological crop yield data and weighted average electrical conductivity data. The SALMOD abbreviations for various terms are given in brackets in a different font.

### 4.3.1. SALMOD CONSTRAINTS

A list of all the model constant values, together with the model abbreviation and description is given in Table 4.7. The values for the irrigation quota, allowable pre- and after-year water use percentage and the fine increment were provided by the OVIB. The rest of the scalars in Table 4.7 are value judgement data based on the surveys conducted.

### 4.3.2. VALUE JUDGEMENT DATA

Value judgement data are generally data that does not formally exist and that could be measured *in situ*, but of which people who work in the situation where the data are used have a good indication. These data are gathered not by a formal survey, but by personal discussion and later verified with others who are also familiar with the data required. In this research all the value judgement data were verified at a technical meeting held with some members of the Steering Committee of this project.

Due to the immense variability in biological/natural systems when dealing with grouped averages, an acceptable average or representative value has to be determined for use in the model. The ECe variability within an irrigated field varies immensely, both across the surface area of the field and in soil depth. This variability could be captured when measured very intensively at a specific field level. These results will, however, not be similar to any other field in the world, hence the need for value judgements that are acceptable and widely applicable.

The value judgement data used in SALMOD include the following:

- The maximum leaching fraction ability of the 3 main types of irrigation systems
- The maximum leaching ability / infiltrability of the soil types and drainage classes modelled in this research
- Irrigation drainage cost on the soil types modelled in this research
- Aggregate irrigation system transfer costs
- Irrigation system plant water uptake efficiencies
- Irrigation water to soil saturation extract electrical conductivity conversions

#### *4.3.2.1 Maximum irrigation system leaching ability*

It is important to include the irrigation system's maximum leaching capacity (Parameter ISMLF(IS)) in SALMOD as a constraint so that the leaching fractions calculated for the soil are not too high for the water delivery capacity of the irrigation system. The irrigation system maximum leaching fraction value judgement values used in SALMOD are 60% for flood irrigation systems (FIS), 20% for centre pivot and sprinkler irrigation systems (CPI) and 15% for drip irrigation systems (DIS) and were verified with Du Preez (2000) and Van Staden (2001).

#### *4.3.2.2 Maximum soil leaching ability*

The maximum fractions that different soils can be leached, classified according to clay percentage (vertical axis) and soil drainage status (horizontal axis), are listed in Table 4.11. Naturally drained (NDS) loamy soils (LMS), for example, have a maximum leaching capacity of 50% (0.50), which indicates that 50% more water than the plant water requirement can be given for leaching purposes. This percentage value decreases as the clay content of the soil increases and as the drainage status of the soil changes. The table was set up so that artificially drained soils have a 5% higher drainage factor and that limited drainage soils have a smaller maximum leaching percentage than naturally drained soils. Giving waterlogged soils (WLS) a value of 0%, results in the model producing an infeasible answer because of division by zero, therefore WLS get a value of 5%. The author set up the range in this table with verification by Du Preez (2000) and Van Staden (2001).

#### *4.3.2.3 Artificial drainage installation costs*

A rough approximation of the costs of underground drainage for various soil types according to Du Randt (2000) is given as parameter ADTC(S). These costs can range from R15 000 per hectare on loamy sand soils to R25 000 per hectare on clayey soils and are the costs of getting a contractor to come and install the drainage. A farmer could do it for less himself with his own mechanisation and labour. These costs are for the whole field drained with fixed spacing, based on the average clay content of the field, and are the costs of converting waterlogged soils into artificially drained soils. These total system costs are accounted for in the fixed costs capital constraint equation, and are annualised by multiplying them by an amortisation factor to be accounted for in the production capital constraint equation. A waterlogged soils drainage factor (scalar WLSDF) of 10% is multiplied by the annualised drainage costs (ADC) for converting waterlogged soils to artificially drained soils, to determine the annualised costs of converting waterlogged soils to only limited drainage soils (WSDC). It is assumed that only the worst 10% of the field needs to be drained. If, however, the model calculates that it is feasible to convert limited drainage soils to fully drained artificially drained soils, then the costs of this are calculated by subtracting the WSDF from ADC. This is shown in mathematical formulation in equation 4.22, which is a sub-equation of the objective function of SALMOD.

#### *4.3.2.4 Aggregate irrigation system transfer costs*

One possible management option in SALMOD is to determine whether it is feasible to replace the current irrigation system with one that is either more efficient or able to leach better. Table 4.13 provides the data required for this operation; total irrigation system costs (TSC) in Rand per hectare, the salvage value (SALV) of the irrigation system after its expected life (LIFE) and the annual maintenance costs (MAINT) for flood (FIS), centre pivot (CPI) and drip irrigation (DIS) systems. This table was set up with and verified by Van Staden (2000)

#### *4.3.2.5 Irrigation system plant water uptake efficiencies*

Irrigation system plant water uptake efficiencies are not to be confused with the 65%, 75% and 85% efficiencies for flood, sprinkler and drip irrigation systems respectively, which are the norms for, from withdrawal to reaching the soil surface, for irrigation system efficiencies and are the figures with which the irrigation system design engineers work. Plant water uptake efficiencies are the efficiency of different irrigation systems at getting the water applied to the field, to be taken up by the plant. Besides the crop spacing and leaf canopy percentage, a major factor in determining the plant water uptake efficiency is the irrigation frequency and duration. Flood irrigation has the lowest efficiency of 90% because the water is applied in large volumes at a time and then there is a long period before the next irrigation. Also, where the water is applied and stands the longest, there are losses below the vadose zone. Drip irrigation systems, on the other hand, have a lower application rate and very even distribution, resulting in 99% plant water uptake efficiency. For plant water uptake efficiency losses, i.e. losses from between delivery to the soil surface till the water is actually absorbed by the plant, De Wet (2000) suggests 10%, 5% and 1% for flood, sprinkler and drip irrigation systems respectively. This corresponds with the 90%, 95% and 99% values inputted in SALMOD table `IR_EF(C,IS)` for all crops.

#### *4.3.2.6 Irrigation water to soil saturation extract electrical conductivity conversions*

Table 4.18 shows the ECiw to ECe conversion factors used in SALMOD. With a leaching fraction of 25% (LF25) on loamy sand, naturally drained soils (LMS.NDS) for example the ECiw to ECe conversion factor of 1.00 indicates that system is in equilibrium. A conversion factor of 10 is used for waterlogged soils to force the model to reject these soils for crop production because it is assumed that crops will not grow in waterlogged soils. Note also that naturally (NDS) and artificially (ADS) drained soils have the same values. The values in Table 4.18 were set up using the case study farmer soil sample analysis data in Table 2.7.

### 4.3.3. MAXIMUM PHYSIOLOGICAL CROP YIELDS

**Table 4.1 The derivation of the maximum crop yields (ton/ha) to be used as a guideline in SALMOD**

| CROP | Max. Physiological Yield: | Yields used in SALMOD | Farmer's average max. expected yields | Orange River Control yields | ***Technical meeting values*** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Maize | 12 | 14 | 12.7 | 12 | ***15*** |
| Wheat | 7 | 7 | 7.7 | 7 | ***8.5*** |
| Lucerne | 25 | 20.4 | 21.8 | | ***30*** |
| Groundnuts | 4 | 3.4 | 4.3 | 3.5 | ***4.5*** |
| Potatoes | | 45 | 57.0 | | ***60*** |
| Onions | | 50 | 50.0 | | |
| Cotton | 5 | 5 | 4.5 | | |
| Sunflower | | 4 | 1.6 | | |
| | *Viljoen et al, (1992)* | GWK CEBs | Sub-area survey | New-Bucklands farmer | ***Technical meeting 29-30 July 1999*** |

The technical meeting values of Table 4.1 were not used in SALMOD for this report because they are the maximum physiological yields attainable under perfect conditions, while for this report actual 1998 conditions are to be simulated. Each sub-area farmer's actual crop yields for 1998 were used and as a guide, the GWK Ltd. values

were also included in SALMOD. These maximum physiological yields can, however, be used in SALMOD when wanting to compare the optimal attainable results between the 5 sub-areas.

### 4.3.4. PHYSIOLOGICAL GROWTH STAGE MODEL

Work was done with Dudley (2000), formerly from the Centre for Water Policy Research, University of New England in Australia, to develop a dynamic programming (DP) model to determine the optimal leaching requirements over different plant physiological growth stages, with varying plant salt tolerances at different physiological growth stages and fluctuating irrigation water quality. Fictitious, yet value judgment data was used; however, the accumulative nature of the problem was unsuited for DP application. Where DP chooses the optimal path using the branch and bounds method, the input data that were generated were transferred into a simulation model PG5SM (Physiological Growth Stage Soil Salinity Sensitivity Simulation Model) using GAMS and run for all possible outcomes. An algorithm at the end chose the outcome with the highest returns and mapped the path taken to achieve this. The results from this model are not scientifically tested and therefore not included in this report, but the model developed, though simple, provides a basis for modelling the varying crop tolerance to salinity for the different physiological growth stages of the crop. This is particularly useful as in the study area irrigation water salinity fluctuates markedly over the lifespan of the crop planted. This effect is partially built into SALMOD in the following section by calculating a weighted average salinity for each crop, depending on the monthly average salinity of the irrigation water, the monthly volume of irrigation water required and monthly average rainfall, or part thereof, that the crop is in the soil.

### 4.3.5. WEIGHTED AVERAGE ELECTRICAL CONDUCTIVITY

From the various methodologies suggested on how the average EC can be determined over a season with fluctuating receiving water qualities, the most suitable method was identified as the average EC weighted for irrigation water volume and quality and rainfall volume and quality. A worked example of the process followed in deriving the weighted average electrical conductivity (EC) of the water used by the plant (i.e. irrigation water and rainfall) is shown in Table 4.2.

Crop specific data required in this hypothetical example is the potential yield, total crop water requirement, threshold and gradient. For SALMOD the potential crop yields were verified in a technical meeting, the total crop water requirement was obtained from the OVIB and the threshold and gradient values taken form Maas & Hoffmann (1977). The values used in this example are a potential yield of 1000 kg/ha, a total crop water requirement of 1000 mm/ha, an ECe threshold value of 200 mS/m and a yield decline with increasing ECe gradient value of 0.7 %/mS/m.

Other data required are the monthly ECe reading of the irrigated soil, the monthly percentage requirements of the total crop water requirement and the monthly rainfall. As the salinity of the irrigation water is usually measured as TDS in ppm or mg/l the TDS of the irrigation water (iw) first has to be converted to ECiw. The following formula was used in this research:

$$EC_{iw} = 0.1572 \times TDS_{iw} - 2.2295 \qquad (4.1)$$

ECe is then derived form ECiw by multiplying ECiw by a factor of 2. The monthly percentage crop water requirements used in SALMOD was obtained form Van Heerden *et al.* (2000) and monthly rainfall from the DWAF for the gauging point at Atherton. These values are shown in Table 4.2. The TDSiw for the months of July to December, assuming these are the months that the hypothetical crop is in the ground, appear on the left in the table, together with the conversion to ECiw and ECe.

The monthly water requirement percentage (MW) is converted to a monthly water volume (MWV) required by the crop and multiplied by the monthly average ECe. The sum of the products of MWV and ECe over all months that the crop is in the ground is then divided by the total water requirement to give the average ECe weighted for irrigation water requirements alone. Pure rainfall, however, also contributes salinity dilution and leaching, but because of overlaps of irrigation events and rainfall, runoff and deep percolation, not all rainfall is utilised by the crop, or for leaching purposes. For this reason, only effective rainfall (ER) is accounted for. According to Van Heerden (2000), citing "*the Green book*", ER is calculated by subtracting 20 from the monthly average rainfall and dividing the result by 2. Monthly ER is then multiplied by the EC of rainwater (ECr) assumed to be 1mS/m, and added to the monthly ECe weighted for water to give the results in the right hand side of Table 4.2.

The sum of the products of MWV and ECe plus the sum of the products of ER and ECr over all months that the crop is in the ground is then divided by the sum of the total crop water requirement and effective rainfall to give the average ECe weighted for irrigation water requirements (MWV) and effective rainfall (ER).

**Table 4.2 A hypothetical example of the determination of the average ECe to which a plant is subjected over its growing season, weighted according to monthly crop water requirements (MW) and effective rainfall (ER)**

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Crop yield (kg): | | | **1000** | Rainfall EC (ECr) (mS/m): | | | **1** | | |
| Crop water requirement (mm): | | | **1000** | ECiw to ECe conversion factor: | | | **2** | | |
| Threshold (mS/m): | | | **200** | TDSiw to ECiw conversion factor (CF): | | | **y = 0.1572x - 2.2295** | | |
| Gradient (%/mS/m): | | | **0.7** | Effective rainfall (ER) formula: | | | **= (Rainfall - 20) / 2** | | |
| | TDSiw (ppm or mg/l) | ECiw (mS/m) | ECe (mS/m) | Monthly Water (%) | Monthly water volume (mm) | ECe weighted for water | Rainfall (mm) | Effective rainfall (mm) | Ave. ECe weighted for water & ER |
| MONTH | TDS | TDS x CF2 | ECiw x 2 | MW | MWV | ECe x WV | Rain | Rain - 20 / 2 | ECe x ( MWV+ (ER x ECr) |
| Jul | **626** | 96 | 192.2 | **0.029** | 29 | 5575 | **1.8** | 0 | 5574.8 |
| Aug | **691** | 106 | 212.7 | **0.075** | 75 | 15955 | **7.5** | 0 | 15954.5 |
| Sep | **762** | 118 | 235.2 | **0.206** | 206 | 48445 | **12.3** | 0 | 48444.9 |
| Oct | **747** | 115 | 230.3 | **0.347** | 347 | 79911 | **28.4** | 4.2 | 79915.0 |
| Nov | **713** | 110 | 219.6 | **0.343** | 343 | 75308 | **29.6** | 4.8 | 75312.9 |
| Dec | **595** | 91 | 182.5 | **0.000** | 0 | 0 | **42.3** | 11.15 | 11.2 |
| **TOTALS:** | | | | **1.000** | **1000** | **225193** | **121.9** | **20.15** | **225213.4** |
| ***Averages:*** | *689.7* | *106.0* | ***212.1*** | | ***Weighted:*** | ***225.2*** | | ***Weighted:*** | ***220.8*** |

The average ECe weighted for irrigation water requirement and effective rainfall, calculated in Table 4.2 as 220.8 mS/m, is inputted into the equation 4.2, together with the crop threshold and gradient as calculated by Maas & Hoffmann (1977) to give the percentage of maximum yield obtainable under the average ECe conditions.

$$Y = (100 - Gradient \,.\, (Ave.ECe - Threshold))/100 \qquad (4.2)$$

Where $Y$ is the fraction of maximum yield obtainable under average ECe ($Ave.ECe$) and $Gradient$ and $Threshold$ are the crop specific values as determined by Maas & Hoffmann (1977).

The yield fraction (Y) calculated using average ECe weighted for monthly water requirements (MWV) alone calculated as 225.2 mS/m is 0.82 resulting in a 823.6 kg/ha yield if the maximum yield is 1000kg/ha, while the yield fraction (Y) calculated using average ECe weighted for monthly water requirements (MWV) and effective rainfall (ER) calculates as 220.8 mS/m is 0.85 resulting in a 854.6 kg/ha yield if the maximum yield is 1000kg/ha, a 3.6% improvement.

Table 4.3 lists the limitations and resulting assumptions for which the average ECe is calculated. Although very simple, this methodology is more applicable to conditions of rapidly fluctuation irrigation water salinities, as is the case in the study area, than simply using an average ECe value held constant over the growing season of the crop planted.

**Table 4.3 The limitations and resulting assumptions for the methodology used to calculate average ECe**

| Data: | Limitation: | Assumptions: |
|---|---|---|
| ***TDSiw to Eciw conversion factor:*** | Different depending on origin | Same origin throughout season |
| ***ECiw to ECe conversion factor:*** | Depends on soil type and drainage status | Cropping unit homogeneous and stays the same for whole season |
| ***Effective rainfall values:*** | Monthly totals, does not take intensity / distribution into account | Equal distribution and intensity and runoff / wastage factor of 20 (Van Heerden, 2000) |
| ***Threshold and Gradient values:*** | Do not make provision for different salt sensitivities at different physiological stages of growth. | Constant for whole season (Information limitation) |

## 4.4. THE MODEL SETS

The first step in setting up a model in GAMS is the declaration of the model sets and sub-sets. No values are assigned in sets and sub-sets, only the table column and row headings under which the data are to be entered. The sets used in SALMOD are shown in Table 4.4 and Table 4.5. The sets in Table 4.4 are self-explanatory, but where very cryptic abbreviations are used these sets are explained in more detail than under the description heading in the table. Table 4.5 contains a description of each element within the sets.

**Table 4.4[2] The sets used in SALMOD to classify data with set, description and elements**

| SET | DESCRIPTION | ELEMENTS |
|---|---|---|
| C | Crops modelled | WHEAT,MAIZE,GRNDNUT,POTATO,COTTON,LUCERNE |
| F | Water overuse fine levels | WF1,WF2,WF3,WF4,WFPY |
| T | Time periods (monthly) | JAN,FEB,MAR,APR,MAY,JUN,JUL,AUG,SEP,OCT,NOV,DEC |
| CROPDAT | Crop data | WREQ_PRE,WREQ_AFT,TRSH,GRAD |
| COSTDAT | Cost data | PRICE,MEY,HC,FVC,MASC,FUEL,MAINT |
| PLD | Production loan data | AMT,TRM,INT |
| IO | Outputs of Inputs&Outputs | WHEAT,MAIZE,GRNDNUT,POTATO,COTTON,LUCERNE |
| LF | Leaching fraction | LF0,LF5,LF10,LF15,LF20,LF25 |

Set CROPDAT (Table 4.4) contains the element headers for basic data required for each crop. WREQ_PRE is the crop water requirement in the pre-year and WREQ_AFT the crop water requirement in the after-year, TRSH is the threshold salinity level up to which no reduction in yield occurs and GRAD the gradient at which crop yield declines after the threshold value has been exceeded as water quality declines.

Set COSTDAT is used in simplifying the crop enterprise budgets, PRICE is the market price of the outputs, MEY the maximum expected yield for a crop, HC the harvesting costs which are yield dependent, FVC are the variable costs of the grouped inputs that are not dependent on irrigation volume, pumping and crop yield. The farmer enters his fuel and maintenance data into the CEBs table for comparison, but FUEL and MAINTENANCE are calculated internally in SALMOD.

Set PLD contains the element headers for data required to calculate a production loan. AMT is the initial amount of the production loan, TRM the term of the loan in years and INT the annual interest rate.

**Table 4.5 The sets used in SALMOD to classify data accordingly, with set description, elements and element description columns**

| SET | SET DESCRIPTION | ELEMENTS | ELEMENT DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|---|---|
| S | Soils classified according to clay % | LMS | LOAMY SAND SOILS <15% CLAY |
| | | SNL | SANDY LOAM SOILS 15-25% CLAY |
| | | SNC | SANDY CLAY SOILS 25-45% CLAY |
| | | CLY | CLAY SOILS >45% CLAY |
| DS | Soil drainage status | NDS | NATURALLY DRAINED SOILS |
| | | ADS | ARTIFICIALLY DRAINED SOILS |
| | | LDS | LIMITED DRAINAGE NATURALLY DRAINED SOIL |
| | | WLS | WATERLOGGED SOILS |
| IS | Type of Irrigation system | FIS | FLOOD IRRIGATION SYSTEM |
| | | CPI | CENTRE PIVOT IRRIGATION SYSTEM |
| | | DIS | DRIP IRRIGATION SYSTEM |
| IO | Inputs and Outputs (Inputs only - outputs listed in Table 4.4 above) | PRICE | PRICE OF PRODUCT IN RANDS PER TON |
| | | YIELD | YIELD OF PRODUCT IN TONS PER HECTARE |
| | | SEED | SEED COSTS IN RAND PER HECTARE |
| | | FERT | FERTILIZER COSTS RANDS PER HECTARE |

[2] All tables printed in the Courier New font are tables taken directly out of SALMOD

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | HERB | HERBICIDE COSTS IN RANDS PER HECTARE |
| | | PEST | PESTICIDE COSTS IN RANDS PER HECTARE |
| | | INSUR | INSURANCE COSTS IN RANDS PER HECTARE |
| | | HARV | HARVESTING COSTS IN RANDS PER TON |
| | | INT | INTEREST ON PRODUCTION CAPITAL |
| | | WAT | WATER COSTS IN RANDS PER HECTARE |
| | | ELEC | ELECTRICITY PUMPING COSTS IN R PER HA |
| | | LABOR | LABOUR COSTS IN RANDS PER HECTARE |
| | | MHLR | MAN-HOURS OF LABOUR REQUIRED |
| | | FUEL | FUEL AND LUBRICATION IN RANDS PER HA |
| | | KWHR | KILOWATT HOURS REQUIRED PER HECTARE |
| | | MAINT | MAINTENANCE AND REPAIRS COSTS IN R/HA |
| | | CAP | CAPITAL GOODS REPAYMENTS |
| SR | OVIB Sub-area names | OL | OLIERIVIER (1) |
| | | VL | VAALLUS (2) |
| | | AT | ATHERTON (3) |
| | | BL | BUCKLANDS (4) |
| | | NB | NEW BUCKLANDS (5) |
| | | GWK | GWK Ltd. REGIONAL DATA |
| CSF | Case study farmer data set | | SEE Table 4.8 |
| | | | |

### 4.4.1. MODEL SUBSETS

The subsets shown in Table 4.6 are used when only a part of a set is being referred to. Subset PL, for example, refers to only those elements of set IO that are used in the calculation of the production loan.

**Table 4.6 The subsets used in SALMOD with set, description and elements**

| SUBSETS | SET | DESCRIPTION | ELEMENTS |
|---|---|---|---|
| NODRIP | C | Can't drip irrigate these crops | WHEAT,MAIZE,LUCERNE |
| LMYS | S | Loamy sand only | LMS |
| NOTLMS | S | Not loamy sand | SNL,SNC,CLY |
| NPDS | DS | No potatoes on drainage state | WLS,LDS |
| FPY | F | Pre-year fine | WFPY |
| FAY | F | After-year fine tiers | WF1,WF2,WF3,WF4 |
| PY | T | Pre-year | JUL,AUG,SEP,OCT,NOV |
| AY | T | After-year | DEC,JAN,FEB,MAR,APR,MAY,JUN |
| SUMMER | T | Summer months | NOV,DEC,JAN,FEB,MAR,APR |
| WINTER | T | Winter months | MAY,JUN,JUL,AUG,SEP,OCT |
| PL | IO | Production loan required for: | SEED,FERT,HERB,PEST,INSUR,INT |

## 4.5. SALMOD SCALARS (CONSTANTS)

The scalars used in SALMOD, and depicted in Table 4.7, are applicable to all sub-area case study farmers and remain constant for a complete model run. The only value that is changed for comparing two different scenarios is MAXRF, the maximum volume of irrigation return flows allowed, which is set at 1000 when return flows are not constraining and at 100 in this report to constrain return flows. These values can be updated when modelling a specific farmer run or scenario run.

**Table 4.7 Scalars/constant values used in SALMOD, 2000**

| SCALARS | DESCRIPTION | UNIT | VALUE |
|---|---|---|---|
| IQ | Irrigation quota size | mm/ha/yr | 1100 |
| PYWU | Allowable pre-year water use | %fraction | 0.6 |
| AYWU | Allowable after-year water use | %fraction | 0.4 |
| WFI | Water overuse fine increment | mm/ha | 100 |
| MAXPOT | Maximum area to plant to potatoes | %fraction | 0.05 |
| MAXGN | Maximum area to plant to groundnuts | %fraction | 0.25 |
| WLSDF | Waterlogged soils drainage factor | % | 0.1 |
| FP | Fuel price | R/litre | 3.7 |
| FLR | Fuel cost: lubrication cost ratio | % | 0.01 |
| FMR | Fuel cost: maintenance cost ratio | % | 0.05 |
| LPKWH | Litres per kilowatt-hour | Litres | 0.35 |
| *SUMLH* | *Summer labour hours (working hours per day)* | Hrs | 10 |
| *WINLH* | *Winter labour hours (working hours per day)* | Hrs | 8 |
| *WDPM* | *Working days per month* | Days | 25 |
| LTT | Long term loan term for drainage/irrigation system | Years | 10 |
| LTI | Long term loan annual interest rate | % | 0.15 |
| PCI | Production capital interest rate | % | 0.17 |
| ECRW | Electrical conductivity of rain water | mS/m | 1 |
| FORCE | A constant used to eliminate an option if too high | | -0.001 |
| NZERO | A very small constant used when dividing by 0 | | 0.00001 |
| COFSD | Total cost of 1 on-farm storage dam | R | 30000 |
| VOFSD | Total volume of 1 on-farm storage dam (50x50x3m) | mm/ha | 750 |
| EVAPY | Evaporation - surface water | mm/ha/dam/yr | 575 |
| MAXRF | Max return-flows allowed/ha water right | mm/ha | 100 |

## 4.6. MODEL TABLES AND PARAMETERS

When the elements of two or more sets are arranged in table or matrix format then this is referred to as a table in GAMS. A parameter is a one-dimensional array of values assigned to the elements of a set. The set references of a table or parameter follow the table or parameter name in brackets. The tables in SALMOD into which the setup data are inputted are grouped into the following categories and discussed in this order:

- Farm data including soil type and drainage data
- Financial data including crop enterprise budgets, irrigation system and artificial drainage costs
- Crop rotation, crop water usage and rainfall data
- Water quality scenario data and ECiw to ECe conversion factors

Using matrix algebra, table coefficients are manipulated mathematically to create new tables in the simulation section of SALMOD. The three main tables produced in the simulation section of SALMOD to be transferred into the optimisation section are a table of gross margins, water usages and leaching fraction volumes for all possible crop, resource and management combinations, and for both methodologies.

### 4.6.1. FARM DATA

Table 4.8 is a list of the elements of set CSF and contains the descriptions of the column headings inTable 4.9. This set is separate from the sets listed in Table 4.4 as it is applicable to TABLE CSFD(SR,CSF) only.

**Table 4.8 Set CSF for SALMOD TABLE CSFD(SR,CSF), the case study farmer data set**

| ELEMENT | DESCRIPTION | UNIT |
|---|---|---|
| IA | Total current Irrigable Area | Ha |
| IR | Current Irrigation Rights per allocated quota | Ha |
| WC | Water Costs - CAN BE VARIED FOR EACH SUB-AREA | R per mm |
| PC | Pumping Costs - will vary within sub-area | R per mm |
| FC | Case study farm non-locatable annual Fixed Costs | R per yr |
| MPC | Maximum Production Capital availability | R |
| MCL | Maximum fixed Capital improvement Loan availability | R |
| TKWA | Total Kilowatts Available | KW |
| TLA | Total Labourers Available | person |
| LABC | Average Labour Costs (/person/24 working day month) | R |

In Table 4.9 separate values are filled in for the different sub-areas' case study farmers. SALMOD is so constructed that the data from all the sub-area case study farmers are in the model and that with minimal changes the same model can solve for a different farmer under a different scenario. SALMOD is thus constructed so that for the proposed next stage of this project it can further be developed to solve for all sub-areas under one scenario and extrapolate each sub-area to calculate the economic impact for the whole OVIB service region. Currently SALMOD is only a farm level management tool.

**Assumption 3:** The fixed costs (FC) in Table 4.9 assume all farming income and expenses from all other activities not modelled in SALMOD remain constant.

**Table 4.9 CSFD(SR,CSF), OVIB sub-area land and cost data, 2000**

| | IA | IR | WC | PC | FC | MPC | MCL | TKWA | TLA | LABC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Units* | *ha* | *ha* | *R/mm/ha* | *R/mm/ha* | *R* | *R* | *R* | *kW* | *Men* | *R/month* |
| OL | 200 | 141 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 561000 | 300000 | 600000 | 280 | 16 | 1000 |
| VL | 461 | 339 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 2475015 | 500000 | 1000000 | 720 | 18 | 1000 |
| BL | 50 | 58.4 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 38000 | 100000 | 200000 | 46 | 2 | 1000 |
| AT | 22 | 28.9 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 130000 | 150000 | 300000 | 120 | 4 | 1000 |
| NB | 145 | 100 | 0.17 | 0.56 | 1049109 | 600000 | 1200000 | 300 | 14 | 1000 |

Farm specific soil type, drainage class and irrigation system are specified in the SALMOD TABLE SOIL_D(S,IS,DS,SR). In Table 4.10 this is shown for only the Olierivier case study farm. For a full discussion of the soil type, drainage class and irrigation system sub-division for each case study farm, see chapter 2. The model will not solve if the sum of the values in Table 4.10 do not equal the farm size as specified in the in TABLE CSFD(SR,CSF) under CSF element IA (irrigation area) for SR (sub-area) element OL (Olierivier) which is 200 (see Table 4.9).

**Table 4.10 SOIL_D(S,IS,DS,SR), farm specific soil type, drainage class and irrigation system, Olierivier case study farm, 2000**

| | NDS.OL | ADS.OL | WLS.OL | LDS.OL |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| LMS.FIS | | | | 30 |
| LMS.CPI | 100 | 20 | | 40 |
| LMS.DIS | | | | |
| SNL.FIS | | | 5 | |
| SNL.CPI | | | 5 | |
| SNL.DIS | | | | |
| SNC.FIS | | | | |
| SNC.CPI | | | | |
| SNC.DIS | | | | |
| CLY.FIS | | | | |
| CLY.CPI | | | | |
| CLY.DIS | | | | |

**Table 4.11 MLFS(S,DS), maximum fractions that the soils in table SOIL_DATA can be leached, 2000**

| | NDS | ADS | WLS | LDS |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **LMS** | 0.50 | 0.55 | 0.05 | 0.35 |
| **SNL** | 0.35 | 0.40 | 0.05 | 0.25 |
| **SNC** | 0.25 | 0.30 | 0.05 | 0.20 |
| **CLY** | 0.15 | 0.20 | 0.05 | 0.10 |

Table 4.11 depicts the maximum fractions that the soils class and drainage status combinations can be leached according to value judgements as verified by Van Staden (2000) and Du Preez (2000). Naturally drained (NDS) loamy soils (LMS) in Table 4.11, for example, have a maximum leaching capacity of 50% (0.50). This means that up to 50% extra water over and above the plant water requirement can be applied to the specific soil body without causing waterlogging problems over a production season.

As SALMOD was set up to model 1998 conditions specifically, the month elements of parameter RAIN(T) were assigned 1998 average monthly rainfall data as measured at the Douglas Weir by the DWAF. Long-term average monthly rainfall data can however also be inputted for parameter RAIN(T).

### 4.6.2. FINANCIAL DATA

Table 4.12 lists the CEBs for wheat only for the various sub-area case study farms as well as the GWK Ltd. CEB. The CEBs for the other crops used in this report appear in Appendix 1. Additional crops can be added with ease

into SALMOD if a wider spectrum of crops is to be analysed. Enterprise budgets need to be filled in for all crops that each farmer grows, or has the capacity to grow. Farm values for WAT and ELEC are filled in for comparison, but are calculated separately in the model, as they are a function of the actual volume of water used. With yield reduction management options, harvesting costs are recalculated to reflect the reduced yield. SALMOD summarises the CEB table shown in Table 4.12, grouping all cost components that are not dependent on water volume and yield, and calculates the production loan interest on these using the following loan terms: wheat – 6, maize – 6, groundnuts – 9, potatoes – 5, cotton – 7 and lucerne – 3 months.

**Assumption 4:** All farmers make use of the production loan facility in full when planting the crop and repay the loan in full one month after harvest.

**Table 4.12 EBTable(IO,C,SR), Crop Enterprise Budgets* (CEBs) of the OVIB sub-areas and GWK for wheat (other crops in set C omitted), 2000**

| | WHEAT.OL | WHEAT.VL | WHEAT.AT | WHEAT.BL | WHEAT.NB | WHEAT.GWK |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRICE | 1072 | 1022 | 1060 | 0 | 918 | 780 |
| YIELD | 5 | 6 | 10 | 0 | 7 | 7 |
| SEED | 483 | 108 | 1900 | 0 | 247 | 237 |
| FERT | 950 | 1388 | 1300 | 0 | 1072 | 1214 |
| HERB | 158 | 98 | 300 | 0 | 6 | 212 |
| PEST | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 302 |
| INSUR | 125 | 98 | 520 | 0 | 0 | 154 |
| HARV | 97 | 1 | 52 | 0 | 52 | 45 |
| MHLR | 16 | 16 | 16 | 0 | 16 | 16 |
| KWHR | 343 | 343 | 343 | 0 | 343 | 343 |
| WAT | 74 | 82 | 211 | 0 | 121 | 150 |
| ELEC | 245 | 123 | 253 | 0 | 198 | 345 |
| CAP | 87 | 51 | 211 | 0 | 97 | 0 |
| FUEL | 142 | 286 | 390 | 0 | 119 | 246 |
| MAINT | 393 | 530 | 172 | 0 | 279 | 51 |
| LABOUR | 507 | 504 | 597 | 0 | 446 | 30 |

* All units are in **R/ha** except harvesting costs (HARV) which are in **R/ton**

**Assumption 5:** It is assumed that farmers plan for the maximum physiological yield. All crop establishment costs remain static under different water quality scenarios. However, harvesting and irrigation costs vary with different water qualities and leaching fractions.

The Soil Protection Unit of the Department of Agriculture at Silverton compiled standard drainage cost norms, which were in the past used to calculate subsidies. Currently, however, subsidies are virtually non-existent and besides the clay % of the soil there are many other factors that determine drainage costs (Du Randt 2000). A rough approximation of the per hectare costs of underground drainage for various soil types, parameter ADTC(S), are as follows according to Du Randt (2000): Loamy sand (LMS) – R15 000, Sandy loam (SNL) – R17 000, Sandy clay (SNC) – R20 000 and Clay (CLY) – R25 000 per hectare.

**Table 4.13 Irrigation system transfer cost data, Van Staden (2000)**

| | TSC | SALV | MAINT | LIFE |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Units* | *R/ha* | *% of TSC* | *R/Ha/Yr* | *YRS* |
| FIS | 500 | 0.6 | 10 | 100 |
| CPI | 5000 | 0.1 | 100 | 20 |
| DIS | 8000 | 0.03 | 500 | 5 |

One possible management option in SALMOD is to determine whether it is feasible to replace the current irrigation system with one that is either more efficient or able to leach better. Paragraph 4.3.2.4 mentions the data required for this operation (see Table 4.13); total irrigation system costs (TSC) in Rand per hectare, the salvage value (SALV) of the irrigation system after its expected life (LIFE) and the annual maintenance costs (MAINT) for flood (FIS), centre pivot (CPI) and drip irrigation (DIS) systems.

4.6.3. CROP DATA

**Table 4.14 LAND(T,C), monthly land requirements (fraction of 1) of the crops modelled in SALMOD**

| | WHEAT | MAIZE | GROUNDNUT | POTATO | COTTON | LUCERNE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| JAN | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| FEB | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| MAR | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| APR | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| MAY | | 1 | 1 | 1 | | 1 |
| JUN | 0.5 | 0.5 | | | | 1 |
| JUL | 1 | | | | | 1 |
| AUG | 1 | | | | | 1 |
| SEP | 1 | | 0.5 | | 0.5 | 1 |
| OCT | 1 | | 1 | | 1 | 1 |
| NOV | 1 | | 1 | | 1 | 1 |
| DEC | 0.25 | 0.75 | 1 | | 1 | 1 |

The crop rotation systems practised by a specific case study farmer are incorporated into SALMOD with Table 4.14. This table LAND(T,C) is used in the optimisation section of SALMOD as a constraint to ensure that the area planted to crops in any one month does not exceed the irrigable area of the specific farmer being modelled. The value of 0.5 for wheat in June (JUN) indicates that wheat is planted in the second half of the month of June, then the values of 1 for July (JUL) to November (NOV) indicate that wheat will be on the specific lands for 100% of those months. The value of 0.25 in December indicates that harvesting is finished by the end of the first quarter of December (DEC).

Table 4.15 shows the monthly percentages according to Van Heerden *et al* (2000), of the total irrigation water requirement of the crops included in SALMOD. A check is performed in SALMOD to ensure that all the percentages add up to 100. If not, an error message is displayed and the model will not run.

**Table 4.15** WAT_PER(T,C), **monthly percentages of the total irrigation water requirement of the crops included in SALMOD, Van Heerden *et al*, 2000**

| | WHEAT | MAIZE | POTATO | COTTON | GRNDNUT | LUCERNE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Jan | | 24.6 | 13.0 | 33.7 | 35.7 | 17.4 |
| Feb | | 31.4 | 13.8 | 17.5 | 19.2 | 8.1 |
| Mar | | 30.1 | 29.4 | 14.8 | 9.5 | 8.4 |
| Apr | | 9.9 | 27.3 | 4.2 | 3.6 | 7.9 |
| May | | | 16.5 | | 0.9 | 5.5 |
| Jun | | | | | | |
| Jul | 2.9 | | | | | |
| Aug | 7.5 | | | | | 5.5 |
| Sep | 20.6 | | | | | 8.3 |
| Oct | 34.7 | | | 3.2 | 2.6 | 11.5 |
| Nov | 34.3 | | | 8.3 | 5.2 | 13.7 |
| Dec | | 4.0 | | 18.3 | 23.3 | 13.7 |

**Table 4.16** CROP_DATA (C, CROPDAT), **pre-year** (WREQ_PRE) **and after-year** (WREQ_AFT) **water requirements (Bruwer, 2000) and the thresholds** (TRSH) **and gradients** (GRAD) **(Maas, & Hoffman, 1977) of each crop modelled in SALMOD**

| | WREQ_PRE | WREQ_AFT | TRSH | GRAD |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Units* | *mm/PreYr* | *mm/AftYr* | *mS/m* | *%/mS/m* |
| WHEAT | 660 | 0 | 600 | 0.071 |
| MAIZE | 0 | 700 | 170 | 0.12 |
| GRNDNUT | 0 | 590 | 320 | 0.29 |
| POTATO | 0 | 580 | 170 | 0.12 |
| COTTON | 220 | 680 | 770 | 0.052 |
| LUCERNE | 479 | 791 | 200 | 0.073 |

Table 4.16 indicates the pre- (WREQ_PRE) and aft- (WREQ_AFT) year water requirements as determined by Bruwer (2000) for each crop as well as the threshold (TRSH) and gradient (GRAD) values according to Maas & Hoffman (1977) for each crop.

SALMOD table IR_EF(C,IS), not presented here, lists the efficiency of different irrigation systems at getting the water applied to the field to be taken up by the plant. A major factor in determining the plant water uptake efficiency is the irrigation frequency and duration. Flood irrigation (FIS) has the lowest efficiency of 90% because water is applied in large volumes at a time and where the water is applied and stands the longest, there are losses below the root zone. Centre pivot irrigation systems (CPI) also apply large volumes of water on the perimeter of the pivot as compared with the centre, but are more efficient than Flood with an efficiency of 95%. Drip irrigation systems (DIS), on the other hand, have a lower application rate and very even distribution, resulting in 99% plant water uptake efficiency. Different crops, depending on their planting density and root structure can also influence plant water uptake efficiency, and for this reason Table IR_EF(C,IS) is set up that the efficiencies can vary depending on the crop planted (set C), but for this report all crops have been given the same value due to a lack of information to differentiate between the crops.

4.6.4. WATER QUALITY DATA

The monthly water quality data for 1998 for each of the 5 OVIB sub-areas is given in Table 4.17. OVIB data was available only for Olierivier (OL) and Vaallus (VL) and for the other 3 sub-areas only DWAF data was available. This data was therefore combined in Table 4.17. From the data it is clear that OL has by far the poorest water quality and NB the best. BL and AT readings are very closely correlated as they obtain water from the same source. For a more in-depth discussion on the irrigation water salinity impacting on the sub-areas see Chapter 2.

**Table 4.17 Monthly average ECiw (mS/m) for the OVIB sub-areas, 1998**

| | OL | BL | AT | VL | NB |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Best '98* | *OVIB* | *DWAF* | *DWAF* | *OVIB* | *DWAF* |
| Jan | 96 | 51 | 52 | 45 | 19 |
| Feb | 91 | 50 | 52 | 56 | 20 |
| Mar | 72 | 38 | 42 | 64 | 18 |
| Apr | 54 | 43 | 44 | 40 | 19 |
| May | 102 | 65 | 68 | 65 | 20 |
| Jun | 109 | 85 | 91 | 63 | 21 |
| Jul | 97 | 94 | 91 | 59 | 20 |
| Aug | 99 | 86 | 86 | 62 | 19 |
| Sep | 119 | 68 | 77 | 74 | 19 |
| Oct | 130 | 23 | 28 | 84 | 20 |
| Nov | 113 | 47 | 53 | 87 | 20 |
| Dec | 97 | 75 | 80 | 45 | 20 |

**Table 4.18 SWCF(S,DS,LF) ECiw to ECe conversion factors based on results of soil samples taken on the case study farms in the OVIB, 2000**

| | LF0 | LF5 | LF10 | LF15 | LF20 | LF25 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| LMS.NDS | 2.35 | 2.30 | 2.20 | 1.60 | 1.10 | 1.00 |
| LMS.ADS | 2.35 | 2.30 | 2.20 | 1.60 | 1.10 | 1.00 |
| LMS.LDS | 6.00 | 4.50 | 3.60 | 3.20 | 2.90 | 2.50 |
| LMS.WLS | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 |
| SNL.NDS | 2.75 | 2.60 | 2.40 | 1.80 | 1.60 | 1.40 |
| SNL.ADS | 2.75 | 2.60 | 2.40 | 1.80 | 1.60 | 1.40 |
| SNL.LDS | 6.25 | 4.75 | 4.00 | 3.50 | 3.20 | 2.75 |
| SNL.WLS | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 |
| SNC.NDS | 3.35 | 3.30 | 3.20 | 2.80 | 2.10 | 1.80 |
| SNC.ADS | 3.35 | 3.30 | 3.20 | 2.80 | 2.10 | 1.80 |
| SNC.LDS | 6.50 | 5.35 | 4.60 | 3.90 | 3.30 | 2.85 |
| SNC.WLS | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 |
| CLY.NDS | 4.35 | 4.30 | 4.20 | 3.80 | 3.10 | 1.80 |
| CLY.ADS | 4.35 | 4.30 | 4.20 | 3.80 | 3.10 | 1.80 |
| CLY.LDS | 7.00 | 5.75 | 5.40 | 4.60 | 4.10 | 3.55 |
| CLY.WLS | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 | 10.00 |

Table 4.18 shows the ECiw to ECe conversion factors used in SALMOD. With a leaching fraction of 25% (LF25) on loamy sand naturally drained soils (LMS.NDS) for example the ECiw to ECe conversion factor of 1.00 indicates that the system is in equilibrium. A conversion factor of 10 is used for waterlogged soils to force the model to reject

these soils for crop production, as crops are assumed not to grow in waterlogged soils. Note also that naturally (NDS) and artificially (ADS) drained soils have the same values.

### 4.6.5. PARAMETERS

The range over which the leaching fraction intervals (LFV(LF)) span in SALMOD can be varied. For this report the values were set in SALMOD ranging from 0 to 0.25 (leaching fraction of 0% to 25%) for LF0 to LF25.

The after-year water overuse fine (FAY) tiers are calculated as percentages of the scalar WC (water costs) of R0.17 /mm/ha (which equals 1.7c /$m^3$), to pay extra when more water is required than the irrigation quota allows. If, for example, a farmer has a water quota for 100 ha at 1 100 mm/ha/yr and requires 130 000 mm in a year, he uses 20 000 mm / 100ha = 200 mm/ha more water than he is entitled to. At the tier interval of 100 mm/ha, his water bill would come to 110 000mm x 17c = R18 700 plus 20 000 mm x 17c = R3 400 for the extra water at the normal rate, plus 10 000 mm x (17c x 50%) = R850 for the first tier of the water fine plus 10 000mm x (17c x 100%) = R1 700 for the second tier of the water fine equalling a total water bill of R24 650, of which the extra water costs R5 950. This, however, is only true if all the excess water was required in the after-year. If all the extra water was required in the pre-year, the fine would have been 20 000mm x R1.00 = R20 000. SALMOD is so constructed that only four tiers of extra water at 100 mm/ha water right are allowed in the after-year (FAY) and only one tier in the pre-year (FPY).

**Assumption 6:** It is assumed in SALMOD that all farmers have access to their full allocated water quota as well as an additional four tiers at 100 mm/ha water right possessed in the after-year (FAY) at the block rate tariff and one tier in the pre-year (FPY) at the fixed tariff, although in reality the extra water is available only on request and availability from the OVIB.

The parameter ISMLF(IS) indicates the maximum leaching fraction that an irrigation system can deliver. Value judgement according to Van Staden (2000) is that a flood irrigation system (FIS) has a maximum leaching fraction capacity of 60%, a centre pivot irrigation system (CIS), 20% and a drip irrigation system (DIS), 15%. In the optimisation section of SALMOD, any crop / resource / management combination activity requiring a leaching fraction greater than these and those specified in Table 4.11 is eliminated from entering the optimal solution.

## 4.7. SALMOD SIMULATION

The data defined in the previous paragraphs list the input data structure and format required to set up SALMOD in GAMS. This section describes the manipulation of the input data that takes place in the simulation section of SALMOD, also programmed in GAMS. The final output from the simulation section of SALMOD to be used in the optimisation section of SALMOD (see Figure 4.1) are a range of gross margins, water usage volumes and leaching fractions required for all crop, soil, drainage status, irrigation system and leaching fraction combinations.

### 4.7.1. TDS TO EC CONVERSION

The electrical conductivity of the irrigation water (ECiw) is measured in milli-Siemens per meter (mS/m) and is usually a derived value from a total dissolved solids (TDS) reading, measured in milligrams per litre (mg/l) or parts

per million (ppm). Using a JENCO model 113 salinity meter (Bruwer, 2000), the OVIB takes TDS readings every 2 weeks throughout the OVIB service area. A calibration fluid is used to calibrate the meter at 0.774gr. The salt concentration results displayed by the meter are in units of ppm (parts per million). Figure 4.2 shows the relationship between EC and TDS using DWAF data. With the intercept forced through zero, EC can be derived from TDS, with a coefficient of determination ($R^2$) of 97%, by dividing by a factor of 6.425. In Figure 2.2 to Figure 2.5, where TDS and EC readings are taken independently of each other by the DWAF, TDS and EC plotted on different vertical axes display a very close correlation.

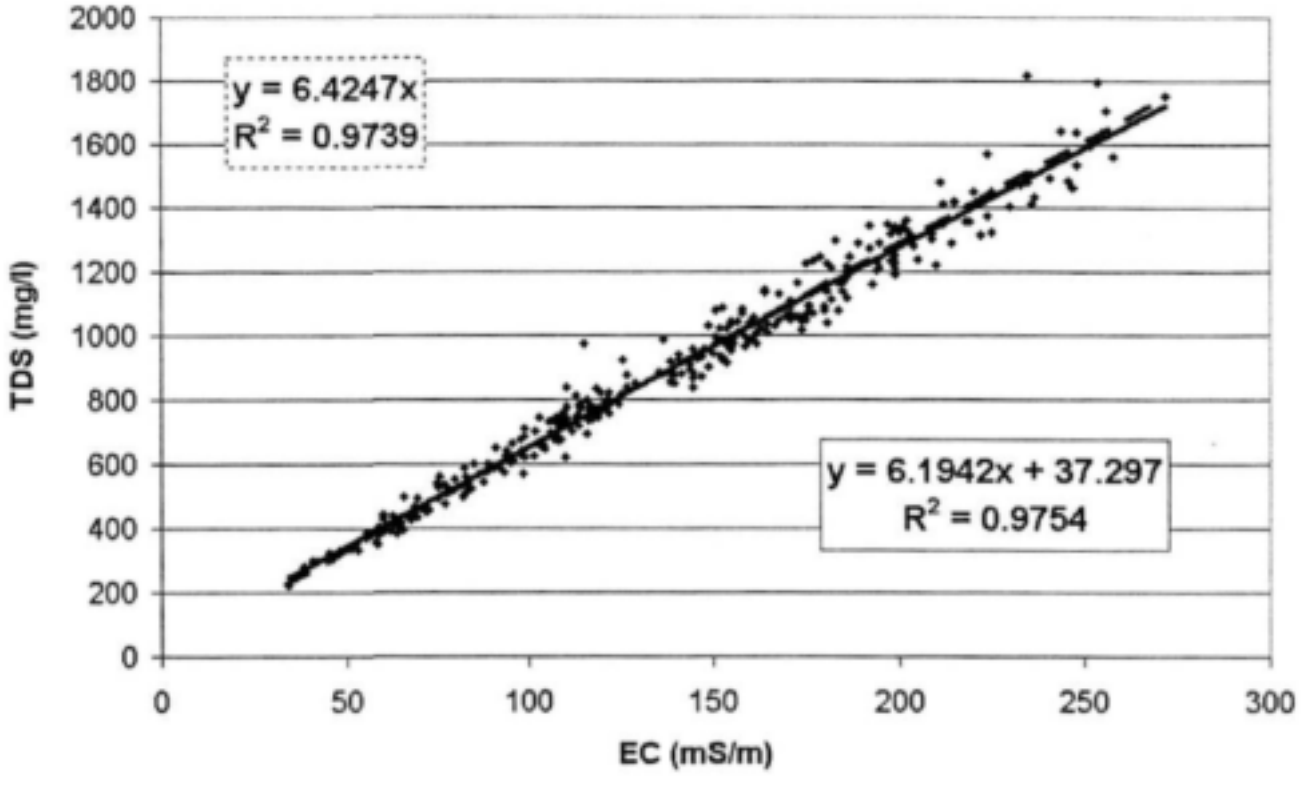



**Figure 4.2 The relationship between EC and TDS of irrigation water at Soutpansdrift on the Riet River in the OVIB area, DWAF 1990-1998**

4.7.2. IRRIGATION WATER QUALITY TO SOIL WATER QUALITY CONVERSION

Once irrigation water quality has been converted from TDS to ECiw, the electrical conductivity of the saturated soil extract (ECe) needs to be derived to determine the impact on the receiving crop. This leads to Assumption 7, that SALMOD accounts only for the effects of water quality on crop yield through the soil water, and not for the leaf wetting effect of overhead irrigation applications of saline water, scorching the crops leaves.

**Assumption 7:** It is assumed in SALMOD that farmers manage the leaf scorching effect of sprinkler irrigation on sensitive crops sufficiently so as not to affect crop yield.

Converting ECiw to ECe is done using the factors in Table 4.18. ECe is dependent on the soil type, soil drainage status and the amount that a soil is leached. ECiw to ECe conversion factors are used only in the LF methodology

of SALMOD. For the LF methodology the electrical conductivity of the irrigation water (ECiw) first has to be converted to the electrical conductivity of the saturated soil paste (ECe) using the following formula:

$$ECe_{c,s,ds,lf} = A\_EC\_CW_c \,.\, WCF_{s,ds,lf} \qquad (4.3)$$

where: $A\_EC\_CW_c$ is the average EC of the crop water, weighted according to monthly volumes demanded at monthly ECiw values for each crop ($_c$) and the dilution effect of rainwater

$WCF_{s,ds,lf}$ is the water conversion factor from ECiw to ECe and is a three-dimensional matrix of soil type ($_s$), soil drainage status ($_{ds}$) and leaching fraction($_{lf}$).

This formula is the closest representation to calculate the effect of fluctuating irrigation water quality possible with the limited data available. See Table 4.2 for the derivation of the average seasonal ECe.

### 4.7.3. WATER USE EFFICIENCIES

Not all water extracted from a water source for the purpose of irrigation is utilised by the crop being irrigated. There are distribution losses in getting the water to the crop, irrigation system losses where irrigation water is applied unevenly and runoff or evaporation occurs, and there are deep percolation losses where water penetrates into the soil to beyond the vadose (root) zone (Van Staden, 2000).

#### *4.7.3.1 Natural leaching factor*

An argument against having a zero leaching fraction option in SALMOD is that if no leaching takes place, salt carried by the irrigation water accumulate in the soil and can reach harmful concentrations over time (Du Plessis, 2000). Farmers interviewed in the study region who have been irrigating for over 50 years say they do not actively practise leaching as a management option. If no leaching took place, these soils would surely be badly salinised. A certain amount of accidental/natural leaching therefore has to take place. In SALMOD the natural leaching factor is calculated as the sum of the minimum of any excess rainwater over and above the monthly crop irrigation water requirement for each crop and zero divided by the sum of the pre-year and after-year crop water requirement.

**Assumption 8:** Farmers manage their irrigation scheduling to account for all effective rainfall.

The formula employed to calculate the natural leaching factor (NLF) for each crop (C) is:

$$NLF_c = -\sum_t (\min(MC\_IW\_R_{t,c} - (RAIN_t \,.\, LAND_{t,c})),0) \,/\, SUM\_WR_c \qquad (4.4)$$

where:

$MC\_IW\_R_{t,c}$ is the monthly (t) crop irrigation water requirement for each crop (c)

$RAIN_t$ is the expected monthly rainfall

$LAND_{t,c}$ is the land use pattern of each of the crops (see Table 4.14)

$SUM\_WR_c$ is the sum of the pre-year and the after-year water requirements

#### *4.7.3.2 Effective Rainfall*

Table 4.2 shows how effective rainfall is used to contribute towards the determination of the average weighted ECe over a production season with fluctuating irrigation water quality levels, which is used to calculate the expected yield. Effective rainfall is calculated according to Van Heerden *et al, (*2000) as the monthly rainfall minus 20mm divided by 2. Table 4.2 is discussed in greater detail in the beginning of this chapter.

#### *4.7.3.3 Irrigation system efficiency and leaching fraction capacity*

The amount of drainage resulting from irrigation is a factor of the soil's water holding capacity or infiltrability (De Wet, 2000). Furthermore 65%, 75% and 85% efficiencies for flood, sprinkler and drip irrigation systems respectively are norms for, from withdrawal to reaching the soil surface. These are the figures with which irrigation engineers work.

Furthermore, there is also the irrigation system's maximum leaching capacity. This is important to include in SALMOD as a constraint so that the leaching fractions calculated for the soil are not too high for the water delivery capacity of the irrigation system. The irrigation system maximum leaching fraction value judgement values (`Parameter ISMLF(IS)`) used in SALMOD are 60% for flood irrigation systems (`FIS`), 20% for centre pivot and sprinkler irrigation systems (`CPI`) and 15% for drip irrigation systems (`DIS`).

#### *4.7.3.4 Plant uptake from the soil efficiency*

For plant water uptake efficiency losses, i.e. losses occurring from between delivery to the soil surface till the water is actually absorbed by the plant, De Wet (2000) uses the following value judgements: 10%, 5% and 1% for flood, sprinkler and drip irrigation systems respectively. This corresponds with the 90%, 95% and 99% values in used in SALMOD in table `IR_EF(C,IS)` to indicate the crop/irrigation system soil water use efficiency.

### 4.7.4. FINANCIAL CALCULATIONS

The financial calculations performed in SALMOD are all for a fixed period in time and are based on 1998 prices. The main groups of financial calculations that are performed in the simulation section of SALMOD are the setting up of a range of condensed CEBs based on the CEBs entered in Table 4.12 for the calculation of the gross margin above specified costs (GMASC) to be used in the optimisation section, and the amortisation of long term costs.

#### *4.7.4.1 Crop enterprise budgets setup*

The yield in tons and the crop price and harvesting costs in R/ton are transferred directly from the farmer CEBs entered in Table 4.12 into the condensed CEBs set up in SALMOD called `CCDAT(COSTDAT,C,SR)`. The other input cost coefficients, excluding fuel and maintenance cost, and water and pumping costs, are grouped together as fixed variable costs (***FVC***) for use in SALMOD as they are not affected by yield and irrigation water volumes.

Fuel and lubrication (***FUEL***), and maintenance (***MAINT***) costs are recalculated in SALMOD to be a function of the crop kilowatt-hour requirements (***KWHR***) entered in Table 4.12.

$$FUEL = (KWHR \,.\, LPKWH \,.\, FP) + (KWHR \,.\, LPKWH \,.\, FP \,.\, FLR) \quad (4.5)$$

This kilowatt-hour requirement (*KWHR*) multiplied by the litres per kilowatt-hour scalar (*LPKWH*) of 0.35, multiplied by the fuel price (*FP*) gives the total fuel costs for each crop. This fuel cost multiplied by the fuel to lubrication cost ratio (*FLR*) of 0.01 to include lubrication costs, gives the fuel and lubrication cost.

$$MAINT = KWHR \,.\, LPKWH \,.\, FP \,.\, FMR \quad (4.6)$$

Maintainance costs (*MAINT*) are calculated by multiplying the fuel price discussed for Equation 4.5 by the fuel to maintenance cost ration (*FMR*) of 0.05.

$$FVC = (PL + FUEL + MAINT) + ((PL + FUEL + MAINT) * PCI \,.\, (PCLT/12)) \quad (4.7)$$

The interest component of the variable costs is calculated in the second line of equation 4.7 for the sum of element coefficients of sub-set *PL* (production loan), fuel (*FUEL*) and maintenance (*MAINT*) costs, using the production capital loan term parameter values (*PCLT*) for each crop (c) and the production capital interest rate (*PCI*).

#### *4.7.4.2 Long-term cost amortisation*

An amortisation factor is a factor used to determine the annual repayments of a loan over a given number of years at a fixed interest rate. An amortisation factor is calculated as follows:

$$AF = (LTI.(1+LTI)^{LTT}) / (1+LTI)^{LTT} - 1 \quad (4.8)$$

Where:

*LTI* is the fixed long-term interest rate (%/yr)

*LTT* is the long-term loan term (yrs)

The annualised costs of installing artificial drainage (*ADC*) and building an on-farm storage dam (*AOFSC*) are determined by multiplying the total cost by the amortisation factor described in Equation 4.8, for example:

$$ADC \text{ or } AOFSC = ADTC \text{ or } COFSD \,.\, AF \quad (4.9)$$

Where:

*ADC* is the annualised drainage costs (R/yr). This value is worked out for all soil types of set S.

*AOFSC* is the annualised on-farm storage costs (R/yr)

*ADTC* is the artificial drainage total costs (R)

*COFSD* is the cost of an on-farm storage dam as specified in scalars Table 4.7 (R)

Calculating the annual costs of replacing an irrigation system, however, is not as simple because parts of the old system can be used. Depending on the change, there is usually a salvage value for the old system and annual maintenance costs also need to be taken into account. When looking at three irrigation systems, there are 6 options for change: ***ATCFC, ATCFD, ATCCD, ATCCF, ATCDC, ATCDF,*** where ***ATCFC,*** for instance, is the annualised transfer costs from flood to centre pivot irrigation.

The formula used in calculating the ***ATCFC*** is, for example:

$$ATCFC = ( TSC_{cpi} - (TSC_{fis} . SALV_{fis}) ) . AF + MAINT_{cpi} \qquad (4.10)$$

Where:

$TSC_{cpi}$ is the total system costs of a centre pivot irrigation system (R)

$TSC_{fis}$ is the total system costs of a flood irrigation system (R)

$SALV_{fis}$ is the salvage value factor of a flood irrigation system (R)

$MAINT_{cpi}$ is the maintenance cost of a centre pivot irrigation system (R/yr)

All these costs are derived from Table 4.13, `STC(IS,*)`; irrigation system transfer cost.

## 4.8. THE FIXED INTERVAL LEACHING FRACTION (LF) EQUATION

The LF formula determines the relative yield (***RY***) percentage of maximum physiological yield over a fixed range of leaching fractions. The ***RY*** for each crop ($_c$) is a function of the soil type, the drainage status of the soil and the leaching fraction implemented. The matrix of ECe values is then employed in the LF methodology as follows:

$$RY_{c,s,ds,lf} = ((100 - GRAD_c) * (ECe_{c,s,ds,lf} - TRSH_c))/100 \qquad (4.11)$$

where:

$TRSH_c$ is the ECe limit for each crop ($_c$) at which no crop yield reductions will be observed if water quality deteriorates, as determined by Maas & Hoffman (1977). The threshold ECe value in Figure 4.3 is where the crop function first deviates from 100% relative yield percentage. For maize, for example, it is just over 300mS/m.

$GRAD_c$ is the gradient for each crop ($_c$), after the threshold has been reached, at which yield declines as ECe deteriorates (determined by Maas & Hoffman, 1977). The gradient is the slope of the crop function depicted in Figure 4.3. The gradient for groundnuts (`GRNDNUT`) has the steepest slope and that for cotton the flattest.

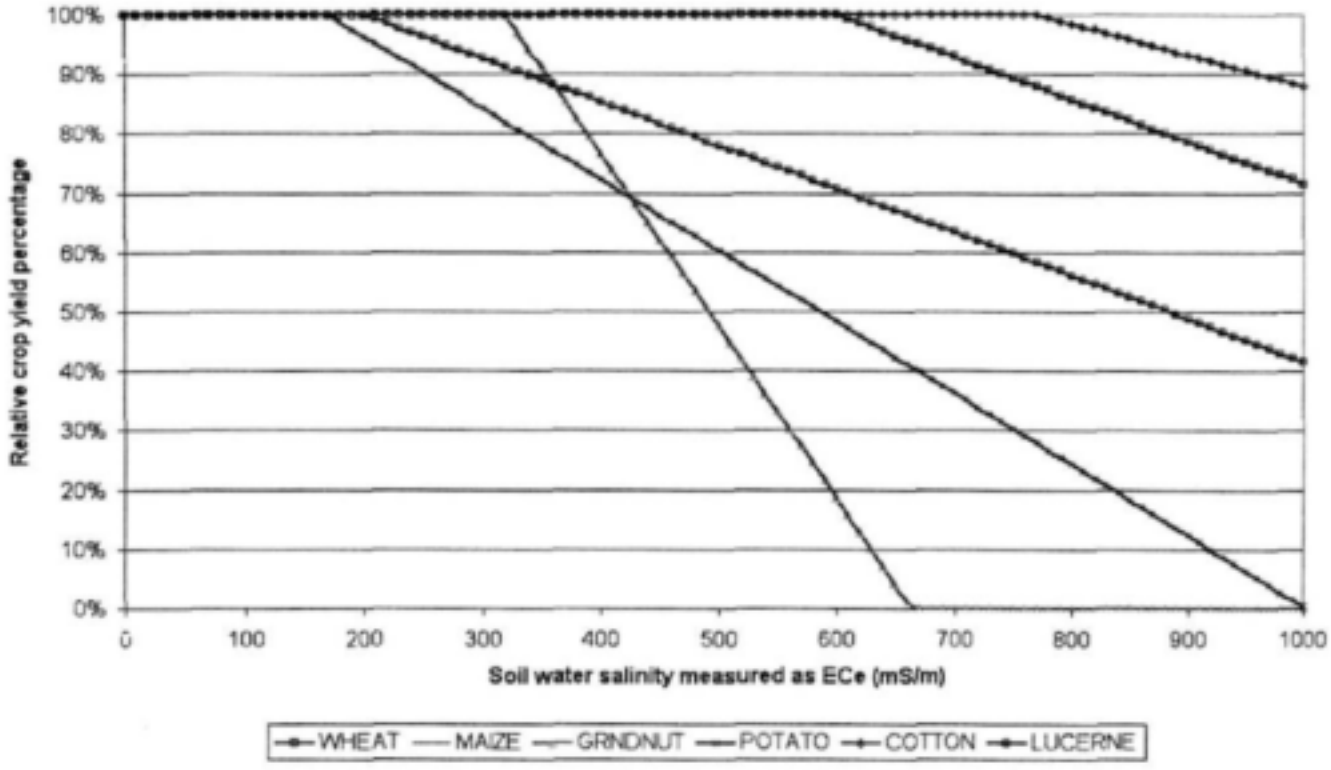



**Figure 4.3 A figure depicting the threshold (mS/m) and gradient (%/mS/ha) of the six crops modelled in SALMOD, as determined by Maas and Hoffman (1977)** (NOTE: Maize and potato have the same threshold and gradient values)

4.8.1. WATER USAGE AND LEACHING VOLUMES

In SALMOD a distinction is drawn between the plant water requirement and the irrigation water requirement. Both the plant water requirement and the irrigation water requirement are greater than the physiologically optimal plant water needs because of efficiency losses in getting the water to the plants' roots as discussed under section 4.7.3. The equation to determine the total pre-year plant water requirements ($PPWRI_{c,lf}$) in mm/ha for all crops ($_c$) and leaching fractions ($_{lf}$), is calculated as follows:

$$PPWRI_{c,lf} = SPYIWR_c / (1 - LFV_{lf}) \qquad (4.12)$$

where:

$LFV_{lf}$ are the predetermined fixed leaching fraction values

The pre-year irrigation water requirement ($PIWR_{c,ls}$) is the volume of water that needs to be applied to ensure that the crop receives the physiologically optimal volume of water. It is no longer a function of the leaching ability of the soil as indicated in the previous two equations, but of the crop ($_c$) and irrigation system ($_{ls}$), and is calculated as follows:

$$PIWR_{c,is} = SPYIWR_c / IR\_EF_{c,is} \quad (4.13)$$

where:

$IR\_EF_{c,is}$ are the irrigation system plant water use efficiencies as defined in paragraph 4.3.2.5.

The after-year irrigation water requirement $(AIWR_{c,is})$ for crop $(c)$ using irrigation system $(is)$, is calculated the same as in Equation 4.13.

The following formula to determine the pre-year irrigation demand $(PIDI_{c,s,ds,is,lf})$ for the leaching fraction methodology $(lf)$ for all crops $(c)$, on soils $(s)$, with different drainage status $(ds)$, using irrigation system $(is)$ and for leaching fraction $(lf)$, chooses the maximum of the pre-year irrigation water requirement $(PIWR_{c,is})$ or the pre-year plant water requirement $(PPWRI_{c,lf})$ to transfer to the optimisation section of SALMOD:

$$PIDI_{c,s,ds,is,lf} = MAX\,(PIWR_{c,is}, PPWRI_{c,lf}) \quad (4.14)$$

The after-year irrigation demand $(AIDI)$ is calculated in the same way as Equation 4.14.

The pre-year water loss $(PWLI)$ is the difference between the actual volume of water applied in the pre-year to the crop and the volume effectively utilised by the crop. This is the value that provides an indication of how much water leaches from a field. The pre-year water losses are calculated as the maximum difference between either the irrigation water requirement $(PIWR)$ and the plant water requirement $(PPWR)$, or the plant water requirement $(PPWR)$ and the optimal physiological water requirements $(SPYIWR)$.

$$PWLI_{c,s,ds,is,lf} = MAX\,((PIWR_{C,IS} - PPWRI_{C,LF}), (PPWRI_{C,LF} - SPYIWR_C)) \quad (4.15)$$

The after-year irrigation water loss $(AWLI)$ is calculated in the same way as equation in 4.15.

Once $PIDI$ and $AIDI$ have been assigned the highest values from either plant or irrigation water requirements, the leaching fraction requirements $(LFRI)$ are calculated as the sum of the pre- and after- year water loss divided by the sum of the pre- and after- year irrigation demands as in the formula for the leaching fraction methodology:

$$LFRI_{c,s,ds,is,lf} = (PWLI_{c,s,ds,is,lf} + AWLI_{c,s,ds,is,lf}) \;/\; (PIDI_{c,s,ds,is,lf} + AIDI_{c,s,ds,is,lf}) \quad (4.16)$$

It might seem erroneous that a leaching fraction requirement be calculated for a methodology using predetermined fixed leaching rates. However, with irrigation system and plant water inefficiencies, a fraction more water can be leached than expected when applying a fixed leaching rate. This actual leaching rate that results from applying a specific leaching fraction is what is used in calculating irrigation returnflows and in eliminating cropping combinations in the optimisation section which require a larger leaching requirement than either the irrigation system can deliver or can infiltrate the soil.

The final data required from the SALMOD simulation section for the optimisation section are the water and electricity costs associated with the pre- and after- year irrigation demand. The pre-year water and electricity costs ($PWEC_{c,s,ds,is,lf}$) for example are calculated as follows:

$$PWEC_{c,s,ds,is,lf} = PID_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot (WC + PC) \qquad (4.17)$$

where:

$WC$ is the water costs (R/mm) from Table 4.9 for a specific sub-area, and

$PC$ is the water pumping costs (R/mm) from Table 4.9 for a specific sub-area

## 4.9. GROSS MARGIN

The final step of the simulation section is the setting up of the range of crop/resource combination gross margins above specified costs ($GMASC_{c,s,ds,lf}$) to be transferred as the decision variable coefficients ($GM_i$) into the optimisation section of SALMOD.

$$GMASC_{c,s,ds,lf} = PRICE_c \cdot MEY_c \cdot RY_{c,s,ds,lf} - FVC_c - HC_c \cdot RY_{c,s,ds,lf} \qquad (4.18)$$

Where: $PRICE_c$ is a vector of selling prices for each crop ($_c$)

$MEY_c$ is a vector of the maximum expected yield of each crop ($_c$)

$FVC_c$ is a vector of the variable per hectare costs for each crop ($_c$) excluding the water tariff and pumping costs

$HC_c$ is a vector of the per ton harvesting costs of each crop ($_c$) dependent on the calculated relative yield ($RY$)

As can be seen in Equation 4.18 the specified costs include only the fixed variable costs ($FVC$) and harvesting costs. The $FVC$ used in the calculation of the GMASCs include fuel and maintenance costs. Water and pumping costs are calculated separately and also used in the optimisation section of the model, and are brought together only with the specified crop enterprise costs in the calculation of maximum farm level net revenue, the objective of the optimisation section.

## 4.10. MATHEMATICAL FORMULATION FOR LINEAR PROGRAMMING (LP)

The structure of a linear programming problem in its most basic form is as follows:

**Maximise** $\pi = \sum_{i=1}^{n} GM_i \cdot X_i$ **(4.19)**

**Subject to** $\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_{ij} \cdot X_i \geq , \leq or = R_j \qquad (i = 1, 2, \ldots, n)$ **(4.20)**

**and** $X_i \geq 0 \qquad (j = 1, 2, \ldots, m) \qquad (4.21)$

where: $\pi$ is profit

$GM_i$ is the per hectare gross margin of variable i

$X_i$ is the level of activity i ( i = 1 to n)

$A_{ij}$ is the matrix of coefficients linking variable i to constraint j

$R_j$ is the values of constraint j

The objective function (4.19) is to maximise profit ($\pi$) by choosing the optimal level of $X$ from the range of choice variables $X_i$ *(i = 1 to n)* multiplied by the objective function coefficients, $GM_i$ *(i = 1 to n)* which is a set of constants. In SALMOD these constants are calculated in the simulation section of the model. In equation 4.20 the technical coefficient ($A_{ij}$) and constraints ($R_j$) are specified. The levels of these constraints, $R_j$ are also constants. The coefficients of the choice variables ($X_i$) in the constraint are denoted by $A_{ij}$. Since there are $m$ constraints in $n$ variables, the coefficients $A_{ij}$ form a rectangular matrix with an $m$ x $n$ dimension. Equation 4.21 is the non-negativity constraint of the choice variables. The variables used in SALMOD are described in Table 4.19 which lists the variable names followed by the set dimensions in brackets.

| *SET* | *ACTIVITY* | *TOTAL* |
|---|---|---|
| | **6 Crop types** | |
| C | WHEAT, MAIZE, GROUNDNUT, POTATO, COTTON, LUCERNE | 6 |
| | ↓ | |
| S | **4 Soil Types** | x |
| | LMS, SLM, SNC, CLY | 4 |
| | ↓ | |
| DC | **4 Soil drainage classes** | X |
| | NDS, ADS, LDS, WLS | 4 |
| | ↓ | |
| IS | **3 Irrigation System Types** | X |
| | FIS, CPI, DIS | 3 |
| | ↓ | |
| LF | **6 Leaching Fractions** | X |
| | LF0 to LF25 | 6 |
| | | = 1728 |

**Figure 4.4 A flow diagram showing the dimensions of ACTIVITY, the main choice variable of SALMOD**

Figure 4.4 shows the magnitude of the main choice variable in SALMOD. Variable $ACTIVITY_{C,S,DC,IS,LF}$ generates 1728 possibilities from which an optimal combination has to be chosen. The leaching fraction intervals of 5% for the leaching fraction methodology can be changed in SALMOD, if a finer range is required. Only the leaching fraction methodology will be discussed in this chapter.

Based on the matrix version of the mathematical Equations 4.19 to 4.21, Table 4.20 shows a schematic representation (as determined by GAMSCHK, McCarl, 1998) of SALMOD without fixed capital management options.

**Table 4.19 The variables used for the SALMOD optimisation section**

| *VARIABLE NAME (SETS)* | *DESCRIPTION* | |
|---|---|---|
| NR* | Net Revenue | |
| ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF) | Ha of crop C to grow on S, DS, IS and LF | (ha) |
| FINES(F) | Water overuse fines charged at step interval F | (mm) |
| TRANS_P2A | Pre-Year water not used transferred to After-year | (mm) |
| NPSD | Non-Point Source Discharge counter | (mm) |
| OFS** | On-farm Storage management option | (dams) |
| TRANS_W2L(S,IS) | Soil Transfer - WL to limited drained soils | (ha) |
| TRANS_W2A(S,IS) | Soil Transfer - WL to artificially drained soils | (ha) |
| TRANS_L2A(S,IS) | Soil Transfer - Limited artificially drained soils | (ha) |
| TRANS_F2C(S,DS) | Irrigation system transfer. Flood to Centre Pivot | (ha) |
| TRANS_F2D(S,DS) | Irrigation system transfer. Flood to a Drip System | (ha) |
| TRANS_C2F(S,DS) | Irrigation system transfer. Centre Pivot to Flood | (ha) |
| TRANS_C2D(S,DS) | Irrigation system transfer. Centre Pivot to a Drip | (ha) |
| TRANS_D2F(S,DS) | Irrigation system transfer. Drip to Centre Pivot | (ha) |
| TRANS_D2C(S,DS) | Irrigation system transfer. Drip to Flood | (ha) |

*NR is the only Free Variable (i.e. can be +or-). The rest are positive variables.
**

**Table 4.20 A schematic representation of the structure of the optimisation (LP) section of the SALMOD without management options with constraint description**

| | | VARIABLES | | | | | | | | CONSTRAINT DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | NR | Y | P2A | X | NPSD | OFS | Sign | RHS | *NR=TGMASC(π), Y=Water Fines Decision variable, P2A=Water transfer, pre-year to after-year, X=cropping decision variables, NPSD=Non-point source discharge counter, OFS=On-farm storage, RHS=Right hand side ($R_j$)* |
| | **OBJN** | + | + | | m | | + | = | 0 | **Objective Function** |
| CONSTRAINTS | LAND_BAL | | | | + | | | <= | + | Land Balance |
| | $ROTATION_T$ | | | | + | | | <= | + | To check only 1 crop planted per ha at any time |
| | PotCons | | | | + | | | <= | + | Max potato Constraint |
| | PotDS | | | | + | | | = | 0 | Plant potatoes only on well-drained soils |
| | PotIS | | | | + | | | = | 0 | No Potatoes under flood Irrigation Systems |
| | WhtMax | | | | + | | | <= | + | Max. ha of wheat that can be planted |
| | $GNMax_{GN}$ | | | | + | | | <= | + | Max. ha of groundnuts that can be planted |
| | $GnSand_{GN}$ | | | | + | | | <= | 0 | Plant groundnuts only on loamy sand soils |
| | $GnDS_{GN}$ | | | | + | | | <= | 0 | Plant groundnuts only on well-drained soils |
| | DRIP_CONS | | | | + | | | = | 0 | Limits crops not grown under drip irrigation |
| | MAX_QUOTA | | - | | + | | | <= | + | Maximum water quota constraint |
| | PY_QUOTA | | - | + | + | | | <= | + | Maximum pre-year withdrawals |
| | AY_QUOTA | | - | - | + | | | <= | + | Maximum after-year withdrawals |
| | RFC | | | | - | + | + | = | 0 | Irrigation Returnflows Counter |
| | MRF | | | | + | | - | <= | + | Maximum Returnflows allowed constrainer |
| | $SDC_{C,S,DS,IS,LF}$ | | | | m | | | <= | 0 | Soil Drainage Constraint |
| | PCC | | + | | + | | + | <= | + | Production Capital Constraint |
| | FCLC | | | | | | + | <= | + | Fixed Capital Loan Constraint |
| ***Variable Type:*** | | u | + | + | + | + | + | | | *m = mixed values (+&-), u = free variable (+ or -)* |

4.10.1. THE OBJECTIVE FUNCTION

For the purpose of this report some abbreviations and simplifications have been used when converting the formulas discussed from GAMS coding into mathematical format. Table 4.21 provides both a guide to these changes and also provides a description of the mathematical notation symbols.

**Table 4.21 A key used in converting GAMS coding into mathematical notation or *vice versa***

| GAMS coding | *Mathematical notation* | Comment |
|---|---|---|
| (sum( | $\sum$ | Summation symbol used |
| * | . | Multiplication symbol used |
| NR | $TGMASC$ | The objective function is to maximise NR/TGMASC |
| ACTIVITY | $X$ | Cropping combination activity decision variable |
| GMASC | $GM$ | Coefficient of decision variable X |
| FINES | $Y$ | Fine volume decision variable |
| CSFD(SR,"PC") | $PC$ | Pumping Costs varied for case study farmers |
| CSFD(SR,"WC") | $WC$ | Water Costs constant for all case study farmers |
| (C,S,DS,IS,LF) | $_{c,s,ds,is,lf}$ | Cropping combination activity identifiers |
| (FAY) | $_{a}$ | After-year fine interval identifier |
| (FPY) | $_{p}$ | Pre-year fine interval identifier |
| (S,IS) | $_{s,is}$ | Soil type / irrigation system identifiers |
| (S,DS) | $_{s,ds}$ | Soil type / drainage status identifiers |
| (S) | $_{s}$ | Soil type identifier |
| wlds | $_{wlds}$ | Waterlogged drainage status - subset of set DS |
| dti | $_{dti}$ | Drip type irrigation - subset of set IS |
| fti | $_{fti}$ | Flood type irrigation - subset of set IS |
| gn | $_{gn}$ | Groundnuts - subset of set C |
| luc | $_{luc}$ | Lucerne - subset of set C |
| pot | $_{pot}$ | Potatoes - subset of set C |
| wht | $_{wht}$ | Wheat - subset of set C |
| Npds | $_{npds}$ | Non-potatoes drainage status - subset of set DS |
| Nlms | $_{nlms}$ | Not loamy sand - subset of set S |
| Nodrip | $_{nodrip}$ | Not drip irrigable - subset of set C |
| tsc | $_{tsc}$ | Total irrig. system costs from table ISTC(IS,*) |

The objective function is:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&Max\ TGMASC = \\
&\textstyle\sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf}\ GM_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} - \\
&\textstyle\sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf}\ PID_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot (WC + PC) - \\
&\textstyle\sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf}\ AID_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot (WC + PC) - \\
&\textstyle\sum_{p}\ Y_p \cdot FRPY_p - \sum_{p}\ Y_p \cdot PC - \\
&\textstyle\sum_{a}\ (WC+(FRAY_a WC)) \cdot Y_a - \sum_{a} Y_a \cdot PC - \\
&\textstyle\sum_{s,i}\ W2L_{s,i} \cdot WSDC_s - \sum_{s,i} L2A_{s,i} \cdot (ADC_s - WSDC_s) - \sum_{s,i} W2A_{s,i} \cdot ADC_s - \\
&\textstyle\sum_{s,d}\ F2C_{s,d} \cdot ATCFC - \sum_{s,d}\ F2D_{s,d} \cdot ATCFD - \sum_{s,d}\ C2F_{s,d} \cdot ATCCF - \\
&\textstyle\sum_{s,d}\ C2D_{s,d} \cdot ATCCD - \sum_{s,d}\ D2F_{s,d} \cdot ATCDF - \sum_{s,d}\ D2C_{s,d} \cdot ATCDC - \\
&(OFS \cdot AOFSC)
\end{aligned}
\qquad \textbf{(4.22)}
$$

The objective function of SALMOD is to maximise the total gross margin above specified costs (*TGMASC*).

This TGMASC is calculated as in Equation 4.22 as:

- the sum of the gross margin (*GM*) above specified costs for each individual crop, soil, drainage status, irrigation system and leaching fraction (*c,s,ds,is,lf*) option multiplied by the decision variable *X* (which is the number of ha) for each *c,s,ds,is,lf* option.
- minus the pre-year water and pumping costs calculated as the sum of the pre-year irrigation demand (*PID*) for all *c,s,ds,is,lf* options multiplied by the decision variable *X* (ha) for each *c,s,ds,is,lf* option and the constant water cost (*WC*) and pumping cost (*PC*).
- minus the after-year water and pumping costs calculated as the sum of the after-year irrigation demand (*AID*) for all *c,s,ds,is,lf* options multiplied by the decision variable *X* (ha) for each *c,s,ds,is,lf* option and the constant water cost (*WC*) and pumping cost (*PC*).
- minus the pre-year costs of water used exceeding the irrigation quota and its pumping costs, calculated as the sum of the decision variable *Y* (which is the number of mm/ha) multiplied by the fixed rate fine for water overuse in the pre-year (*FRPY*) and also minus the sum of *Y* (mm/ha) multiplied by the pumping costs (*PC*) of the water.
- minus the after-year costs of water used exceeding the irrigation quota and its pumping costs, calculated as the sum of the decision variable *Y* (mm/ha) for the range of fine intervals for the after-year multiplied by the stepped percentage of the water cost (*WC*) fine for water overuse in the after-year (*FRAY*) and also minus the sum of *Y* (mm/ha) multiplied by the pumping costs (*PC*) of the water. The quota includes excess unused water from the pre-year quota transferred to the after-year.
- minus the sum of each of the range of artificial drainage installation options.

  The cost of artificial drainage to convert from waterlogged soils to limited drainage soils (*W2L*) is calculated by multiplying the sum of all hectares converted from waterlogged to limited drainage soils for the range of soil types and irrigation systems (*s,is*) by the annualised waterlogged soils drainage costs (*WSDC*) for all soil types (*s*). The *WSDC* is determined as a factor (*WLSDF* which = 10%, see scalars) of *ADC*.

  The cost of artificial drainage to convert from limited drainage soils to fully-drained artificially drained soils (*L2A*) is calculated by multiplying the sum of all hectares converted from limited drainage soils to fully drained artificially drained soils for the range of soil types and irrigation systems (*s,is*), by the annualised drainage costs (*ADC*) for all soil types (*s*) minus the waterlogged soils drainage costs (*WSDC*) for all soil types (*s*).

  The cost of artificial drainage to convert from waterlogged soils to fully-drained artificially drained soils (*W2A*) is calculated by multiplying the sum of all hectares converted from waterlogged soils to fully drained artificially drained soils for the range of soil types and irrigation systems (*s,is*) by the annualised drainage costs (*ADC*) for all soil types (*s*).

- minus the sum of each of the range of the irrigation system transfer options (*_2_*) for the range of soil types and drainage classes (*s,ds*) multiplied by the annualised transfer costs (*ATC _ _*) for the specific system

transfer combination. Taking the first option, for example, the number of hectares converted from flood to centre pivot (*F2C*) over range of soil types and drainage classes (*s,ds*) is multiplied by the annualised transfer costs of converting from a flood to a centre pivot irrigation system (*ATCFC* ). The abbreviations used in the formula are as follows: *F* for flood, *C* for centre pivot and *D* for drip irrigation systems.

- minus the non-integer number of on-farm storage dams of a predetermined size to construct (*OFS*) multiplied by the annualised on-farm storage dam costs (*AOFSC*).

4.10.2. MODEL CONSTRAINTS

Maximising the objective function is subject to various constraints. Each of the equation names in Table 4.20 and Table 4.22 is the name of a mathematical equation of a model constraint. In the discussion to follow these equations will be grouped under the following categories: land, crop, water and financial constraints.

**Table 4.22 A description of the fixed capital management equations used in SALMOD, 2000**

| *Equation (set)* | *Description* |
|---|---|
| SIDBal***WF***(S,IS,DS) | Soil, irrigation and drainage status balance on waterlogged soils (W) that are flood irrigated (F). |
| *WC,WD,LF,LC,LD,AF* | W=Waterlogged, L=Limited, A=Artificial & N=Natural drainage |
| *AC,AD,NF,NC,ND* | C=Centre pivot, F=Flood & D=Drip irrigation systems |
| DST_***WF***(S,IS,DS) | Drainage status transfer on waterlogged soils (W) that are flood irrigated (F). |
| *WC,WD,LF,LC,LD,AF* | W=Waterlogged, L=Limited, A=Artificial & N=Natural drainage |
| *AC,AD,NF,NC,ND* | C=Centre pivot, F=Flood & D=Drip irrigation systems |
| IST_***WF***(S,IS,DS) | Irrigation system transfer on waterlogged soils (W) that are flood irrigated (F). |
| *WC,WD,LF,LC,LD,AF* | W=Waterlogged, L=Limited, A=Artificial & N=Natural drainage |
| *AC,AD,NF,NC,ND* | C=Centre pivot, F=Flood & D=Drip irrigation systems |

An advantage of using GAMS above most other LP packages is that the right-hand side (RHS) of the constraint equation does not have to be a single value; it can be a mathematical formula. This makes formulating and reading the formula easier, eliminating errors made when transferring the formula body to the left-hand side of the equation. GAMS automatically does this and the formula transformation can be viewed in the .LST file generated when a GAMS problem is run.

***4.10.2.1 Land constraints***

$$LAND\_BAL \qquad \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \qquad \leq IA \,.\, 2 \qquad (4.23)$$

The land balance equation (*LAND_BAL*) is to ensure that the sum of hectares of all the crops calculated for inclusion in the optimal solution does not exceed the irrigated area (IA) multiplied by two. The irrigated area is multiplied by two because there are generally two crops grown per season (i.e. double cropping). This equation becomes redundant with the inclusion of the crop rotation equation ($ROTATION_i$), but is useful as the shadow price of *LAND_BAL* indicates the shadow value of irrigable land.

$$SIDBalWF_{s,fti,wlds} \quad \sum_{c,lf} X_{c,s,wlds,fti,lf} + W2L_{s,fti} + W2A_{s,fti} + F2C_{s,wlds} + F2D_{s,wlds} - C2F_{s,wlds} - D2F_{s,wlds} \leq SOIL\_DATA_{s,fti,wlds} \quad (4.24)$$

Equation 4.24 represents the first of the range of soil, irrigation and drainage status balance equations ($SIDBal\_\_$). The equation is repeated for $WC, WD, LF, LC, LD, AF, AC, AD, NF, NC$ and $NF$ in the place of $WF$. The first letters in these terms; $W, L, A$ and $N$ represent the soil drainage statuses; Waterlogged, Limited drainage, Artificially drained and Naturally drained respectively. The second letters in these terms; $F, C$ and $D$ represent the irrigation system type, namely; Flood, Centre pivot, and Drip respectively. This lettering also applicable to Equations 4.25 and 4.26.

$$DST\_WF_{s,fti,wlds} \quad \sum_{c,lf} X_{c,s,wlds,fti,lf} + W2L_{s,fti} + W2A_{s,fti} + F2C_{s,wlds} + F2D_{s,wlds} - C2F_{s,wlds} - D2F_{s,wlds} \leq SOIL\_DATA_{s,fti,wlds} \quad (4.25)$$

Equation 4.25 represents the first of the range of soil drainage status transfer equations. Equation 4.25 is specifically for transferring the soils drainage status from waterlogged to limited drainage on flood-irrigated fields.

$$IST\_WF_{s,fti,wlds} \quad \sum_{c,lf} X_{c,s,wlds,fti,lf} + W2L_{s,fti} + W2A_{s,fti} + F2C_{s,wlds} + F2D_{s,wlds} - C2F_{s,wlds} - D2F_{s,wlds} \leq SOIL\_DATA_{s,fti,wlds} \quad (4.26)$$

Equation 4.26 represents the first of the range of irrigation system transfer equations for all soil drainage status types. Equation 4.26 is the column for adding to and subtracting from the current hectareage on waterlogged soils under flood irrigation, to maintain the correct irrigation system balance on all soil drainage status types.

#### *4.10.2.2 Crop constraints*

$$ROTATION_t \quad \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot LAND_{t,c} \leq IA \quad (4.27)$$

The crop rotation constraint ($ROTATION_t$) makes sure that in any one month ($_t$), the total area in ha planted to all crops does not exceed the total irrigable area ($IA$).

$$PotCons \quad \sum_{pot,s,ds,is,lf} X_{pot,s,ds,is,lf} \leq MAXPOT \cdot \sum_{s,is,ds} SOIL\_DATA_{s,is,ds} - \sum_{s,is,npds} SOIL\_DATA_{s,is,npds} + \sum_{s,is} L2A_{s,is} + W2A_{s,is} + \sum_{s,ds} F2C_{s,ds} + F2D_{s,ds} - \sum_{s,ds} C2F_{s,ds} - D2F_{s,ds} \quad (4.28)$$

$$PotDS \qquad \sum_{pot,s,npds,is,lf} X_{pot,s,npds,is,lf} = 0 \qquad (4.29)$$

$$PotIS \qquad \sum_{pot,s,ds,fti,lf} X_{pot,s,ds,fti,lf} = 0 \qquad (4.30)$$

Equations 4.28 to 4.30 are to limit the total hectares planted to potatoes ($\sum_{pot,s,ds,fti,lf} X_{pot,s,ds,fti,lf}$) on soils suitable for growing potatoes to the adjustable percentage fraction $MAXPOT$. Equation 4.29, the soil drainage status constraint for potatoes ($PotDS$) prohibits potatoes from being planted on soils with a drainage status not suitable for potatoes ($_{npds}$) and Equation 4.30 prevents potatoes from being planted under flood irrigation.

$$WhtMax \qquad \sum_{wht,s,ds,is,lf} X_{wht,s,ds,is,lf} \leq IR \qquad (4.31)$$

Equation 4.31 is a constraint on wheat – it limits the number of hectares allocated for wheat production in the optimal solution to the area of irrigable land available ($IR$).

$$GnSand_{gn} \qquad \sum_{notlms,ds,is,lf} X_{gn,notlms,ds,is,lf} \leq 0 \qquad (4.32)$$

$$GnDS_{gn} \qquad \sum_{s,npds,is,lf} X_{gn,s,npds,is,lf} \leq 0 \qquad (4.33)$$

$$GnMax_{gn} \qquad \sum_{s,ds,is,lf} X_{gn,s,ds,is,lf} \leq IR \,.\, MAXGN \qquad (4.34)$$

Equations 4.32 to 4.34 are used to limit the area planted to Groundnuts ($GnMax_{gn}$) and to prevent groundnuts from being planted on unsuitable soils ($GnSand_{gn}$) i.e. soils that are not loamy sand soils ($_{notlms}$) and from planting groundnuts on soils with insufficient drainage ($_{npds}$) i.e. either soils that are waterlogged or that have limited drainage.

$$MinLuc\_WF_{s,fti,wlds} \qquad \sum_{luc,lf} X_{luc,s,wlds,fti,lf} + W2L_{s,fti} + W2A_{s,fti} + F2C_{s,wlds} + F2D_{s,wlds} - C2F_{s,wlds} - D2F_{s,wlds} \geq SOIL\_DATA_{s,fti,wlds} \,.\, LUCMIN_{s,fti,wlds} \qquad (4.35)$$

Equation 4.35 was not included in the SALMOD model run of which the results are discussed in this document, but the formula is explained in case it needs to be used. Equation $MinLuc\_WF_{s,fti,wlds}$ is the first in a range of equations that put (force) a minimum value on the hectares to be planted to lucerne. The range includes a separate equation for each irrigation system and soil drainage status used. The sum of all hectares planted to lucerne ($_{luc}$) for a specific irrigation system and soil drainage status ($\sum_{luc,lf} X_{luc,s,wlds,fti,lf}$) plus all hectares converted to, and minus all hectares converted from, the specific drainage statuses and irrigation systems, must be greater than the actual amount of that specific soil drainage status under the specific irrigation system ($SOIL\_DATA_{s,fti,wlds}$) multiplied by the minimum area of lucerne to plant factor ($LUCMIN_{s,fti,wlds}$).

$$DRIP\_CONS \qquad \sum_{nodrip,s,ds,dti,lf} X_{nodrip,s,ds,dti,lf} \qquad = 0 \qquad (4.36)$$

The drip irrigation system constraint ***DRIP_CONS*** is used in SALMOD to prevent crops that cannot be grown on a commercial scale under drip irrigation ($_{nodrip}$) from being selected in the model.

***4.10.2.3 Water constraints***

$$PYFineInt_{fpy} \qquad FINES_{fpy} \qquad \leq WFI \,.\, IR \qquad (4.37)$$

$$AYFineInt_{fay} \qquad FINES_{fay} \qquad \leq WFI \,.\, IR \qquad (4.38)$$

Equations 4.37 and 4.38 are not used in GAMS because in GAMS the upper bounds (***UP***) on the fine intervals (***F***) are set using the following coding: ***FINES.UP(F) = WFI . IR*** where ***WFI*** is a scalar for the water fine interval, set at 100 mm/ha per annum and ***IR*** the irrigation rights also in mm/ha per annum allocated to the farmer.

$$MAX\_QUOTA \qquad \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} PID_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \,.\, X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} + \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} AID_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \; X_{c,s,ds,is,lf}$$
$$- \sum_{fpy} FINES_{fpy} - \sum_{fay} FINES_{fay} \qquad \leq IR \,.\, IQ \qquad (4.39)$$

The maximum quota (***MAX_QUOTA***) constraint (equation 4.39) is put into SALMOD to prevent water use (which is the sum of the pre- and after-year irrigation water demand {***PID and AID***} and fines {$FINES_{fpy,fay}$}) from exceeding the irrigation rights (***IR***) in hectares multiplied by the irrigation quota (***IQ***) in mm/ha

$$PY\_QUOTA \qquad \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} PID_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \; X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} - \sum_{fpy} FINES_{fpy} + P2A$$
$$\leq IR \,.\, IQ \,.\, PYWU \qquad (4.40)$$

$$AY\_QUOTA \qquad \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} AID_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \,.\, X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} - \sum_{fay} FINES_{fay} - P2A \leq IR \,.\, IQ \qquad (4.41)$$

Equations 4.40 and 4.41 are seasonal water use controls, where the pre-year water quota constraint (***PY_QUOTA***) limits the sum of the irrigation water demanded in the pre-year (***PID***) for all *c,s,ds,is,lf* combinations multiplied by the decision variable ($X_{c,s,ds,is,lf}$) and the unused water in the pre-year to be transferred to the after-year (***P2A***) to the irrigation rights (***IR***) multiplied by the irrigation quota (***IQ***) multiplied by the pre-year water use fraction (***PYWU***) and the sum of the excess water used in the pre-year ($FINES_{fpy}$). The after-year water quota constraint (***AY_QUOTA***) is calculated similarly, except that it is not multiplied by the after-year water use fraction (***AYWU***) because the (***MAX_QUOTA***) constraint (equation 4.39) will prevent water use in the after-year from exceeding the farmer's total irrigation quota multiplied by the after-year water use fraction (***AYWU***).

$$RFC \qquad \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} PWL_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \,.\, X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} + \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} AWL_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \,.\, X_{c,s,ds,is,lf}$$
$$- VOFSD.OFS - EVAPY.OFS \qquad = NPSD \qquad (4.42)$$

The returnflows counter (***RFC***) is not a constraint, but simply a formula used to calculate the sum of non-point source discharge (***NPSD***) that is not intercepted by the volume of one on-farm storage dam (***VOFSD***) multiplied by the optimal number of on-farm storage dams (***OFS***) to be built and the annual evaporation that takes place off these dams (***EVAPY.OFS***).

$$MRF \qquad \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} PWL_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} + \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} AWL_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} - VOFSD.OFS - EVAPY.OFS \leq MAXRF.IR \qquad (4.43)$$

The maximum returnflows constraint ***(MRF)*** is calculated in the same manner as Equation 4.42 except that it doesn't count the returnflows, but limits the volume returnflows to the maximum returnflows allowed (***MAXRF***) multiplied by the farmers hectares of irrigation rights (***IR***).

$$SDC_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \qquad LFR_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \cdot X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \leq (MLF_{s,ds,is} - NLF_c) \cdot X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \qquad (4.44)$$

The soil drainage constraint (***SDC***) for each possible ***c,s,ds,is,lf*** combination in Equation 4.44 is used in SALMOD to prevent the model from selecting crops for which the leaching fraction requirement (***LFR***) is greater than the maximum leaching fraction allowed (***MLF***) for each soil, drainages status and irrigation system combination ($_{s,ds,is}$) minus the natural leaching fraction (***NLF***) of the crop ($_c$).

In the simulation section of SALMOD parameter $MLF_{s,ds,is}$ is assigned the minimum of the soil's maximum leaching capacity as shown in Table 4.11 and the irrigation system's maximum leaching capacity as inputted in table `IR_EF(C,IS)`. Any crop / water / management option that requires or results in more leaching taking place than the MLF value will be eliminated from consideration in the optimisation section of SALMOD.

#### *4.10.2.4 Financial constraints*

The two financial constraints are limits that are placed on the production capital allowed by the case study farmer and a limit to the total capital the farmer may loan for long-term fixed capital improvements. Production capital includes seasonal input costs and interest, the annualised cost of the management options, water costs, pumping costs and water fines while fixed capital includes the total capital costs of the management options.

$$
\begin{aligned}
PCC \qquad & \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} AMT_c \,.\, X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \\
& + \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} PID_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \,.\, X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \,.\, (WC + PC) \\
& + \sum_{c,s,ds,is,lf} AID_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \,.\, X_{c,s,ds,is,lf} \,.\, (WC + PC) \\
& + \sum_{fay} FINES_{fay} \,.\, (WC + FRAY_{fay} \,.\, WC) + \sum_{fpy} FINES_{fpy} \,.\, FRPY_{fpy} \\
& + \sum_{fay} FINES_{fay} \,.\, PC + \sum_{fpy} FINES_{fpy} \,.\, PC \\
& + \sum_{s,is} W2L_{s,is} \,.\, WSDC_s + \sum_{s,is} L2A_{s,is} \,.\, (ADC_s - WSDC_s) + \sum_{s,is} W2A_{s,is} \,.\, ADC_s \\
& + \sum_{s,ds} (F2C,F2D,C2F,C2D,D2F,D2C)_{s,ds} \,.\, ATC(FC,FD,CF,CD,DF,DC) \\
+ OFS \,.\, AOFSC \qquad & \leq MPC
\end{aligned}
\tag{4.45}
$$

The production capital constraint (*PCC*) limits the

- amount of production capital required per hectare for each crop ($AMT_c$) multiplied by the optimal hectares to be planted ($X_{c,s,ds,is,lf}$) for each *c,s,ds,is,lf* combination
- plus the water (*WC*) and pumping costs (*PC*) of the pre- (*PID*) and after-year (*AID*) irrigation water demanded multiplied by the optimal hectares to be planted ($X_{c,s,ds,is,lf}$) for each *c,s,ds,is,lf* combination
- plus the sum of the after-year water overuse fine volumes ($FINES_{fay}$) multiplied by the fine rate for after-year water overuse ($FRAY_{fay}$) which is a fraction of the water costs (*WC*)
- plus the sum of the pre-year water overuse fine volumes ($FINES_{fpy}$) multiplied by the fixed fine rate for pre-year water overuse ($FRPY_{fpy}$)
- plus the volume of pre- and after-year water overuse fines ($FINES_{fpy}$ & $FINES_{fay}$) multiplied by the pumping costs of this extra water
- plus the annualised costs of the drainage status conversion management options
- plus the annualised transfer costs (*ATC*) of the irrigation systems
- plus the annualised costs of building an on-farm storage dam (*AOFSC*) multiplied by the on-farm storage dam decision variable (*OFS*)

to be smaller than the fixed maximum production capital constraint value (*MPC*).

$$
\begin{aligned}
FCLC \qquad & \sum_{s,is} W2L_{s,is} \,.\, (ADTC_s \,.\, WLSDF) \\
& + \sum_{s,is} L2A_{s,is} \,.\, (ADTC_s - (ADTC_s \,.\, WLSDF)) + \sum_{s,is} W2A_{s,is} \,.\, ADTC_s) \\
& + \sum_{s,ds} (F2C,F2D,C2F,C2D,D2F,D2C)_{s,ds} \,.\, ISTC_{is,tsc} \\
+ OFS \,.\, COFSD \qquad & \leq MCL
\end{aligned}
\tag{4.46}
$$

The fixed capital loan constraint (*FCLC*) limits the maximum amount of fixed capital that can be loaned using a long-term loan, to be smaller than *MCL*. That is:

- the sum of hectares to be converted from waterlogged to limited drainage soils (***W2L***) for each soil type and irrigation system combination ($_{s,ib}$) multiplied by the full artificial drainage transfer costs (***ADTC***) for the different soil types ($_{s}$) and the waterlogged soils drainage factor (***WLSDF***),
- plus the sum of hectares to be converted from limited drainage soils to artificially drained soils (***L2A***) for each soil type and irrigation system combination ($_{s,ib}$) multiplied by the full artificial drainage transfer costs (***ADTC***) for the different soil types ($_{s}$) minus the full artificial drainage transfer costs (***ADTC***) multiplied by the waterlogged soils drainage factor (***WLSDF***),
- plus the sum of hectares to be converted from waterlogged to artificially drained soils (***W2A***) for each soil type and irrigation system combination ($_{s,ib}$) multiplied by the full artificial drainage transfer costs (***ADTC***) for the different soil types ($_{s}$).
- plus the sum of hectares of irrigation system combinations that need to be transferred (***F2C,F2D,C2F,C2D,D2F or D2C***) for each soil and drainage status combination ($_{s,db}$) multiplied by the irrigation system transfer costs (***ISTC***) for each irrigation system ($_{ia}$) combination.
- plus the costs of building an on-farm storage dam (***COFSD***) multiplied by the on-farm storage dam decision variable (***OFS***).
- Must be smaller than or equal to ***MCL***.

## 4.11. A DESCRIPTION OF SALMOD OUTPUT FILES

GAMS/Minos 5.6 by Murtagh, *et al, (*1996) was used as the GAMS linear programming (LP) optimisation solver to generate the results discussed in this section. SALMOD was also run using the GAMS/BDMLP 1.1 solver by Brooke *et al, (*1994) to see if the model was stable when using other solvers and virtually the same results were generated, proving SALMOD stable using at least these two solvers.

Each SALMOD run generates three output files; the automatic GAMS listing (.LST extension) file that contains all the results of the model run and two separate pre-programmed files that extract the information required from the bulky listing file. These consist of a farm level and a water quality scenario (/parametric) file. Examples of these two files generated by SALMOD are depicted in Text Boxes 4.1 to 4.3.

### 4.11.1. OUTPUT TABLES

The results of the calculations performed in SALMOD to get the data in the right format for linear programming optimisation, appear as output tables in the GAMS listing ( .LST) files, created whenever SALMOD is run.

### 4.11.2. OUTPUT FILE EXPLANATION

Text Boxes 4.1 to 4.3 below contain the output files as generated by SALMOD of a model run for case study farm 1 (Olierivier), with returnflows constrained to 100 millimetres per hectare of irrigation rights and all possible management options activated except the minimum area to lucerne option. The results displayed in these text boxes are only examples to illustrate the condensed SALMOD output files generated by the programmer. This run

was set up to use the parametric water quality range of the OVIB 1998 ECiw values. Text Boxes 4.1 and 4.2 come from the same output file.

The acronym Smflf.prn stands for SALMOD (Sm) farm level output (f) using the leaching fraction methodology (lf) and is saved as a .prn file which is a type of text file. When the 'no management options' (nmo) version of SALMOD is run, Text Box 4.2 is excluded, as it displays the results of incorporating the fixed capital management options.

Text Box 4.3 is derived from the output file Smplf.prn, where the 'p' indicates a parametric run. The farm level output uses the last column of ECiw values in the scenario range, and is thus the result of the last linear programming (LP) optimisation run in the parametric section of the model. As can be seen in Text Box 4.3, the column on the far right of the table displays the results of the EC98 scenario, where actual 1998 monthly ECiw values are used. The model is set up in this way so that the farm level results show in detail what the case study farm is and could be doing to optimise TGMASC under current (1998) water quality conditions. The parametric model run then shows, in a summarised version, the impact of improving and deteriorating water qualities on TGMASC, crop composition and the shadow price of water overuse fines.

The bracketed sections A, B and C in Text Box 4.1 indicate the basic model variables that distinguish one case study farmer from another. In Section A the ratio of irrigation rights (141 ha) to irrigable area (200 ha) is important to determine whether irrigable land or irrigation water quota will become constraining. If irrigable area exceeds irrigation rights then water is generally constraining. The question is whether it is feasible to use extra water at the stepped fine structure rate, and how much? As the fine is linked to the standard price of the water (R0.17 /mm/ha per annum) and the pumping costs of the water (R0.56 /mm/ha per annum), these are also shown under section A in the output.

Section B shows the monthly average irrigation water quality (ECiw) measured in milli-Siemens per metre (mS/m) of the scenario for which the results are set up.

Section C list the division of the irrigable area (200 ha) according to soil type (loamy sand (LMS) 190 ha, sandy loam (SNL) 10 ha and sandy clay (SNC) and clay (CLY) both zero ha, irrigation system (flood (FIS) 35 ha, centre pivot (CPI) 165 ha and drip (DIS) zero ha and soil drainage status classification (naturally drained (NDS) 100 ha, artificially drained (ADS) 20 ha, limited drainage (LDS) 70 ha and waterlogged soils 10 ha).

Sections D, E and F in Text Box 4.1 display the actual model results. To the left of the bracket marked D is the per hectare gross margin (R) above specified costs (GMASC) of each of the crops resource combination to be incorporated into the optimal solution. The soil type (Soil), soil drainage status (Class), irrigation system (Irrig), leaching fraction required (LF) expected yield factor (Yield) and hectares to plant of the specific resource combination (HECTARES) are also given for each crop resource combination. By way of illustration, the first 2 crop resource combinations under section D in Text Box 4.1 will be explained:

- 40 ha of wheat, planted on loamy-sand soils (LMS) that have a limited drainage status (LDS) under a centre pivot irrigation system (CPI) and leached at 5% (LF5) will yield 100% of the expected maximum yield and give a GMASC of R2 890.00 per hectare for the specific water quality scenario modelled.

- 23,8 ha of maize, planted on loamy-sand soils (LMS) that have a limited drainage status (LDS) under a flood irrigation system (FIS) and leached at 15% (LF15) will yield 97% of the expected maximum yield and give a GMASC of R3 315.00 per hectare for the specific water quality scenario modelled.

To the right of the bracket marked D is the total pre-year (PYwater) and after-year (AYwater) irrigation water requirement in mm/ha (divide by 10 for $m^3$) for the total hectares to plant to each crop resource combination. At the bottom of section D, in the row starting with "Total water used (mm):" is firstly the sum of all water used (225 600 mm) then the sum of the total pre-year water requirements (95 756 mm) and lastly the sum of the total after-year water requirements (129 844 mm). In the next row, "Unused trans. from Pre- to After-year:" is the volume of unused water rights from the pre-year that can be transferred to be used in the after-year (11 404 mm) at normal rates.

In Section E the total water costs and the total water overuse fines and their duals are calculated. For example in Text Box 4.1 the total water costs to be paid to the OVIB is R38 352 plus R35 673 for using extra water and the total electricity costs to pump that water is R126 336. The interpretation of the dual value (shadow price) is given in the following chapter where the results are discussed.

The farm level TGMASC (FARM PROFIT) is shown in Section F. It is the difference between the estimated optimal net revenue and the pre-determined fixed costs. The production and fixed capital loan limit, requirement and dual are also given in the farm level results. For this example, neither production nor fixed capital requirements are constraining and therefore the dual values are zero.

The encircled area G in Text Box 4.2 shows that the only management option found feasible in the model run is the installation of artificial drainage to convert 10 ha of waterlogged sandy-loam soils, 5 of which are flood irrigated and 5 ha under centre pivot, to fully artificially drained soils (WL-AD option).

Since there are no values in the irrigation system transfer options, the model run shows that at 30% deterioration in water quality the current irrigation systems suffice or else it is not financially feasible to replace them.

The last line in Text Box 4.2 shows whether it is feasible to build an on-farm storage dam under current water quality conditions and with return-flow limiting restrictions in place. The value in the text box indicates that when using the leaching fraction methodology no dams need to be built to manage irrigation returnflows.

**Text Box 4.1 An example of a SALMOD farm level output report file (Management options follow in Text Box 4.2)**

```
SALMOD (FARM LEVEL & PARAMETRIC)      Date run: 20.10.01 Time: 15:16:10

SALMOD DRAFT Results (Leaching Fraction Methodology)
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Agricultural Econ.UFS for the WRC

GENERAL INPUT DATA   Olierivier   (1)                                    } A
Irrigable area   (ha)      200.00                                        }
Irrigation rights(ha)      141.00                                        }
Water cost      (R/mm)       0.17                                        }
Pumping costs   (R/mm)       0.56                                        }

Electrical Conductivity of the irrigation water - ECiw (mS/m)           } B
  JAN   FEB   MAR   APR   MAY   JUN   JUL   AUG   SEP   OCT   NOV   DEC }
   96    91    72    54   102   109    97    99   119   130   113    97 }

SOIL TYPE  : LMS  190.0  SNL   10.0  SNC    0.0  CLY    0.0              } C
IRRIG.SYST.: FIS   35.0  CPI  165.0  DIS    0.0                         }
DRAIN.CLASS: NDS  100.0  ADS   20.0  LDS   70.0  WLS   10.0              }

MODEL RESULTS
Optimal crop composition:                                               } D
Crop      Soil Class Irrig LF     Yield HECTARES     GMASC  PYWater  AYWater
WHEAT     LMS  LDS   CPI   LF5    1.00     40.0      2890    27789        0
MAIZE     LMS  LDS   FIS   LF15   0.97     23.8      3315        0    19569
POTATO    LMS  NDS   CPI   LF5    1.00      1.5     14545        0      916
POTATO    SNL  ADS   CPI   LF5    1.00      5.0     14545        0     3053
LUCERNE   LMS  NDS   CPI   LF5    1.00     98.5      5661    51355    80324
LUCERNE   LMS  ADS   CPI   LF5    1.00     20.0      5661    10427    16309
LUCERNE   LMS  LDS   FIS   LF10   0.94      6.2      5287     3433     5369
LUCERNE   SNL  ADS   FIS   LF10   1.00      5.0      5661     2752     4304
Total water used                    (mm):                  225600    95756   129844
Unused trans. from Pre- to After-year :                                      11404
Water Usage Cost                     (R):                   38352    16278    22074
Water Pumping Cost                   (R):                  126336    53623    72713
Water overuse fines:     WF1      14100                      3596  DUAL 2.4473 } E
                         WF2      14100                      4794  DUAL 2.3623 }
                         WF3      14100                      5993  DUAL 2.2773 }
                         WF4      14100                      7191  DUAL 2.1923 }
                         WFPY     14100                     14100  DUAL 1.7023 }
   TOTAL WATER OVERUSE           70500  TOTAL FINE          35673
Estimated optimal net revenue (R):                         921032               } F
Pre-determined fixed costs    (R):                         561000               }
FARM PROFIT                   (R):                         360032               }
Production capital requirement(R):   (Max 300000)          266145  (DUAL= 0.0000) }
Fixed capital loan requirement(R):   (Max 600000)          170000  (DUAL= 0.0000) }
```

Soil type: LMS – Loamy Sand, SNL – Sandy loam, SNC – Sandy clay & CLY – Clay
Irrigation System: FIS – Flood irrigation system CPI – Centre pivot irrigation & DIS – Drip irrigation system
Soil drainage status: NDS – Naturally drained soils, ADS – Artificially drained soils, LDS – Limited drainage soils, & WLS – waterlogged soils
Leaching fraction (LF): LF5, LF10, LF15 – Leaching fraction of 5,10 & 15% respectively
Water overuse fines (mm/ha): WF1 to WF4 – stepped after-year(AY) fine & WFPY – flat rate pre-year (PY) fine

**Text Box 4.2 Management option output results for a SALMOD farm level run for the leaching fraction methodology (follows Text Box 4.1)**

```
MANAGEMENT OPTIONS:
Soil Trans.WL-LD    LMS      SNL      SNC      CLY
FIS                 0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
CPI                 0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
DIS                 0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
Soil Trans.WL-AD    LMS      SNL      SNC      CLY
FIS                 0.00     5.00     0.00     0.00
CPI                 0.00     5.00     0.00     0.00
DIS                 0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
Soil Trans.LD-AD    LMS      SNL      SNC      CLY
FIS                 0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
CPI                 0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
DIS                 0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00

Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-C    LMS      SNL      SNC      CLY
NDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
ADS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
LDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
WLS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-D    LMS      SNL      SNC      CLY
NDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
ADS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
LDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
WLS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-D    LMS      SNL      SNC      CLY
NDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
ADS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
LDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
WLS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-F    LMS      SNL      SNC      CLY
NDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
ADS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
LDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
WLS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-C    LMS      SNL      SNC      CLY
NDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
ADS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
LDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
WLS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-F    LMS      SNL      SNC      CLY
NDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
ADS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
LDS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00
WLS                     0.00     0.00     0.00     0.00

Number of On-Farm Storage dams (50x50x3m) required:  0.0
```

G

Soil type: LMS – Loamy Sand, SNL – Sandy Loam, SNC – Sandy Clay & CLY – Clay

Irrigation System: FIS – Flood Irrigation System CPI – Centre Pivot Irrigation & DIS – Drip Irrigation System

Soil drainage status: NDS – Naturally Drained Soils, ADS – Artificially Drained Soils, LDS – Limited Drainage Soils.& WLS – Waterlogged Soils

Irrig.Syst.Trans.: Irrigation system transfer from: F-C – Flood to Centre pivot, F-D – Flood to Drip, C-D – Centre pivot to Drip, C-F Centre pivot to Flood, D-F Drip to Flood & D-C – Drip to Centre pivot

Soil Trans.: Soil drainage status transfer from: WL-LD – Waterlogged to Limited Drainage, WL-AD – Waterlogged to Artificially Drained & LD-AD – Limited Drainage to Artificially Drained.

**Text Box 4.3 Parametric results output file of a SALMOD run with the leaching fraction methodology**

SALMOD DRAFT Results (Leaching Fractions Methodology - PARAMETRIC ANALYSIS)
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

PARAMETRIC MODEL RUN FOR: Olierivier (1)

| | MN3 | MN2 | MN1 | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 | EC98 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total Gross Margin | 944662 | 940281 | 930268 | 859563 | 767948 | 605052 | 921032 |
| Total Water Fine | 35673 | 35673 | 35673 | 35673 | 35673 | 21573 | 35673 |
| Returnflows | 13673 | 14100 | 14100 | 14100 | 14100 | 14100 | 14030 |
| (Shadow prices) | 0.00 | 0.13 | 0.58 | 3.79 | 4.51 | 3.83 | 0.00 |
| OPTIMAL CROP COMPOSITION | | | | | | | |
| WHEAT | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 53.51 | 46.98 | 0.00 | 40.00 |
| MAIZE | 66.27 | 67.28 | 67.28 | 9.99 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 23.76 |
| GRNDNUT | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| POTATO | 6.50 | 6.50 | 6.50 | 6.50 | 6.50 | 6.50 | 6.50 |
| COTTON | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LUCERNE | 127.23 | 126.22 | 126.22 | 130.00 | 138.36 | 152.46 | 129.74 |
| WATER FINE SHADOW VALUES | | | | | | | |
| WFPY | 1.8302 | 1.6475 | 1.6289 | 1.5808 | 1.0689 | -0.0933 | 1.7023 |
| WF1 | 2.5752 | 2.3925 | 2.3739 | 1.5355 | 1.2743 | 0.6517 | 2.4473 |
| WF2 | 2.4902 | 2.3075 | 2.2889 | 1.4505 | 1.1893 | 0.5667 | 2.3623 |
| WF3 | 2.4052 | 2.2225 | 2.2039 | 1.3655 | 1.1043 | 0.4817 | 2.2773 |
| WF4 | 2.3202 | 2.1375 | 2.1189 | 1.2805 | 1.0193 | 0.3967 | 2.1923 |

## 4.12. SUMMARY (SALMOD ASSUMPTIONS AND LIMITATIONS)

In summary, the assumptions of SALMOD are listed together with the page reference where the assumption is listed in context with the relevant programming, followed by further limitations of SALMOD.

**Assumption 1:** Case study farmers are assumed to have sufficient kilowatt-hours available to perform the mechanisation tasks required in the SALMOD optimal cropping combination results. ..... 53

**Assumption 2:** Case study farmers are assumed to have sufficient labour hours available to perform the labour tasks required in the SALMOD optimal cropping combination results. ..... 54

**Assumption 3:** The fixed costs (FC) in Table 4.9 assume all farming income and expenses from all other activities not modelled in SALMOD remain constant. ..... 63

**Assumption 4:** All farmers make use of the production loan facility in full when planting the crop and repay the loan in full one month after harvest. ..... 65

**Assumption 5:** It is assumed that farmers plan for the maximum physiological yield. All crop establishment costs remain static under different water quality scenarios, however harvesting and irrigation costs vary with different water qualities and leaching fractions. ..... 65

**Assumption 6:** It is assumed in SALMOD that all farmers have access to their full allocated water quota as well as an additional four tiers at 100 mm/ha water right possessed in the after-year (FAY) at the block rate tariff and

one tier in the pre-year (FPY) at the fixed tariff, although in reality the extra water is only available on upon request and availability from the OVIB. ..... 69

**Assumption 7:** It is assumed in SALMOD that farmers manage the leaf scorching effect of sprinkler irrigation on sensitive crops sufficiently so as not to affect crop yield. ..... 70

**Assumption 8:** Farmers manage their irrigation scheduling to account for all effective rainfall. ..... 71

Further limitations of SALMOD are that:

- SALMOD is set up to take into account only the 6 main crops in the study area but could easily be expanded to include more crops.
- SALMOD is dynamic only in the sense that annual crops are modelled for two production seasons, namely the irrigation pre-year and after-year, but not dynamic in that perennial crops such as orchards and vines can be incorporated and modelled over a number of years.
- The threshold and gradient values used in SALMOD may be outdated, but are used because other data does not exist.
- A farm level model like SALMOD can never account for the massive in-field variability of salinity distribution, soil types, depths and infiltrability. The SWAGMAN suite of models developed by the CSIRO in Australia overcomes this problem by having different models focussing on different size dimensions.

SALMOD is, however, sufficient for the purpose that it was built for, namely to determine the farm-level financial impact of poor and fluctuating irrigation water quality. The key component of SALMOD, developed by the author, is the derivation of the average crop ECe weighted for rainfall and monthly crop water requirements demonstrated in Paragraph 4.3.5. The monthly crop water requirements take into consideration fluctuating salinity levels, the clay percentage and drainage status of the soil, the irrigation system used (accounting for irrigation inefficiencies) and leaching fraction required for effective salinity control. The average crop ECe is then inputted into Equation 4.2 that uses crop salinity thresholds and gradients as determined by Maas and Hoffmann (1977) to calculate the resulting crop yields. It is based on these yield reductions that SALMOD calculates the farm level financial impact of irrigation water salinity. To reduce these impacts SALMOD uses linear programming to incorporate the annualised costs of both short-term and long-term management options to maximise the total gross margin above specified costs (TGMASC) of the farm. If it is financially feasible for the farmer to implement the long-term management options, this will be taken into consideration in the calculation of the TGMASC; if not, SALMOD generates a shadow price that indicates by how much the price of the management option needs to be reduced for feasible implementation. This provides an indication to policy makers of the magnitude of subsidy requirements.

# CHAPTER 5. SALMOD RESULTS

*"The whole land will be a burning waste of salt and sulphur - nothing planted, nothing sprouting, no vegetation sprouting on it..."*

***Deuteronomy 29:13***

## 5.1. INTRODUCTION

The aim of this chapter is to convey the results generated by SALMOD and to interpret these results pertaining mainly to the farm level economic impacts and possible management options for poor and fluctuating irrigation water salinity.

The results generated by SALMOD provide information on

- the maximum attainable farm level total gross margin above specified costs (TGMASC) under various water quality and management scenarios.
- the optimal combination of leaching fraction and yield reduction management options to implement in order to attain the maximum farm level TGMASC over a production year.
- the identification of the main factors of production constraining attainment of optimal TGMASC.
- what farmers in the OVIB region can indirectly afford to pay for irrigation water of various qualities (salinities) in a free water market system.
- what the impact of various management scenarios and constraints will be on the dual or shadow value of irrigation water.
- how the crop composition in each sub-area is expected to change as water quality changes.
- what the impact of restricting irrigation returnflows would be on the TGMASC of the various case study farms.

For all water quality and parameter change scenario runs, SALMOD is run with and without fixed capital management options (the latter, no management options, is abbreviated to "nmo" in this report) to show the financial impact of the fixed capital management options as compared with the *status quo*.

The management options tested with SALMOD for this report are:

- model implicit management options that determine the optimal combination of yield percentages and leaching fractions to use to maximise the objective function.
- model explicit management options that test the impact on the objective function of constraining the total farm irrigation returnflows allowed, production capital and the leaching ability of centre pivot irrigation systems and "forcing" a minimum area to plant to lucerne.

- Ffxed capital improvement management options that entail the enhancement of the drainage status of irrigated soils, a possible change in the irrigation systems used to irrigate the crops and the option of constructing on-farm storage if irrigation returnflows were to be constrained.

The water quality data set used in this chapter to display the impact of possible water quality changes is a table comprising 10% interval parametric changes from the actual monthly water quality readings taken by OVIB for 1998. As the most interesting results are obtained for the Olierivier case study farm, they are described first and in greater depth, followed more briefly by the Vaallus, Bucklands, Atherton and then the New Bucklands case study farm results. The chapter concludes with a comparison of the economic impact of water quality changes between sub-areas. In the second section of this chapter a second water quality data set is used to display the possible impact of water quality changes predicted for the year 2020 based on a wider range of water qualities of the different river trajectories in the study area as predicted by Du Preez *et al,* (2000).

## 5.2. MANAGEMENT OPTIONS

### 5.2.1. MODEL IMPLICIT (AUTOMATIC) MANAGEMENT OPTIONS

#### *5.2.1.1 Adjusting leaching fractions and expected yield percentage*

The choices of leaching fraction to implement and the related yield reduction to accept as water quality deteriorates, are calculated implicitly in SALMOD. With the objective function of the model being to maximise farm level total gross margin above specified costs (TGMASC), SALMOD automatically calculates the optimal crop enterprise composition at certain leaching fractions and yield percentages subject to various constraints with all other farm level management options assumed optimal.

The calculated yield percentages for a fixed range of leaching fractions are shown in the output results. In Text Box 4.1 for example, the optimal crop composition calculated using the fixed leaching fraction intervals (LF0 to LF25 = leaching fraction of 0% to 25% in 5% intervals) includes *inter alia,* wheat with a 5% leaching fraction yielding 100% of its maximum yield potential, and maize with a 15% leaching fraction yielding 97% of its maximum yield potential under the water quality conditions modelled.

### 5.2.2. MODEL EXPLICIT (USER CONTROLLED) MANAGEMENT OPTIONS

The following management options are not implicitly built into the model, but instead are operator adjustments to the model input data in response to identified constraints to give a sensitivity analysis or test the response to TGMASC of a specific variable.

#### *5.2.2.1 Minimum lucerne area constraint*

A management option to plant a minimum area to lucerne is built into the model. This option was not activated for the model runs on which this report is based as it was found to reflect unrealistic results when compared with what the case study farmers are actually doing. The reason for including this management option in the model was that optimal management capabilities to ensure long-term farming sustainability are assumed in the model. Planting 5 years of lucerne after 7 years of grain cropping to maintain soil productivity is considered a

sustainable practice and would require a minimum of approximately 5% of irrigable area being planted to lucerne each year.

#### *5.2.2.2 Maximum returnflows constraint*

Constraining the maximum volume of returnflows in SALMOD shows what the effects of implementing a policy that limits the total amount of returnflows allowed would be for a case study farm. In SALMOD the maximum returnflows are limited at 100mm/ha irrigation quota per year for the returnflows constrained (Rfc) results.

#### *5.2.2.3 Centre pivot irrigation system maximum leaching ability*

As mention was made in the Du Preez *et al* (2000:155) report of the inability of centre pivot irrigation systems to leach effectively, the effect of increasing the extra delivery capacity of the irrigation system is also investigated. The infiltration ability of the soil is taken into account and with fixed capital management options the impact of installing artificial drainage can be analysed.

#### *5.2.2.4 Production capital constraint*

The availability of production capital plays an important role in optimal enterprise composition, farming practices, and thus farm profit. Production capital was found to be most constraining for some case study farms - freeing the production capital constraint showed a vast improvement in TGMASC, till the water quota became constraining.

#### *5.2.2.5 Changing the tariff of irrigation water*

When changing the tariff of the irrigation water used, SALMOD results show the impact on optimal TGMASC, crop composition, returnflows, water fine shadow values, etc. The effects of this regional level management option are shown in the discussion to follow.

### 5.2.3. FIXED CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT MANAGEMENT OPTIONS

The management options that are discussed in this section refer to capital improvements that are only brought into the optimal SALMOD solution if the resulting increase in TGMASC is greater than their annualised costs[3].

#### *5.2.3.1 Soil drainage status improvement*

SALMOD makes provision for the installation of artificial drainage (AD) to convert waterlogged (WL) soils to fully drained artificially drained soils (WL-AD option). Other soil drainage status improvement options are to only partially convert waterlogged soils to limited drainage (LD) artificially drained soils (WL-LD option), and to convert limited drainage soils to fully drained artificially drained soils by installing additional underground artificial drainage (LD-AD option). For the WL-LD option it is assumed that artificial drainage is installed on only the worst 10% of the waterlogged area, and that this is sufficient to drain the worst of the water away. For the WL-AD option the whole waterlogged area has artificial drainage installed if selected as a management option.

---

[3] The tax deductions and possible subsidies allowed for with these fixed capital improvement options are not accounted for in SALMOD and so the impact on the TGMASC is actually under-estimated.

#### 5.2.3.2 *Change of irrigation system*

SALMOD also tests the feasibility of converting one irrigation system to another. Particularly under poor water quality conditions, where it is more feasible to leach than to accept a lower yield, and where the soils drainage status will not restrict a certain amount of leaching, the existing irrigation system might not have the capacity to over irrigate to leach sufficiently. In this instance it might be feasible to replace the existing irrigation system with a system that has a higher water delivery rate. This problem was identified by Du Preez *et al,* (2000:155) "Leaching of excess salts from the root zone with centre pivot irrigation systems proved to be almost impossible in the study area." SALMOD can identify the threshold water quality at which an irrigation system needs to be replaced to meet the leaching requirements of the crop.

#### 5.2.3.3 *On-farm storage/evaporation dam construction*

This management option is only considered in SALMOD when returnflows are constrained. This would be the result of regional or national policy restricting the amount of returnflows allowed back into rivers from irrigated land to protect the water source, underlying ground water and downstream users from agricultural contaminants and leached minerals. The model does not account only for point source agricultural returnflows, but all excess water applied to the crop. The return flow volume restriction is attached to the farmers' irrigation water quota.

The dimensions of the earthen storage dam were set in the SALMOD runs for this report to be 50 x 50 x 3 metres, which gives a storage capacity of 7 500$m^3$ of water, and amounts to a total cost of R30 000, annualised as R5 977 over a period of 10 years. The option of building a storage dam is not included in the model as an integer option, thus a fraction of a dam can also be calculated. The total construction cost is constrained in SALMOD by a maximum capital costs constraint, while the annualised repayment costs are constrained by the maximum production costs constraint. Income-generating uses of the dam, such as aquaculture, are not accounted for in the calculation of the costs of the dam.

## 5.3. PARAMETRIC RESULTS BASED ON OVIB 1998 $EC_{iw}$ DATA

For each sub-area case study farm, SALMOD is run at actual 1998 monthly ECiw values of the water source metering point closest to the farm to depict the farm-level results (taking Olierivier – OL – as an example) of the *status quo* (OLnmo), with fixed capital management options (OL), returnflows constrained (OLrfc) and *status quo* with returnflows constrained (OLnmoRfc).

The actual 1998 monthly average ECiw value is varied parametrically by 10, 20 and 30% positively (PL1, PL2 and PL3) and negatively (Mn1, Mn2 and Mn3) to show the results of 10% incremental improvements and deteriorations of the irrigation water quality.

When looking at the parametrically varied results of the 10-yr average irrigation water quality at Soutpansdrift, depicted in Figure 5.1, if it is seen that they fall within the 10-year minimum and maximum ECiw range. In October and November, however, the full spectrum of the potential range in ECiw is not completely covered. For this reason, SALMOD results based on predicted ECiw values calculated by Du Preez *et al* (2000) are discussed later in this chapter. These values cover the full spectrum of possible water quality fluctuations in the OVIB region.

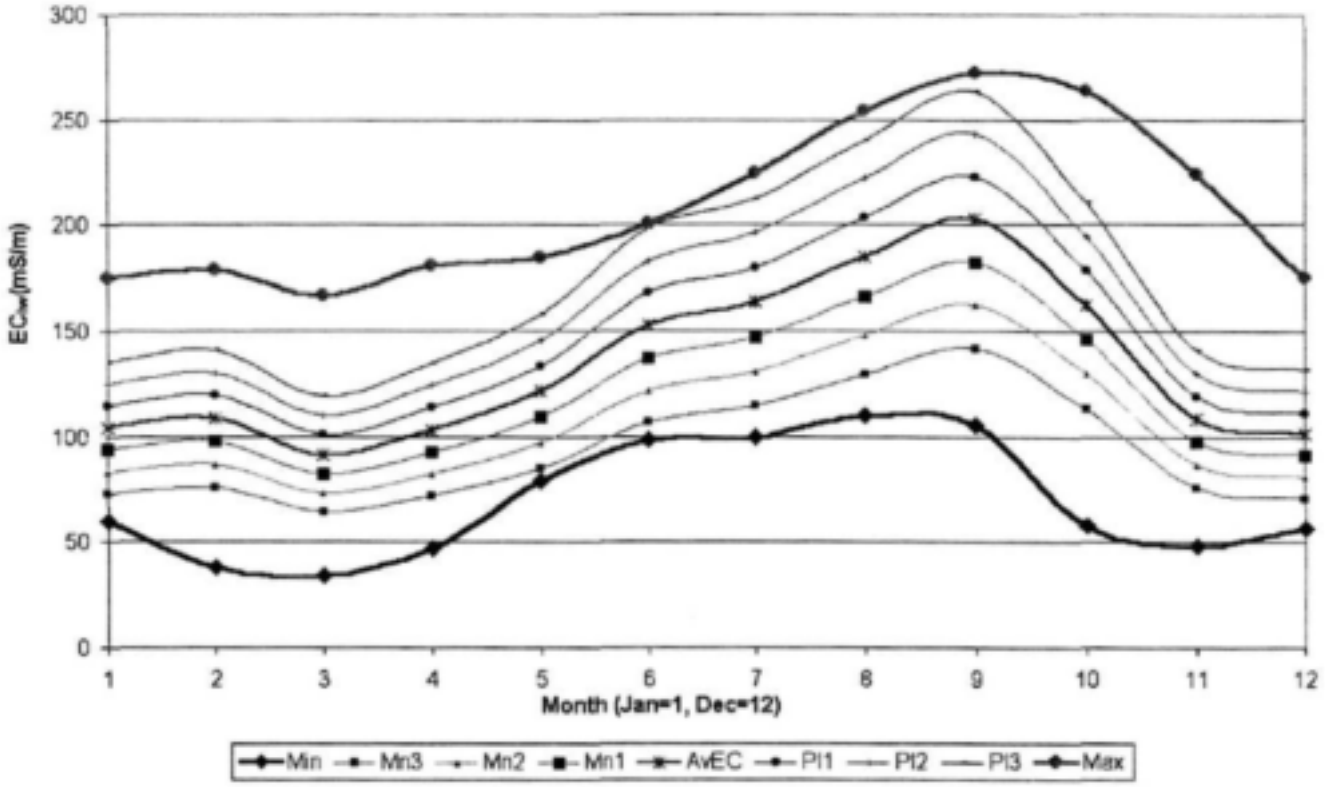



**Figure 5.1 10-yr monthly average ECiw (mS/m) measured by the OVIB at Soutpansdrift varied 10% incrementally between the 10-yr min., and max. ECiw for use in parametric SALMOD model runs.**

Following are the parametric results of each of the OVIB sub-areas, Olierivier explained in full and for the other four sub-areas main findings only are listed.

5.3.1. SUB-AREA 1 RESULTS: OLIERIVIER

**Table 5.1 Olierivier case study farm basic model input data, 2000**

| GENERAL INPUT DATA | |
|---|---|
| Irrigable area (ha) | 200 |
| Irrigation rights(ha) | 141 |
| Water cost (R/mm/ha) | 0.17 |
| Pumping costs (R/mm/ha) | 0.56 |
| Pre-determined fixed costs(R) | 561 000 |

The general input data required in SALMOD to define the Olierivier case study farm are displayed in Table 5.1 to Table 5.3. A more detailed description of each of the case study farmers can be found in Chapter 2. The farm consists of 200 ha of irrigable land of which there is only an irrigation quota for 141 ha. The irrigation water cost with which SALMOD is run, is the 1998 OVIB tariff set for the area, namely R0.17 per millimetre per hectare (mm/ha). However, the pumping cost used is the average pumping cost determined in the pilot survey conducted in the area. These tariffs are fixed in all the scenarios run (for all the other case study farms as well)

but can be changed to reflect the impact of a change in the tariff of irrigation water or the cost of pumping the water. The pre-determined fixed cost for the Olierivier case study farmer is R561 000. To determine annual net farm profit/loss, this value is subtracted from the TGMASC value generated by SALMOD.

**Table 5.2 The division of the Olierivier case study farm irrigable area into soil type, irrigation system used and the drainage status of the soil (ha), 2000**

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| SOIL TYPE : | LMS | 190 | SNL | 10 | SNC | 0 | CLY | 0 |
| IRRIG.SYST.: | FIS | 35 | CPI | 165 | DIS | 0 | | |
| DRAIN.CLASS: | NDS | 100 | ADS | 20 | LDS | 70 | WLS | 10 |

The soil type is a function of the clay percentage of the soil. Of the 200 ha irrigable soil (Table 5.2), the Olierivier case study farmer has 190 ha loamy sand (LMS) and the remaining 10 ha are sandy loam (SNL). 165 ha are under a centre pivot irrigation system (CPI) while the remaining 35 ha are flood irrigated (FIS). 100 ha of the irrigable area have sufficient natural drainage (NDS), 70 ha have limited drainage (LDS), 20 ha are artificially drained (ADS) and the remaining 10 ha are waterlogged (WLS).

**Table 5.3 Olierivier 1998 monthly average ECiw (mS/m) (source: OVIB)**

| JAN | FEB | MAR | APR | MAY | JUN | JUL | AUG | SEP | OCT | NOV | DEC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 96 | 91 | 72 | 54 | 102 | 109 | 97 | 99 | 119 | 130 | 113 | 97 |

The monthly average electrical conductivity of the irrigation water (ECiw), measured in milli-Siemens per meter (mS/m), is depicted in Table 5.3. The annual average of these monthly average ECiw values measured by OVIB through the year in 1998 (OL98) is 98.25 mS/m and is used in Table 5.4 to set up a range of water qualities incrementally varied at positive and negative intervals of 10%. This range of water qualities is later broadened when SALMOD is run for predicted water qualities determined by Du Preez *et al,* (2000:18).

**Table 5.4 The annual average ECiw varied parametrically from the 1998 OVIB reading for Olierivier**

| | Mn3 | Mn2 | Mn1 | **OL98** | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Parametric range | -30% | -20% | -10% | OL98 | +10% | +20% | +30% |
| ***Annual Average ECiw (mS/m)*** | ***68.8*** | ***78.6*** | ***88.4*** | ***98.3*** | ***108.1*** | ***117.9*** | ***127.7*** |

Table 5.5 shows the change in TGMASC, water fine and returnflows over the parametric range of water quality variations. With a 30% deterioration in ECiw from the 1998 average level, TGMASC is reduced by only 6.27%, but unconstrained returnflows increase by 19.25%. An improvement in the ECiw from the 1998 average level, results in a TGMASC improvement of only 3.5%, and a reduction in returnflows by 20.42%. The total water fine remains unchanged as the volume of additional water is fully utilised. The dual values are zero because returnflows are not constrained.

**Table 5.5 Percentage change in TGMASC (R), total fine (R) and returnflows (mm/ha) from the OVIB 1998 ECiw results for a parametric run with no management options, Olierivier case study farm (2000)**

| | MN3 | MN2 | MN1 | **EC98** | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total Gross Margin | 3.50% | 2.50% | 1.17% | **662 706** | -1.13% | -3.59% | -6.27% |
| Total Water Fine | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | **35 673** | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Return Flows | -20.42% | -20.42% | 0.00% | **104.7** | 6.55% | 6.55% | 19.25% |
| Returnflows duals | 0 % | 0 % | 0 % | **0** | 0 % | 0 % | 0 % |

Table 5.6 shows the change in optimal crop composition over ECiw varied parametrically. Area planted to lucerne is slightly reduced as EC deteriorates (MN3 through to PL3) with the area planted to potatoes and maize remaining unchanged. Wheat and groundnuts are left out of the optimal cropping combination over the whole range of ECiw. Using the Olierivier case study farmer's own CEBs, SALMOD is set up to choose only between wheat, maize, groundnuts, potato and lucerne.

**Table 5.6 Optimal crop composition (ha) for a parametric run with no management options using OVIB 1998 ECiw values as basis, Olierivier case study farm (2000)**

| | MN3 | MN2 | MN1 | **EC98** | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| WHEAT | | | | | | | |
| MAIZE | 25.1 | 25.1 | 25.1 | 25.1 | 25.1 | 25.1 | 25.1 |
| GROUNDNUT | | | | | | | |
| POTATO | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 |
| LUCERNE | 151.4 | 151.4 | 149.5 | 149.5 | 148.6 | 148.6 | 146.7 |

In Table 5.7 it can be seen how the productive value of irrigation water decreases as the water quality deteriorates. In all water after-year fine rows (WF1-4) the shadow price decreases from left to right. The pre-year water fine row (WFPY), however, does not reflect this trend as excess water from the pre-year is transferred to the after-year. The EC98 value of 0.59 for the pre-year indicates that if 1 extra mm per hectare of the pre-year irrigation overuse volume were allowed, the farmer's TGMASC could increase by up to 59 cents per hectare. Similarly, if 1 more mm per hectare of the fourth tier of the after-year irrigation overuse volume were allowed, the farmer's TGMASC could increase by up to 1.22 cents.

**Table 5.7 Change in water fine shadow values (R) from the OVIB 1998 ECiw results for a parametric run with no management options, Olierivier case study farm (2000)**

| | MN3 | MN2 | MN1 | **EC98** | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| WFPY | 0.73 | 0.56 | 0.55 | **0.59** | 0.60 | 0.60 | 0.60 |
| WF1 | 1.74 | 1.59 | 1.55 | **1.54** | 1.52 | 1.50 | 1.47 |
| WF2 | 1.62 | 1.47 | 1.43 | **1.44** | 1.42 | 1.40 | 1.37 |
| WF3 | 1.51 | 1.36 | 1.32 | **1.33** | 1.31 | 1.30 | 1.27 |
| WF4 | 1.39 | 1.24 | 1.20 | **1.22** | 1.21 | 1.19 | 1.17 |

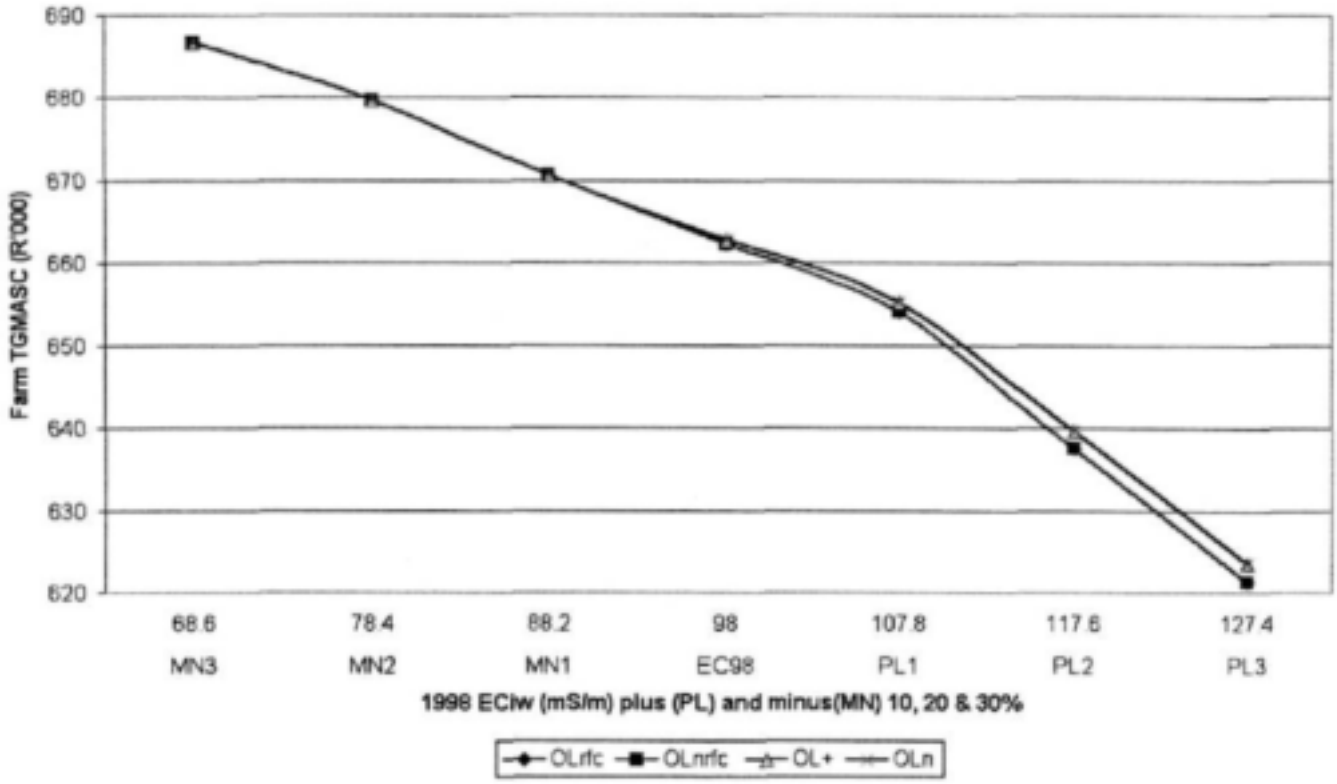



**Figure 5.2 TGMASC for the Olierivier case study farm using OVIB 1998 ECiw readings varied parametrically, with and without returnflows constrained (rfc) and fixed capital management options implemented (n = no management options), 2000**

Figure 5.2 shows the maximum attainable TGMASC for the Olierivier case study farm at the 1998 ECiw varied parametrically for various scenarios. Constraining irrigation returnflows has an effect only if ECiw deteriorates worse than the 1998 level as can be seen by the OL+ and OLn and OLrfc and OLnrfc lines splitting after EC98. Over the 30% plus and minus 1998 ECiw range no fixed capital management options are feasible to be implemented, shown by the OLrfc and OLnrfc line converging together over the whole ECiw range in Figure 5.2.

For a water quality deterioration of 30%, Table 5.8 shows a 6.7% reduction from the attainable TGMASC modelled under 1998 ECiw conditions with and without management options implemented and returnflows constrained (rows OLnrfc and Olrfc and column PL3). A 6.3% reduction in TGMASC is obtained under the same ECiw conditions if returnflows are not constrained, with and without fixed capital management options (rows OL+ and OLn and column PL3). The impact of constraining irrigation returnflows only starts to have an effect once water quality deteriorates to below 1998 ECiw levels. Over the range for ECiw of 68 to 128 mS/m, no fixed capital management options are feasible to implement.

Table 5.9 indicates that the volume of the irrigation quota is constraining. At the current water tariff and stepped water overuse fine structure, all 4 levels of the after-year fine (WF1-4) and the full pre-year fine (WFPY) volumes are fully utilised. This is true for all incremental water quality scenarios that the model was run at for Olierivier. This is partially because more irrigable land is available (200 ha) than water rights (141 ha) to irrigate all the land.

**Table 5.8 TGMASC (R/farm) for parametrically changed ECiw 1998 values for the Olierivier case study farmer, 2000**

| | *MN3* | *MN2* | *MN1* | *EC98* | *PL1* | *PL2* | *PL3* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Ave.Annual ECiw (mS/m)* | ***68.6*** | ***78.4*** | ***88.2*** | ***98*** | ***107.8*** | ***117.6*** | ***127.4*** |
| OLn | 3.5% | 2.5% | 1.2% | **662706** | -1.1% | -3.6% | -6.3% |
| OL+ | 3.5% | 2.5% | 1.2% | 0.0% | -1.1% | -3.6% | -6.3% |
| OLnrfc | 3.5% | 2.5% | 1.2% | -0.1% | -1.3% | -3.9% | -6.7% |
| OLrfc | 3.5% | 2.5% | 1.2% | -0.1% | -1.3% | -3.9% | -6.7% |

**Table 5.9 Water overuse volumes, fines (Cost) and shadow price (Dual) results for the Olierivier case study farm using 1998 OVIB ECiw data, 2000**

| Stepped tariff | Volume (mm) | Cost (R) | Dual (R) |
|---|---|---|---|
| WF1 | 14100 | 3596 | 1.54 |
| WF2 | 14100 | 4794 | 1.44 |
| WF3 | 14100 | 5993 | 1.33 |
| WF4 | 14100 | 7191 | 1.22 |
| WFPY | 14100 | 14100 | 0.59 |

The dual of the first after-year fine tier (R1.54) indicates that for every 1 extra millimetre per hectare of water rights available at that specific charge rate (R0.17 + R0.17 x 50% / mm/ha) an extra R1.54 could be added to the TGMASC. This indicates that for every 26.5 cents that the farmer currently pays for the 1st tier of water overuse, he makes 154 cents gross, and could thus indirectly afford to pay up to 154 cents per millimetre per hectare for that water. However, as water quality changes (see Table 5.4), the dual prices for irrigation water change quite markedly.

#### *5.3.1.1 The impact of changing the tariff of irrigation water for Olierivier*

Table 5.10 shows the change in the water fine rates as the water tariff (WC) is increased from R0.17 /mm/ha to R0.68 /mm/ha. SALMOD was run over this range of consecutive tariff increases to show the impact of water tariffs on the sub-area case study farmer's TGMASC. The results in Table 5.10 are derived by changing only the water tariff (WC). This results in only the after-year (December to June) fine rates (WF1-WF4) being adjusted accordingly, as they are derived from the water tariff. The fixed pre-year (July to November) water fine rate (WFPY) was kept constant at R1 /mm/ha for all water tariffs.

**Table 5.10 The water fine tariff structure for the OVIB in response to increases in the tariff of water (WC)**

| | | *Water tariff (R/mm/ha)* | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Water tariff | | *0.17* | *0.1785* | *0.187* | *0.2125* | *0.255* | *0.34* | *0.51* | *0.68* |
| % change | | ***0%*** | ***5%*** | ***10%*** | ***25%*** | ***50%*** | ***100%*** | ***200%*** | ***300%*** |
| ***WFPY*** | ***fixed*** | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| ***WF1*** | ***150%*** | 0.255 | 0.268 | 0.281 | 0.319 | 0.383 | 0.510 | 0.765 | 1.020 |
| ***WF2*** | ***200%*** | 0.340 | 0.357 | 0.374 | 0.425 | 0.510 | 0.680 | 1.020 | 1.360 |
| ***WF3*** | ***250%*** | 0.425 | 0.446 | 0.468 | 0.531 | 0.638 | 0.850 | 1.275 | 1.700 |
| ***WF4*** | ***300%*** | 0.510 | 0.536 | 0.561 | 0.638 | 0.765 | 1.020 | 1.530 | 2.040 |

Table 5.11 shows the impact of increasing the tariff of irrigation water on TGMASC, water fine costs, returnflows, the optimal crop composition and the shadow prices of the water fines as the water tariff is increased from R0.17 /mm/ha to R0.68 /mm/ha. In Table 5.11 we see that the full volume of pre-year extra water allowed, subject to the pre-year water fine (WFPY), remains fully utilised as the water tariff is increased (indicated by positive shadow values) because the pre-year water fine is not linked to the water tariff, as are the after-year stepped fines. Negative after-year water fine shadow values show the decrease in fine / water tariff required before that tier of extra water can be used profitably on the farm.

**Table 5.11 The impact of a change in irrigation water tariffs on TGMASC, total excess water use fine, returnflows, crop composition and water fine shadow values for 1998 OVIB ECiw data for the Olierivier case study farm, 2000**

| WATER TARIFF INCREASE | 0% | 5% | 10% | 25% | 50% | 100% | 200% | 300% |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total Gross Margin (R) | ***662706*** | -0.6% | -1.2% | -2.9% | -5.8% | -12.1% | -21.7% | -28.5% |
| Total Water Fine (R) | ***35673*** | 3.0% | 6.0% | 15.1% | 30.2% | 32.9% | 10.1% | -47.9% |
| Return Flows (mm) | ***14757*** | 0.0% | 0.0% | 0.0% | 0.0% | -6.5% | -19.1% | -35.2% |
| **OPTIMAL CROP COMPOSITION (ha)** | | | | | | | | |
| WHEAT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| MAIZE | 25.09 | 23.00 | 20.91 | 14.62 | 4.15 | 0.00 | 1.39 | 22.56 |
| GROUNDNUT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| POTATO | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 |
| COTTON | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| LUCERNE | 149.45 | 150.60 | 151.76 | 155.22 | 160.99 | 156.46 | 142.53 | 114.00 |
| **WATER FINE SHADOW VALUES (R)** | | | | | | | | |
| WFPY | 0.59 | 0.58 | 0.57 | 0.53 | 0.48 | 0.03 | 0.15 | 0.03 |
| WF1 | 1.54 | 1.52 | 1.49 | 1.41 | 1.27 | 0.73 | 0.45 | 0.00 |
| WF2 | 1.44 | 1.40 | 1.37 | 1.27 | 1.11 | 0.48 | 0.13 | -0.40 |
| WF3 | 1.33 | 1.29 | 1.25 | 1.13 | 0.94 | 0.24 | -0.20 | -0.90 |
| WF4 | 1.22 | 1.17 | 1.13 | 1.00 | 0.78 | 0.00 | -0.50 | **** |

As the water tariff and the water overuse fine costs are included as production costs in SALMOD, it was observed in the farm-level results (not shown here) that the increasing cost of water causes production capital to become constraining. Increasing the tariff of irrigation water results in less returnflows, but only after a 100% increase in the cost of irrigation water, at which rate it is no longer viable to use all the extra water.

Increasing the tariff of irrigation water is therefore not a sustainable irrigation policy to reduce agricultural returnflows, as it provides a disincentive to leach that will lead to the continued building up of salts in the vadose zone. It is also important to note that this analysis was conducted only for the Olierivier case study farmer as none of the case study farms in the other sub-areas use more than the volume of the extra water of the first tier made available in the model under ECiw scenarios run for this report.

5.3.2. SUB-AREA 2 RESULTS: VAALLUS

**Table 5.12 Vaallus case study farm basic model input data, 2000**

| GENERAL INPUT DATA | |
|---|---|
| Irrigable area (ha) | 461 |
| Irrigation rights (ha) | 339 |
| Water cost (R/mm/ha) | 0.17 |
| Pumping costs (R/mm/ha) | 0.56 |
| Pre-determined fixed costs(R) | 2 475 015 |

The general input data required in SALMOD to define the Vaallus case study farm is displayed in Table 5.12 to Table 5.14. The farm consists of 461 ha of irrigable land of which there is only an irrigation quota for 339 ha. The pre-determined fixed cost for the Vaallus case study farmer is R2 475 015.

**Table 5.13 The division of the Vaallus case study farm irrigable area into soil type, irrigation system used and the drainage status of the soil (ha), 2000**

| SOIL TYPE: | LMS | 0 | SNL | 111 | SNC | 320 | CLY | 30 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| IRRIG.SYST. | FIS | 30 | CPI | 370 | DIS | 61 | | |
| DRAIN.CLASS: | NDS | 311 | ADS | 120 | LDS | 30 | WLS | 0 |

Of the 461 ha irrigable soil (Table 4.12), the Vaallus case study farmer has 111 ha sandy loam (SNL), 320 ha sandy clay (SNC) and the remaining 30 ha are clayey (CLY). 30 ha of vines are drip irrigated[4], 370 ha are under centre pivot irrigation system (CPI) while the remaining 30 ha are flood irrigated (FIS). 311 ha of the irrigable area have sufficient natural drainage (NDS), 30 ha have limited drainage (LDS), 120 ha are artificially drained (ADS) and no land is waterlogged (WLS). These values are shown in Table 5.13.

**Table 5.14 Vaallus 1998 monthly average ECiw (mS/m) (source: OVIB)**

| JAN | FEB | MAR | APR | MAY | JUN | JUL | AUG | SEP | OCT | NOV | DEC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 45 | 56 | 64 | 40 | 65 | 63 | 59 | 62 | 74 | 84 | 87 | 45 |

The monthly average electrical conductivity of the irrigation water (ECiw), measured in milli-Siemens per meter (mS/m), is depicted in Table 5.14. The annual average of these monthly average ECiw values measured by OVIB through the year in 1998 (VL98) is 62 mS/m and is used in Table 5.15 to set up a range of water qualities incrementally varied at positive and negative intervals of 10%. Note that these Vaallus irrigation water quality values are much lower than those for Olierivier (Table 5.3), indicating that the 10% increment used for calculating the parametric range, will not be as wide as for Olierivier.

[4] SALMOD doesn't have an option to include vines in the choice of crops, so this area should actually be left out

**Table 5.15 The annual average ECiw varied parametrically from the 1998 OVIB reading for Vaallus, 2000**

| | Mn3 | Mn2 | Mn1 | **VL98** | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Parametric range | -30% | -20% | -10% | VL98 | +10% | +20% | +30% |
| Annual Average ECiw (mS/m) | 43.4 | 49.6 | 55.8 | 62 | 68.2 | 74.4 | 80.6 |

The *status quo* results for the Vaallus case study farm using OVIB 1998 ECiw readings are: a TGMASC of R 2 158 249, and zero shadow values for both the total water fine and returnflows (only 48.6 mm/ha returnflows are generated). Varying EC98 over the parametric range results in no changes in the TGMASC, water fine and returnflows. The dual values are zero because returnflows are not constrained.

There is no change in optimal crop composition over EC98 varied parametrically for the Vaallus case study farm. Maize (35.14 ha) and lucerne (368.75 ha) remain the optimal crops to produce over the parametric range. Using the Vaallus case study farmer CEBs, SALMOD is set up to choose only between wheat, maize, potatoes and cotton.

The results show zero shadow values for all pre-year (WFPY) and after-year (WF1-4) extra water required over and above the allocated irrigation rights. This shows that it is not feasible for this case study farmer to exceed his irrigation water allocation of 11000 $m^3$ per hectare for 399 hectares even though he has additional irrigable land.

The maximum attainable TGMASC for the Vaallus case study farm at the 1998 ECiw varied parametrically in 10% intervals from –30% to +30% for various scenarios does not vary over the range of ECiw from 43 to 81 mS/m.

No management options are feasible for implementation over this range, nor does and constraining returnflows make any difference to the Vaallus case study farm TGMASC.

The impacts of constraining irrigation returnflows only starts to have an effect once water quality deteriorates to levels outside of the parametric range modelled above, but captured in the model runs in the following section based on Du Preez *et al* (2000) predictions. With production capital being a major constraint for the Vaallus farm and the small parametric range of VL ECiw compared with OL ECiw there is no change in VL TGMASC over the whole range of scenarios (see Table 5.8).

No extra irrigation water over and above the irrigation water quota, is needed for the optimal solution. It is not feasible for the Vaallus farmer to use any extra water in the pre-year (WFPY) and in the after-year (WF1-4).

With all 461 ha irrigable area being planted and a water quota of only 339 ha, SALMOD results show that no extra water is required. This indicates that another constraint is limiting the volume of extra water needed. The limiting constraint is identified as the production capital constraint. See Table 5.16 and the accompanying discussion for the notable impact of un-constraining production capital for the Vaallus region. The SALMOD farm level output results (not included in this report) show the dual value resulting from constraining production capital at R500 000 is 3.6431. This means that for every R1 more production capital allowed, TGMASC could be increased by R 3.64.

For the Vaallus case study farmer, the substantial impact of releasing the production capital constraint is shown in Table 5.16. With production capital capacity increased three-fold (PC3), a 55.1% (EC98-VLnPC3) increase in TGMASC was realised from the 1998 ECiw level (EC98) with and without management options (n) and return-flows constraining (c), but production capital remained constraining. At this level the full irrigable area was used, maize was expanded to 400 hectares, potatoes were included in the optimal crop composition at 19 hectares and cotton was reduced form 368 hectares to only 42 hectares. Increasing the production capital constraint four-fold (PC4), production capital was no longer constraining but only a small improvement in TGMASC (EC98 - VLnPC4) resulted. Allowing fixed capital management options to be implemented improved TGMASC by only a further 2.2% (EC98 - VLPC4).

**Table 5.16 The percentage change in TGMASC from the *status quo* when increasing the production capital constraint for 1998 OVIB ECiw data, Vaallus case study farm, 2000**

| | MN3 | MN2 | MN1 | EC98 | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *-30%* | *-20%* | *-10%* | *0%* | *10%* | *20%* | *30%* |
| | *43* | *50* | *56* | *62* | *68* | *74* | *81* |
| VL (n / c / cn) | 0.0% | 0.0% | 0.0% | **2 158 249** | 0.0% | 0.0% | 0.0% |
| VLcnPC3 | 55.3% | 55.3% | 55.2% | 55.1% | 55.0% | 54.9% | 54.7% |
| VLnPC4 (c) | 55.7% | 55.6% | 55.5% | 55.4% | 55.3% | 55.2% | 55.0% |
| VLPC4 (c) | 57.9% | 57.8% | 57.7% | 57.6% | 57.5% | 57.4% | 57.3% |

### 5.3.3. SUB-AREA 3 RESULTS: ATHERTON

The general input data required in SALMOD to define the Atherton case study farm is displayed in Table 5.17 to Table 5.19. The farm consists of 22 ha of irrigable land of which there is an irrigation quota for 28.9 ha. The pre-determined fixed cost for the Atherton case study farmer is R130 000.

**Table 5.17 Atherton case study farm basic model input data, 2000**

| GENERAL INPUT DATA | |
|---|---|
| Irrigable area (ha) | 22 |
| Irrigation rights (ha) | 28.9 |
| Water cost (R/mm/ha) | 0.17 |
| Pumping costs (R/mm/ha) | 0.56 |
| Pre-determined fixed costs(R) | 130 000 |

**Table 5.18 The division of the Atherton case study farm irrigable area into soil type, irrigation system used and the drainage status of the soil (ha), 2000**

| SOIL TYPE: | LMS | 0 | SNL | 0 | SNC | 0 | CLY | 22 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| IRRIG.SYST.: | FIS | 22 | CPI | 0 | DIS | 0 | | |
| DRAIN.CLASS: | NDS | 0 | ADS | 0 | LDS | 22 | WLS | 0 |

All 22 ha of the Atherton farm irrigable land are clayey (CLY), flood irrigated (FIS) and have limited drainage (LDS).

**Table 5.19 Monthly average ECiw (mS/m) Atherton, 1998 (source: OVIB)**

| | JAN | FEB | MAR | APR | MAY | JUN | JUL | AUG | SEP | OCT | NOV | DEC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ECiw | 52 | 52 | 42 | 44 | 68 | 91 | 91 | 86 | 77 | 28 | 53 | 80 |

The monthly average electrical conductivity of the irrigation water (ECiw), measured in milli-Siemens per meter (mS/m), is depicted in Table 5.19. These values are used to set up a range of water qualities incrementally varied at positive and negative intervals of 10%. Note that these Atherton ECiw values are much lower than those for Olierivier (Table 5.3).

**Table 5.20 The annual average ECiw varied parametrically from the 1998 OVIB reading for Atherton**

| | Mn3 | Mn2 | Mn1 | **AT98** | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Parametric range | -30% | -20% | -10% | AT98 | +10% | +20% | +30% |
| Annual Average ECiw (mS/m) | 44.6 | 50.9 | 57.3 | **63.7** | 70.0 | 76.4 | 82.8 |

Table 5.20 lists the parametric ECiw values based on the average ECiw for 1998 for Atherton. The results for Atherton using OVIB 1998 ECiw readings, remain constant over the parametric range giving a TGMASC of R102 786, zero water fine and returnflow shadow values, and a returnflow volume of 849 mm/ha. The dual values are zero because returnflows are not constrained.

The optimal crop composition over ECiw remains unchanged over the parametric range of ECiw, ranging from 44 mS/m to 88 mS/m. 22 ha of wheat remains the optimal crop to plant as water quality deteriorates from MN3 through to PL3. However, wheat monoculture is an unsustainable practice over the long-term. Using the Atherton case study CEBs, SALMOD is set up to choose between maize, wheat and lucerne only.

The Atherton case study farmer possesses 28 ha irrigation allocations, but only irrigates 22 ha and therefore has enough irrigation water for the area irrigated. The shadow values for the maximum water quota are all zero because the water quota is not binding. Negative and meaningless (----) shadow values are a result of no extra irrigation water being required over and above the irrigation water quota allocated. The negative values indicate the reduction in TGMASC as a result of forcing one unit of the specific fine tier. Over the parametric range of ECiw these shadow values remain unchanged at -R0.80, -R0.90 and -R1.00 for the water fine tiers (WF) 1 to 3, and meaningless (----) for the pre-year water fine (WFPY) and water fine tier 4.

Constraining returnflows to 100 mm/ha of irrigation allocation has no effect on the optimal TGMASC results for Atherton.

5.3.4. SUB-AREA 4 RESULTS: BUCKLANDS

**Table 5.21 Bucklands case study farm basic model input data, 2000**

| GENERAL INPUT DATA | |
|---|---|
| Irrigable area (ha) | 50 |
| Irrigation rights (ha) | 58.4 |
| Water cost (R/mm/ha) | 0.17 |
| Pumping costs (R/mm/ha) | 0.56 |
| Pre-determined fixed costs(R) | 38 000 |

The general input data required in SALMOD to define the Bucklands case study farm is displayed in Table 5.21 to Table 5.23. The farm consists of 50 ha of irrigable land for which there is an irrigation quota of 58.4 ha. The pre-determined fixed cost for the Bucklands case study farmer are R38 000.

**Table 5.22 The division of the Bucklands case study farm irrigable area into soil type, irrigation system used and the drainage status of the soil (ha), 2000**

| SOIL TYPE: | LMS | 0 | SNL | 0 | SNC | 0 | CLY | 50 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| IRRIG.SYST. | FIS | 50 | CPI | 0 | DIS | 0 | | |
| DRAIN.CLASS: | NDS | 0 | ADS | 0 | LDS | 50 | WLS | 0 |

All 50 ha of the Bucklands farm irrigable land are clayey (CLY), flood irrigated (FIS) and have limited drainage (LDS).

**Table 5.23 Monthly average ECiw (mS/m) for Bucklands, 1998 (source: OVIB)**

| | JAN | FEB | MAR | APR | MAY | JUN | JUL | AUG | SEP | OCT | NOV | DEC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ECiw | 51 | 50 | 38 | 43 | 65 | 85 | 94 | 86 | 68 | 23 | 47 | 75 |

The monthly average electrical conductivity of the irrigation water (ECiw), measured in milli-Siemens per metre (mS/m), is depicted in Table 5.23 The annual average of these monthly average ECiw values measured by OVIB in 1998 (BL98) is 60.42 mS/m and is used in Table 5.24 to set up a range of water qualities incrementally varied at positive and negative intervals of 10%. Note that these Bucklands values are much lower than those for Olierivier and very similar to the Atherton values.

**Table 5.24 The annual average ECiw varied parametrically from the 1998 OVIB reading for Bucklands**

| | Mn3 | Mn2 | Mn1 | **BL98** | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Parametric range | -30% | -20% | -10% | BL98 | +10% | +20% | +30% |
| Annual Average ECiw (mS/m) | 42.29 | 48.33 | 54.38 | **60.42** | 66.46 | 72.50 | 78.54 |

Table 5.24 to Table 5.27 display the *status quo* results for Bucklands using OVIB 1998 ECiw readings. Table 5.25 shows the percentage change in TGMASC, water fine and returnflows over the parametric range. The dual values are zero because returnflows are not constrained.

**Table 5.25 Percentage change in TGMASC (R), total fine (R) and returnflows (mm) from the OVIB 1998 ECiw results with no management options for the Bucklands case study farm, 2000**

| | MN3 | MN2 | MN1 | **EC98** | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total Gross Margin | 7.01% | 7.01% | 4.18% | **86 905** | -4.56% | -9.55% | -15.04% |
| Total Water Fine | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | **56** | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Returnflows | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | **3 393** | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| Dual | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | **0** | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |

The parametric model runs show that at all levels of ECiw tested, 45.68 hectares of lucerne is grown. Using the Bucklands case study farmer CEBs, SALMOD is set up to grow only lucerne. If, however, GWK Ltd. CEBs are used, lucerne remains the optimal crop till water quality level PL2 is reached, when it is replaced with cotton.

Table 5.26 shows simulated ECe over the parametric range. The farm level results (SMF.prn) show that at EC98 a yield of 97% of the maximum yield for Lucerne is achieved using a 5% leaching fraction (LF5). As the water fine and returnflows shown in Table 5.25 do not change over the parametric range, the salinity threshold and gradient are the only reasons for this decline in TGMASC. Lucerne's salinity threshold lies at 200 mS/m and its gradient is 0.073, explaining the same TGMASC for MN3 and MN2 and then a linear decline in yield after the threshold has been exceeded. This can be seen in Table 5.26 for the leaching fraction of 5% where for MN3 and MN2 the simulated ECe is lower than the threshold.

**Table 5.26 SALMOD simulated ECe (mS/m) values for Lucerne planted on Clayey (CLY), limited drainage soils (LDS), 2001**

| | ***MN3*** | ***MN2*** | ***MN1*** | ***EC98*** | ***PL1*** | ***PL2*** | ***PL3*** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| LF0 | 206 | 236 | 265 | 294 | 323 | 353 | 382 |
| **LF5** | **169** | **193** | **218** | **242** | **266** | **290** | **314** |
| LF10 | 159 | 182 | 204 | 227 | 249 | 272 | 295 |
| LF15 | 136 | 155 | 174 | 193 | 212 | 232 | 251 |

The water overuse fine shadow values in Table 5.27 are the same across all levels of ECiw because there is no change in the optimal crop composition and no fixed capital management options are implemented. Negative values in the pre-year (WFPY) and for water fine tiers 2 to 4 (WF2 to WF4) indicate that it is not feasible to use extra water at the specified tariffs. Only a part of WF1 is used, indicated by the zero shadow value. The maximum quota shadow values do however correspond with the TGMASC to the decline in ECiw and the response of the crop (lucerne) to the specific ECiw.

**Table 5.27 Maximum water allocation and water overuse fine shadow values (R/mm/ha) for OVIB 1998 ECiw results, with no fixed capital management options implemented for the Bucklands case study farm, 2000**

| | MN3 | MN2 | MN1 | EC98 | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Max Quota | 1.03 | 1.03 | 1.02 | 1 | 0.98 | 0.96 | 0.94 |
| WFPY | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 |
| WF1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| WF2 | -0.1 | -0.1 | -0.1 | -0.1 | -0.1 | -0.1 | -0.1 |
| WF3 | -0.2 | -0.2 | -0.2 | -0.2 | -0.2 | -0.2 | -0.2 |
| WF4 | -0.3 | -0.3 | -0.3 | -0.3 | -0.3 | -0.3 | -0.3 |

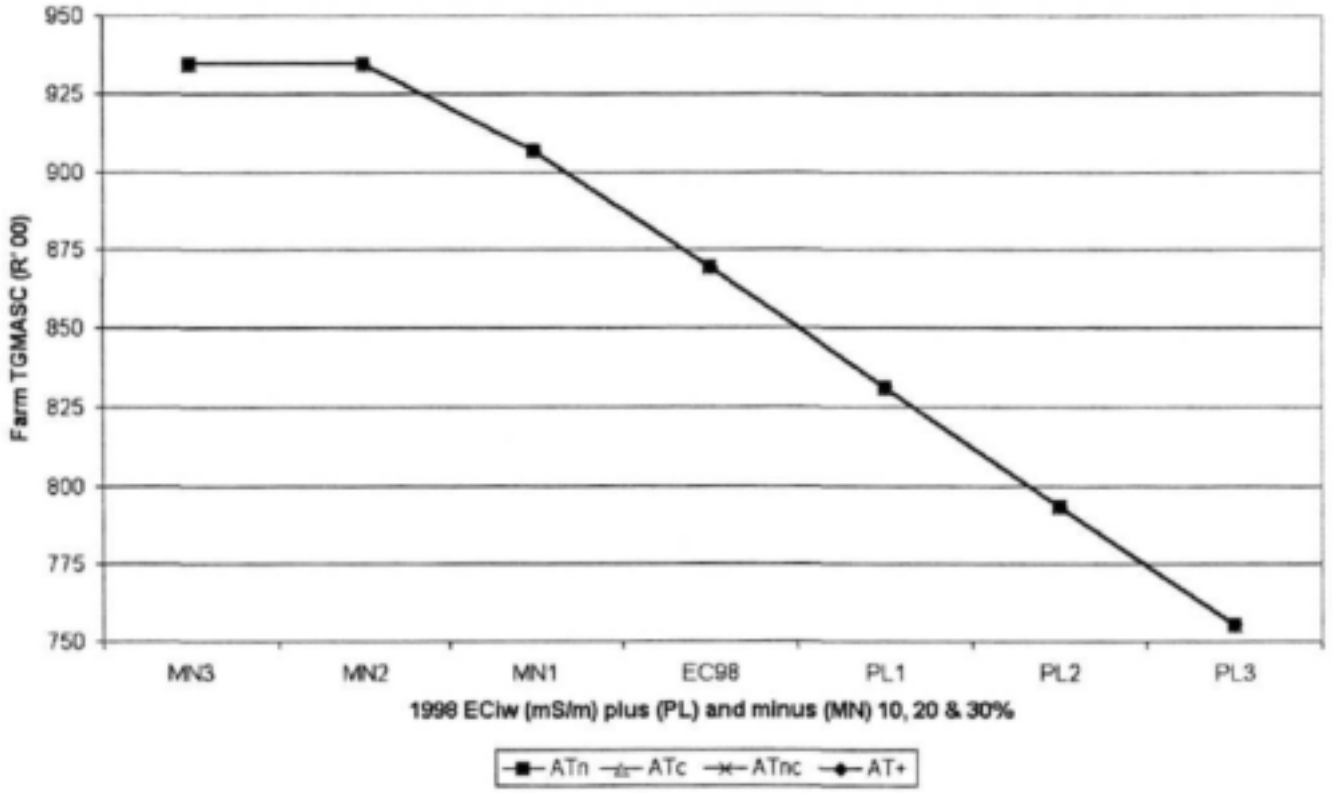



**Figure 5.3 TGMASC for the Bucklands case study farm using OVIB 1998 ECiw readings varied parametrically, with and without fixed capital management options implemented, and with and without returnflows constraining, 2000**

Figure 5.3 shows the TGMASC for the Bucklands case study farm, using farmer CEBs. At all levels of ECiw only lucerne is grown, as lucerne is all the farmer indicated he grows. When using GWK Ltd. CEBs (see Table 5.28), lucerne remained in the optimal crop composition, but wheat was also added. Using GWK Ltd. CEBs and incorporating wheat, resulted in a 62% improvement in TGMASC for EC98 and resulted in a lesser decline as ECiw deteriorated. Constraining returnflows had no effect on the optimal TGMASC.

**Table 5.28 TGMASC (R/farm) for parametrically changed 1998 OVIB ECiw values for the Bucklands case study farm, 2000**

| | MN3 | MN2 | MN1 | EC98 | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| AT+ | 93455 | 93455 | 90692 | 86905 | 83117 | 79330 | 75543 |
| Atn | 93455 | 93455 | 90692 | 86905 | 83117 | 79330 | 75543 |
| Atc | 93455 | 93455 | 90692 | 86905 | 83117 | 79330 | 75543 |
| Atnc | 93455 | 93455 | 90692 | 86905 | 83117 | 79330 | 75543 |
| ATnGWK | 148688 | 148688 | 145362 | 140804 | 136245 | 131686 | 127128 |

AT = Atherton, + = with L-T capital management options, n = no L-T management options, c = returnflows constrained & GWK = using GWK Ltd. crop enterprise budgets.

5.3.5. SUB-AREA 5 RESULTS: NEW BUCKLANDS

**Table 5.29 New-Bucklands case study farm basic model input data, 2000**

| GENERAL INPUT DATA | |
|---|---|
| Irrigable area (ha) | 145 |
| Irrigation rights (ha) | 100 |
| Water cost (R/mm) | 0.17 |
| Pumping costs (R/mm) | 0.56 |
| Pre-determined fixed costs(R) | 1 049 109 |

The general input data required in SALMOD to define the New-Bucklands case study farm is displayed in Table 5.29 to Table 5.31. The farm consists of 145 ha of irrigable land of which there is an irrigation quota of 100 ha. The pre-determined fixed cost for the New-Bucklands case study farmer is R1 049 000.

**Table 5.30 The division of the New-Bucklands case study farm irrigable area into soil type, irrigation system used and the drainage status of the soil (ha), 2000**

| SOIL TYPE: | LMS | 145 | SNL | 0 | SNC | 0 | CLY | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| IRRIG.SYST. | FIS | 30 | CPI | 110 | DIS | 5 | | |
| DRAIN.CLASS: | NDS | 100 | ADS | 10 | LDS | 25 | WLS | 10 |

According to Table 5.30 all 145 ha of the New-Bucklands farm irrigable land consists of loamy sand (LMS), 30 ha are flood irrigated (FIS), 110 ha centre pivot irrigated (CPI) and the remaining 5 ha drip irrigated. 100 ha have sufficient natural drainage, 10 ha are artificially drained, 25 ha have limited drainage (LDS) and the remaining 10 ha are waterlogged.

**Table 5.31 New-Bucklands 1998 monthly average ECiw (mS/m) (source: OVIB)**

| JAN | FEB | MAR | APR | MAY | JUN | JUL | AUG | SEP | OCT | NOV | DEC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 19 | 20 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 19 | 20 | 20 | 20 |

The monthly average electrical conductivity of the irrigation water (ECiw), measured in milli-Siemens per metre (mS/m), is depicted in Table 5.31. The annual average of these monthly average ECiw values measured by OVIB in 1998 (NB98) is 19.58 mS/m and is used in Table 5.32 to set up a range of water qualities incrementally varied at positive and negative intervals of 10%. Note that these New-Bucklands values are much lower than for any of the other sub-areas above as Orange River water of a very good quality is used.

**Table 5.32 The annual average ECiw varied parametrically from the 1998 OVIB reading for New-Bucklands**

| | Mn3 | Mn2 | Mn1 | **EC98** | PL1 | PL2 | PL3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Parametric range | -30% | -20% | -10% | EC98 | +10% | +20% | +30% |
| Annual Average ECiw (mS/m) | 13.71 | 15.67 | 17.63 | **19.58** | 21.54 | 23.50 | 25.46 |

The *status quo* results for New-Bucklands, using OVIB 1998 ECiw readings, are a TGMASC of R 877 463, zero water fine and returnflow shadow values and a returnflow volume of 56.08 mm/ha. These results show a zero percentage change over the parametric range from the EC98 values. The percentage changes are zero because of the good quality water being used and being a low number, the percentage change is also small. The dual values are zero because returnflows are not constrained.

130 ha of maize remain the optimal crop to plant as water quality deteriorates from MN3 through to PL3. SALMOD is set up for New-Bucklands to choose between wheat, maize, groundnuts and lucerne.

As the Orange River water quality used at New-Bucklands is very good over the whole parametric range, the shadow values remain unchanged at -R0.80, -R0.90 and -R1.00 for the water fine tiers (WF) 1 to 3, and meaningless (----) for the pre-year water fine (WFPY) and water fine tier 4, indicating that no extra water is required for the optimal crop composition. These water fine shadow value results are the same as for the Atherton case study farm.

When applying Olierivier water quality to the New Bucklands case study farm to test the impact of poor water quality on a good resource base and CEBs with a high gross margin, maize remained the optimal crop with 130 hectares being planted. Where fixed capital management options are applied it is financially feasible for the New-Bucklands case study farmer to partially convert 10 hectares of waterlogged soils into limited drainage soils. It is also feasible to convert the 5 hectares under drip irrigation into flood irrigation, making a total of 15 extra hectares available for maize production. Using Olierivier ECiw with no fixed capital management options, the water overuse fine shadow values remain unchanged; however, if fixed capital management options are implemented, some water from the 1$^{st}$ tier of overuse is used resulting in a zero shadow value.

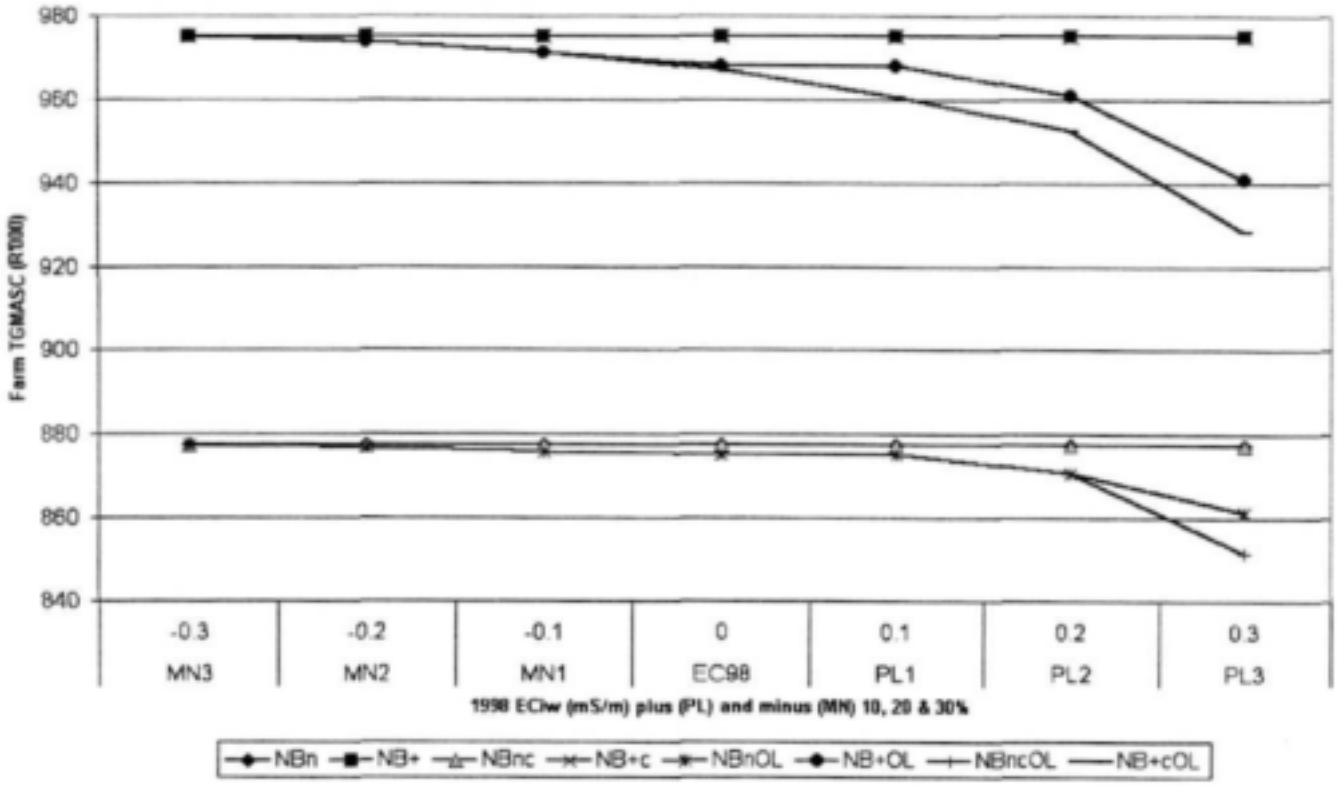



**Figure 5.4 TGMASC for the New-Bucklands case study farm using Orange River and Riet River (OL) OVIB 1998 ECiw readings varied parametrically, with and without fixed capital management options implemented, 2000**

Figure 5.4 shows the maximum attainable TGMASC for the New-Bucklands case study farm, using farmer CEBs, with 1998 ECiw varied parametrically, under both current Orange River (NB..) and possible Riet River (NB..OL) water quality conditions. Using Orange River water quality, constraining returnflows has no effect on the optimal TGMASC results (straight lines NBn & NBnc and NB+ & NB+c). Implementing fixed capital management options, however, (NB+ and NB+c) results in a 10% improvement from the *status quo* (NBn) as can be seen in Table 5.33 (EC98-NB+). The letter c in brackets (c) after NBn and NB+ indicates that the results are the same with and without returnflows constraining.

**Table 5.33 Percentage change in TGMASC (R/farm) using 1998 OVIB Orange River and lower Riet River (OL) ECiw values for the New-Bucklands (NB) case study farm, 2000**

| | *MN3* | *MN2* | *MN1* | ***EC98*** | *PL1* | *PL2* | *PL3* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| NBn (c) | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% | **877463** | 0.00% | 0.00% | 0.00% |
| NB+ (c) | 10.01% | 10.01% | 10.01% | 10.01% | 10.01% | 10.01% | 10.01% |
| NBnOL | 0.00% | -0.08% | -0.16% | -0.26% | -0.27% | -0.78% | -1.88% |
| NB+OL | 10.01% | 9.90% | 9.65% | 9.36% | 9.35% | 8.69% | 6.74% |
| NBncOL | 0.00% | -0.08% | -0.16% | -0.26% | -0.27% | -0.78% | -3.02% |
| NB+cOL | 10.01% | 9.90% | 9.65% | 9.26% | 8.66% | 7.89% | 5.48% |

Applying poorer Lower Riet River (Olierivier case study farm) ECiw to the New-Bucklands case study farm model results in a decrease in TGMASC over the parametric range, with a greater decreasing trend observed where return flows are constraining. The magnitude between where fixed capital management options are implemented and not implemented remains similar.

Even when using as low as 1998 Riet River (Olierivier) water quality (see Table 5.3 and Table 5.4), the same optimal TGMASC is obtained at New-Bucklands under MN3 conditions. Only when the low water quality starts to exceed the MN2 Olierivier ECiw levels, do we start to see a drop in the TGMASC for the New-Bucklands case study farm.

**Table 5.34 Fixed capital management options (Ha soil class and irrigation system transfer) brought into the optimal solution using 1998 OVIB ECiw for the New-Bucklands case study farm, 2000**

| **Soil Trans. WL-LD** | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 10 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | |
| **Irrig.Syst.Trans. D-F** | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
| LDS | 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

The management options determined by SALMOD to realise the optimal TGMASC for the 1998 ECiw scenario are shown in Table 5.34. SALMOD calculates that installing artificial drainage to convert 10 ha of waterlogged sandy-loam soils to limited drainage artificially drained soils (Soil Trans. WL-LD) and converting 5 ha of drip irrigation on the limited drainage soils (LDS) to flood irrigation (Irrig.Syst.Trans. D-F), will bring about a 10% (see Table 5.33) increase in TGMASC after the annualised costs of these options are deducted. The option of converting the area under drip irrigation is, however, not feasible in reality because a permanent crop, olives, is irrigated under the drip irrigation for which provision is not made in SALMOD. The reason for incorporating this land under drip irrigation in the model is to see if drip irrigation is economically/physically suitable for the crops modelled and soil and drainage combinations included. With drip irrigation also being a far more efficient irrigation system, it would replace less efficient irrigation systems, if the value of water savings (at the specific tariff of irrigation water used) exceeded the value of leaching (and thus indirectly "wastage") to flush out excess salts in the soil profile. The results in Table 5.34 confirm that at the current tariff for irrigation water, even under very good water quality conditions, it is better to have an irrigation system that has leaching capacity than a system that saves water. In South Africa where severe water shortages are predicted by 2020, pricing irrigation water incorrectly can convey the wrong signals to irrigators. Unfortunately as water quantity decreases, water quality also deteriorates giving rise to a leaching paradox, i.e. as water quantity decreases due to increased demand for water, water quality deteriorates, necessitating more leaching which in turn exacerbates the water quality problem, and decreases water use efficiency.

With current ECiw conditions for the New-Bucklands case study farm and not implementing any fixed capital management options, it is not feasible for the New-Bucklands farmer to use any extra water as only maize is included in the optimal crop composition. With 145 ha of irrigable land and an irrigation water quota of 100 ha, this is sufficient for only one seasonal crop per year. Yet, planting maize year after year is not a sustainable practice, thus the option of running SALMOD with a minimum lucerne area constraint. Furthermore, the New-Bucklands case study farmer does produce other high value crops such as onions that are not included in

SALMOD as options. The beneficial effects of legumes on follow-up crops in a crop rotation system are also not implicitly included in SALMOD, thus a possible reason for not including groundnuts, a crop that is produced successfully by the farmer.

## 5.4. A SUMMARY OF THE PARAMETRIC RESULTS

What the automatic leaching fraction and yield percentage management option results show are that at current water tariffs, the economic impact of accepting a reduction in yield is greater than the cost of applying extra water to leach accumulated salts from the soil to attain a better yield. At current water tariffs, SALMOD results indicate that the maximum yield is selected with as much leaching as required subject to the drainage status constraint of the specific soil. Where the drainage status of soils is constraining, a reduction in yield is accepted in the optimal solution.

In summary, the main factors affecting the results are the following:

- The maximum returnflows allowed constraint
- The production capital constraint
- The minimum lucerne constraint
- The leaching ability of centre pivot irrigation systems

Results for the New-Bucklands case study farm, where it was feasible to implement certain fixed capital management options because the vast majority of the resource base (soils) are very good, indicated that at the current tariff for irrigation water, even under very good water quality conditions, it is better to have an irrigation system that has leaching capacity than a system that saves water. This is recommended because leaching promotes soil sustainability. Leaching, however, creates downstream externalities in an open system and irrigation water quality degradation in a closed system, if the leachate is not contained and managed.

Using 1998 ECiw levels and up to a 30% reduction in ECiw, it was not feasible in any of the case study farm model runs to construct on-farm storage dams where leaching was constrained. Except for the New-Bucklands case study farm, it was also not feasible to implement any fixed capital management options. The criterion for feasibility of implementing fixed capital management options (installing artificial drainage, changing the irrigation system and building on-farm storage) depends on the quality of the resource base, namely soil drainage status and quality, and the magnitude of the gross margins of the CEBs supplied by the case study farmers. Within the narrow parametric range, irrigation water quality does not influence the decision of implementing fixed capital management options as was shown with the New-Bucklands case study farm results.

It is also clear from the results that where irrigation water quota area allocations exceed the total irrigable area, irrigation water quantity is generally sufficient and the shadow prices of water overuse fines are lower than where the irrigable area far exceeds irrigation water quota area allocations. Furthermore, even with the high electricity costs of pumping irrigation water, SALMOD results for the Olierivier case study farm show that the productive value of the extra water exceeds the stepped fines charged for exceeding water quota allocations.

When conducting the farm level survey, the impression gained was that where the irrigable area far exceeded the irrigation quota, it was a cheaper alternative to move the irrigation system to new land than to remediate old

land. Irrigable land without water rights can be purchased for R7000 per ha (2000) while the cost of installing artificial drainage could exceed R15000 per hectare. The purchase of additional land was, however, not an option included in the model. Yet, this practice is unsustainable and environmentally unfriendly.

The subsidisation of the costs of artificial drainage on farms (implemented in SALMOD by leaving the costs of drainage installation out of the objective function and production capital constraints), results in an increase in the volumes of returnflows when return flow volumes aren't constrained, clearly indicating that this course of action could actually further exacerbate the water quality problem. Subsidising irrigation drainage thus has to be implemented together with return flow constraining/effective management policy.

By implementing policy constraining returnflows, water quality will be improved and prevented from deteriorating further. Under these improved water qualities, the returnflows from the resulting optimal crop composition will be less than the maximum specified in the constraint, making the returnflows constraint unnecessary once farmers are using and managing their on-farm storage dams properly; but this constraint is initially required to get farmers to install drainage and build on-farm storage dams.

The scenario runs also show that when production capital is constraining or limited, the capital will rather be used for production inputs than for implementing long-term capital improvements.

The results clearly indicate that the benefits from leaching more as water quality deteriorates, to obtain a 100% yield, outweigh the costs of leaching, up to the point where returnflows become constraining.

Maize and potatoes have the same sensitivity and gradient and are the most sensitive crops to salinity of the 6 crops modelled in SALMOD. With potatoes being by far the highest value crop included in SALMOD, it is included in OL, VL and NB (AT and BL do not have potatoes as an option in their CEBs) under all water quality situations, taking up the best soils. Maize is also included in most optimal crop enterprise selections. According to pilot survey data, GWK Ltd. statistics and OVIB data wheat is the major crop grown in the study area, yet SALMOD shows that Atherton is the only sub-area case study farm where wheat is the most feasible crop choice. Cotton is included only in the Vaallus sub-area case study farm optimal crop selection, which is realistic.

## 5.5. SALMOD RESULTS FOR FUTURE IRRIGATION WATER SALINITY PREDICTIONS

Besides a general gradual deterioration in irrigation water quality throughout the OVIB area as captured in the preceding parametric analysis, a possible water quality scenario to occur is for water to be diverted from the headlands of the Orange River System into the Vaal River System via the Lesotho Highlands Water Project. This could result in there being less water available to the OVIB region via the Orange River, but this could be supplemented with more water from the Vaal River system. The Bucklands, Atherton and New Bucklands sub-areas, which currently receive predominantly Orange River water via the Louis Bosman Canal, would then receive more Vaal River water with the accompanying decrease in water quality. There could also be less Orange River water entering the lower Riet River via the Sarel Hayward Canal resulting in a more rapid water quality deterioration in the Lower Riet River.

Against this background, the results displayed in this section are based on a second salinity data set for the year 2020 predicted by Du Preez *et al* 2000.

To show the upper and lower extremes of the economic effects of water quality fluctuations/deterioration, the 2020 predictions from the report by Du Preez *et al, (*2000:18) for the lower Harts River segment (H2), middle Orange River segment (O2), Lower Riet River segment (R3) and the Lower Vaal River segment (V4) will be used in the following analysis.

In this analysis the same set of water quality ranges (ECiw) is applied to each sub-area to obtain the parametric results, while for the farm level results the Du Preez *et al* (2000:18) annual long-term average ECiw is applied for each sub-area. For the New Bucklands, Bucklands, Atherton and Vaallus sub-area farm level model runs Lower Vaal River (V4) 2020 predicted ECiw values are used, while for Olierivier Lower Riet River (R3) 2020 predicted ECiw values are used. The full spectrum of predictions are run for each sub-area with Olierivier (O4) following the Olierivier OVIB ECiw monthly pattern (see Figure 5.5) and the other sub-areas following the Vaallus monthly water quality pattern (see Figure 5.8).

As the Du Preez *et al (2000)* report predicts only annual ECiw values, 1998 OVIB monthly EC readings for the lower Riet River (R3) are modified in Figure 5.5 to reflect the annual averages predicted, to be used in the Olierivier SALMOD model runs, and 1998 OVIB monthly EC readings for the lower Vaal River (V4) are modified in Figure 5.8 to reflect the annual averages predicted, to be used in the Bucklands (BL), Atherton (AT), New-Bucklands (NB) and Vaallus (VL) SALMOD model runs.

### 5.5.1. SUB-AREA 1 RESULTS: OLIERIVIER

The monthly ECiw values in Figure 5.5 are the result of adjusting 1998 monthly average Vaallus ECiw readings to equal the annual predicted average ECiw of the various water quality scenarios determined by Du Preez *et al, (*2000). This is done so that the predicted average annual ECiw can be transformed into monthly water quality fluctuations. The values in Figure 5.5 are used in SALMOD to generate the results depicted in Figure 5.6.

What can be seen in either Table 5.35 or graphically in Figure 5.6 is that as ECiw improves (<136mS/m) from the Riet River segment 3 long-term (R3LT) value calculated by Du Preez *et al (*2000:18), the same percentage increase in TGMASC from the *status quo* takes place; whether returnflows are constrained or not and whether fixed capital management options are implemented or not (OL=OLc=OLn=OLnc for O2Pre+, OL98, R3Pre- and R3LT). At the R3LT ECiw level constraining returnflows has a marginal impact on TGMASC. However, as ECiw deteriorates beyond R3Pre+, the negative impact on TGMASC can be lessened only marginally (approximately 4% - difference between OLsn and OLs+) for H2Pre by applying management options when returnflow restrictions are not imposed. With returnflow constraints imposed, fixed capital management options are not feasible to implement at the worst-case scenario salinity levels of the Harts River (H2Pre).

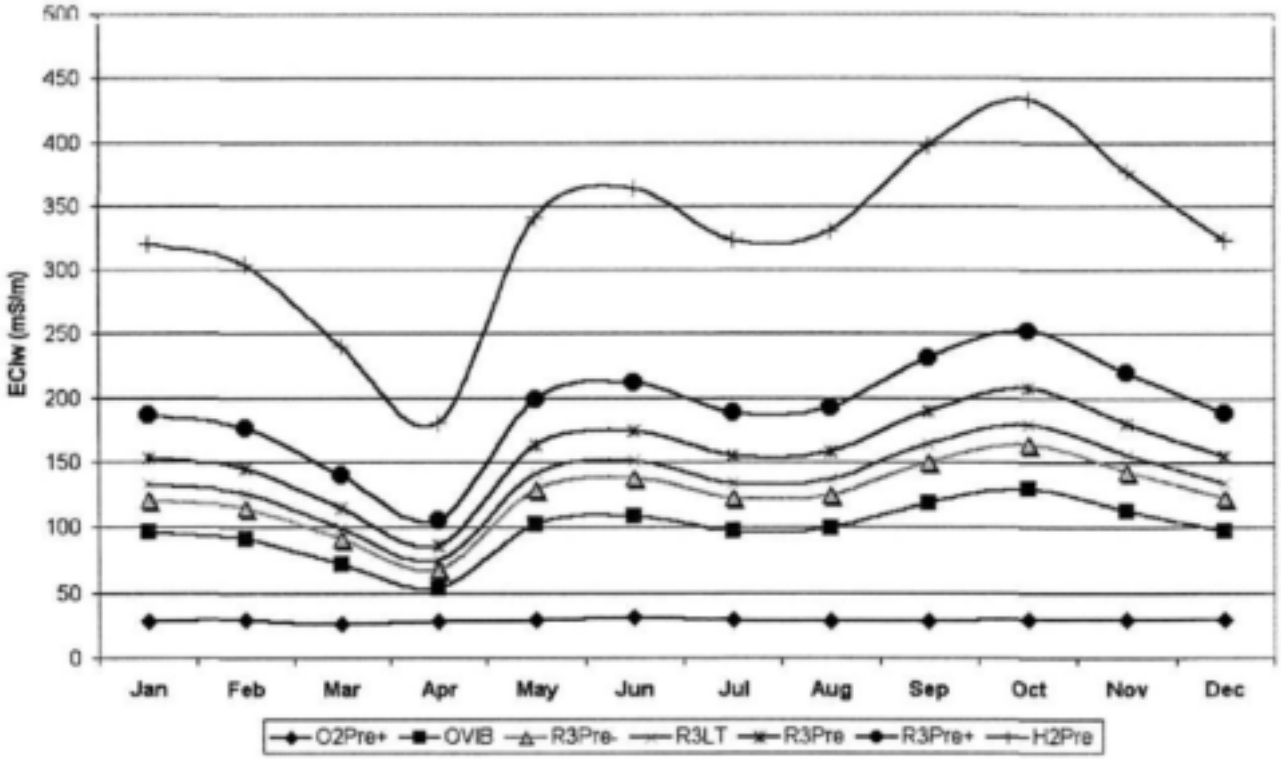



**Figure 5.5 2020 predicted annual ECiw values based on OVIB 1998 monthly ECiw fluctuations for Olierivier.**

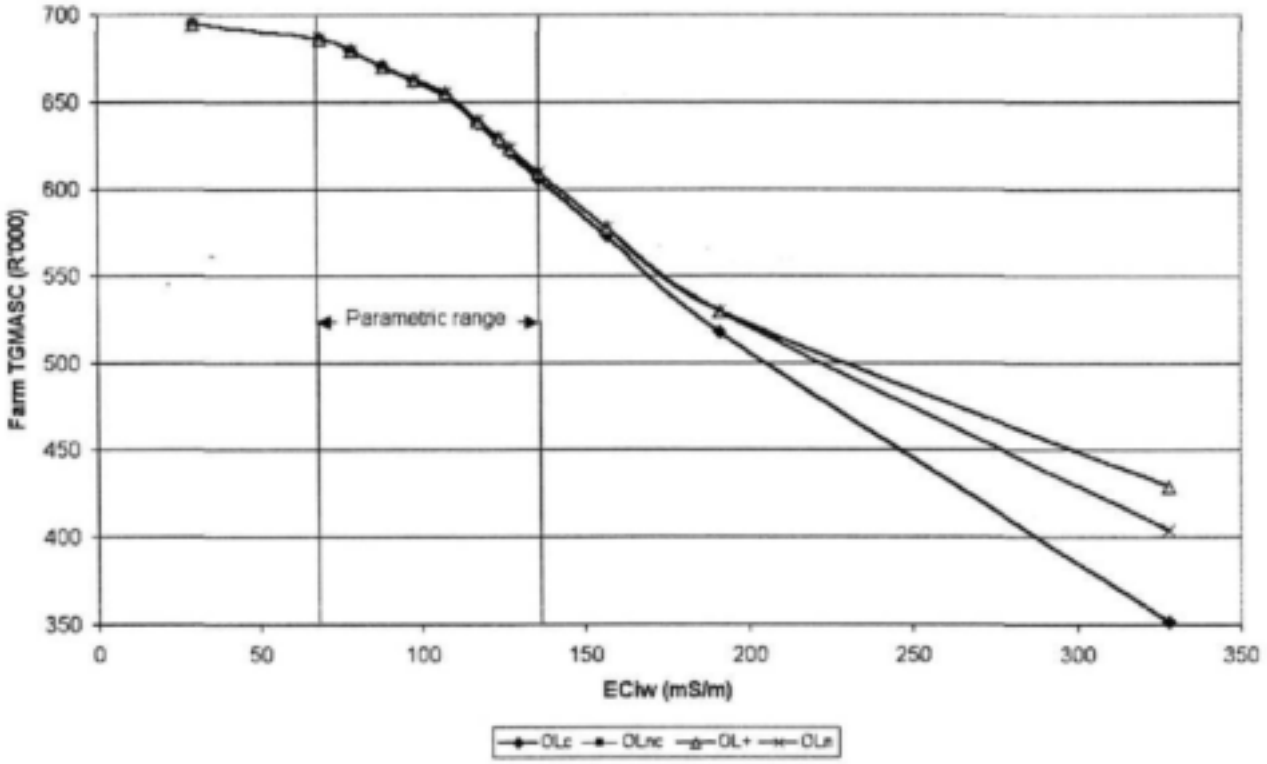



**Figure 5.6 The impact on the Olierivier case study farm TGMASC (R'000) of predicted ECiw (mS/m) scenarios with (+) and without (n) fixed capital management options and with (c) and without returnflows constrained**

**Table 5.35 The percentage change in Olierivier TGMASC from the *status quo* for returnflows restricted, with and without management options (for DuPreez *et al* (2000) R3 water quality scenarios)**

| | O2Pre+ | OL98 | R3Pre- | **R3LT** | R3Pre | R3Pre+ | H2Pre |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ***Ave.ECiw(mS/m)*** | ***29.0*** | ***98.3*** | ***124.0*** | ***136.0*** | ***157.0*** | ***191.0*** | ***328.0*** |
| OLsn | 13.92% | 8.66% | 3.26% | **609874** | -5.21% | -13.13% | -33.85% |
| OLs+ | 13.92% | 8.66% | 3.26% | 0.00% | -5.21% | -13.13% | -29.66% |
| OLsnc | 13.92% | 8.60% | 2.84% | -0.57% | -5.87% | -15.04% | -42.39% |
| OLs+c | 13.92% | 8.60% | 2.84% | -0.57% | -5.87% | -15.04% | -42.39% |

The dual values determined in Table 5.36 for the returnflow constraint shows what the impact on TGMASC would be if the constraint were to be relaxed by one unit, or inversely, the cost to the farmer of constraining returnflows by one further unit. The higher dual value when fixed capital management options are implemented (OL+c) indicate that by implementing these management options, a far greater value per mm/ha water used can be obtained under poor water quality conditions.

**Table 5.36 Dual prices (R/mm/ha) of the returnflow constraint for Olierivier using DuPreez *et al* (2000) R3 water qualities**

| | O2Pre+ | OL98 | R3Pre- | **R3LT** | R3Pre | R3Pre+ | H2Pre |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ***Ave.ECiw(mS/m)*** | ***29.0*** | ***98.3*** | ***124.0*** | ***136.0*** | ***157.0*** | ***191.0*** | ***328.0*** |
| Dual (OLnc) | 0 | 0 | 0.05 | 0.6 | 1.14 | 1.69 | 1.31 |
| Dual (OL+c) | 0 | 0.6 | 1.91 | 1.52 | 3.85 | 4.17 | 3.43 |

The impact on TGMASC of changing the excess delivery capacity of the centre pivot irrigation system is shown in Table 5.37. Decreasing the excess delivery capacity from 20% to 10% results in the greatest decrease in TGMASC when returnflows are constrained (c) and no fixed capital management options (n) implemented (OLS n c CP1). These impacts are greatest for the worst-case scenario, H2Pre, results. There is no improvement from the *status quo* in TGMASC when increasing the excess delivery capacity of the centre pivot irrigation system from 20% to 30% except for H2Pre whether fixed capital management options are included or not (n and +) and only with returnflows not constraining. With returnflows constraining (*OLS n and + c CP3)* increasing the excess delivery capacity of the centre pivot irrigation system from 20% to 30% resulted in a marginal improvement (0.4%) of just over R2 000.

Yet, it must be noted that a serious factor in increasing the delivery capacity of a centre pivot irrigation system is the infiltrability of the irrigated soils. Without proper infiltration the high deliveries that have to be given at the edge of the field can result in runoff and waterlogging, rendering leaching ineffective. A further limitation of centre pivot irrigation systems when using poor quality irrigation water is that foliar wetting takes place that can causes an additional salinity damage known as scorching, especially when irrigating germinating legumes and cotton. This is a factor not taken into consideration in SALMOD, as accurate information to incorporate this is unavailable. As scorching can be limited by good management, optimal management practices are assumed.

**Table 5.37 The percentage change in Olierivier TGMASC from the *OLS n CP2* scenario values subject to centre pivot leaching ability changes using DuPreez *et al* (2000:18) R3 water quality scenarios**

| | Q2Pre+ | OVIB | R3Pre- | **R3LT** | R3Pre | R3Pre+ | H2Pre |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *OLS n&+ CP3* | 13.9% | 8.7% | 3.3% | 0.0% | -5.2% | -13.1% | -26.8% |
| *OLS + CP2* | 13.9% | 8.7% | 3.3% | 0.0% | -5.2% | -13.1% | -29.7% |
| ***OLS n CP2*** | 13.9% | 8.7% | 3.3% | **609 874** | -5.2% | -13.1% | -33.8% |
| *OLS n&+ c CP3* | 13.9% | 8.6% | 2.8% | -0.6% | -5.9% | -15.0% | -42.0% |
| *OLS n&+ c CP2* | 13.9% | 8.6% | 2.8% | -0.6% | -5.9% | -15.0% | -42.4% |
| *OLS + c CP1* | 13.9% | 8.5% | 2.6% | -0.8% | -6.3% | -16.0% | -44.4% |
| *OLS n c CP1* | 13.9% | 8.5% | 2.6% | -0.9% | -6.7% | -16.4% | -46.3% |

With returnflows constrained, the impact of the ability of centre pivot irrigation systems to deliver excess capacity to leach is reduced, as there is an incentive to reduce returnflows. The impact is largely offset by the implementation of fixed capital management options as can be seen when comparing the OLS n c CP1 and OLS + c CP1 rows.

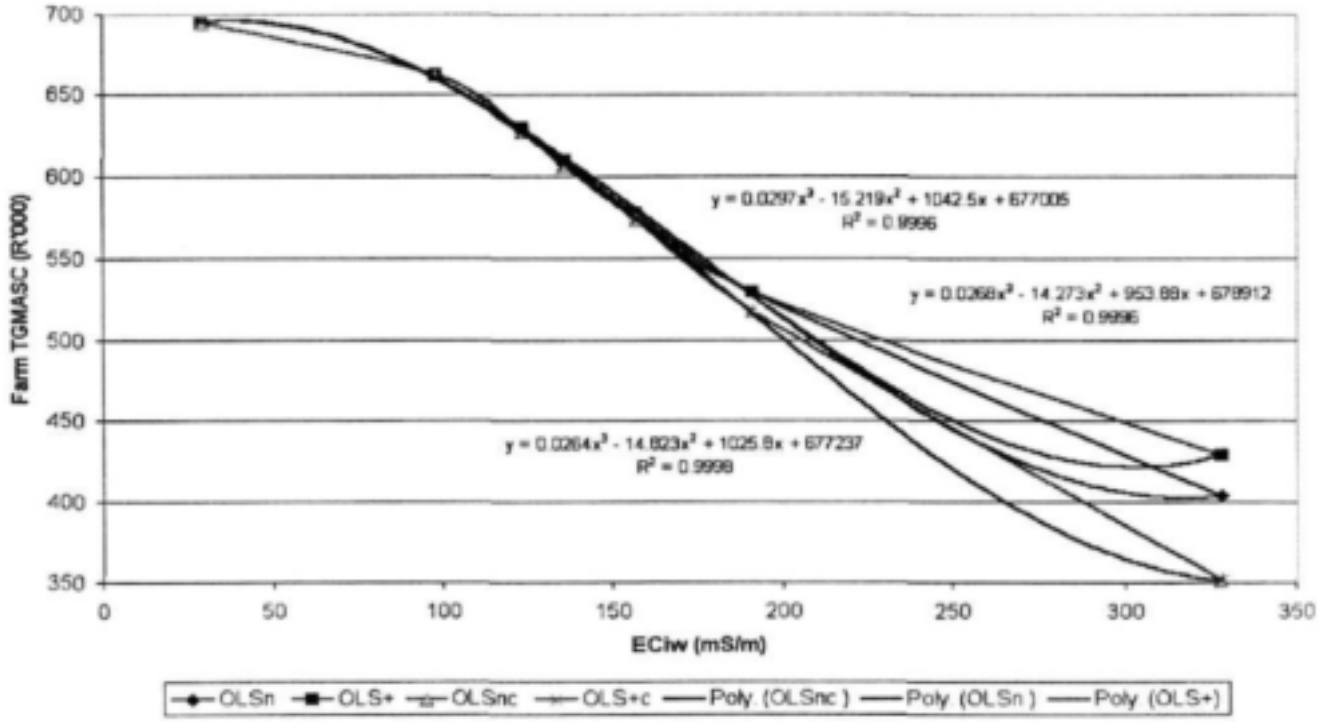



**Figure 5.7 Third order polynomial functions of the effect of ECiw on TGMASC for the Olierivier case study farm with and without management options and with and without returnflows constrained**

Third order polynomial functions 5.1 to 5.3, were derived for Olierivier to predict the effect of ECiw on TGMASC and which can be used in macro-area and policy formulation models (see also Figure 5.7). It must be noted that these functions are useful only for the ranges specified above, as going beyond the range will result in distorted values as the 3rd order polynomial function reaches a turning point and then proceeds in the opposite direction. The bottom turning points for OLSn and OLS+ are reached within the end of the range resulting in positive gradients at H2Pre (328 mS/m).

$$OL+ \qquad y = 0.0297x^3 - 15.219x^2 + 1042.5x + 677005 \qquad (R^2 = 0.9996) \qquad (5.1)$$

$$OLn \qquad y = 0.0268x^3 - 14.273x^2 + 953.88x + 678912 \qquad (R^2 = 0.9996) \qquad (5.2)$$

$$OL+c = OLnc \qquad y = 0.0264x^3 - 14.823x^2 + 1025.8x + 677237 \qquad (R^2 = 0.9998) \qquad (5.3)$$

Where: $y$ is the TGMASC (in R'000) attainable under average water quality (ECiw) situation $x$.

The monthly water quality fluctuations follow the actual OVIB monthly average water quality fluctuations readings taken at Olierivier for 1998 as depicted in Figure 5.5.

5.5.2. SUB-AREA 2 RESULTS: VAALLUS

The monthly ECiw values in Figure 5.8 are the result of adjusting 1998 monthly average Vaallus ECiw readings to equal the annual predicted average ECiw of the various water quality scenarios determined by Du Preez *et al,* (2000). This is done so that the predicted average annual ECiw can be transformed into monthly water quality fluctuations.

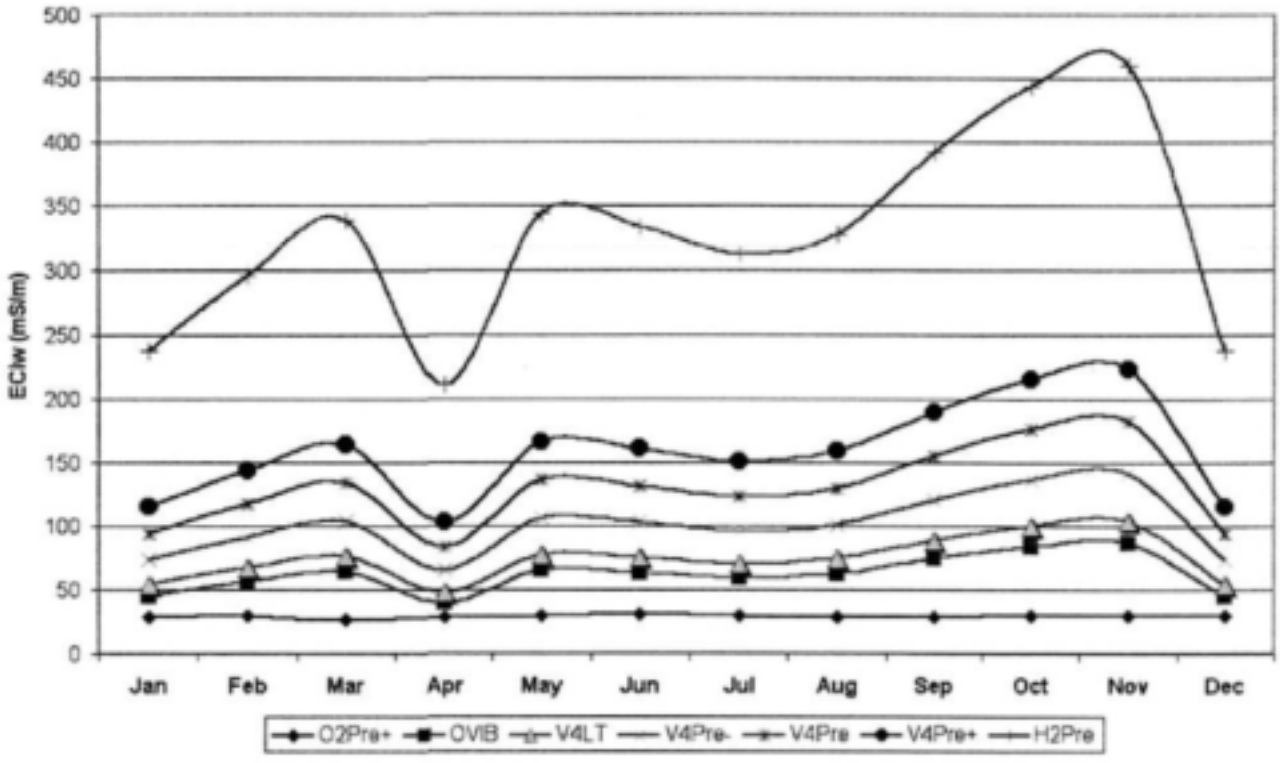



**Figure 5.8 2020 predicted annual ECiw values based on OVIB 1998 monthly ECiw fluctuations for Vaallus.**

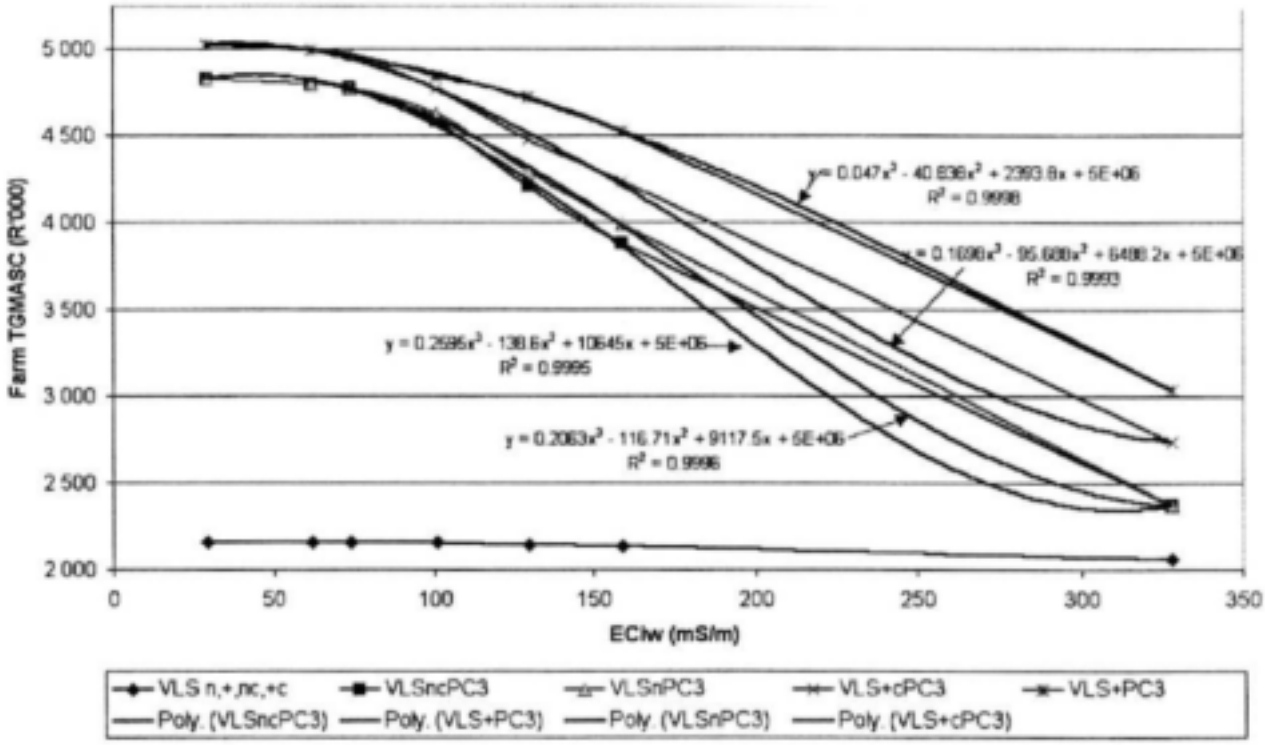



**Figure 5.9 Third order polynomial functions of the effect of ECiw on TGMASC for the Vaallus case study farm, with production capital unconstrained, with and without management options and, with and without returnflows constrained**

Third order polynomial functions (5.4 to 5.7) were derived for Vaallus and graphed in Figure 5.9 to predict the effect of ECiw on TGMASC with production capital unconstrained:

$$VLS+PC3 \qquad y = 0.047x3 - 40.838x2 + 2393.8x + 5E+06 \quad R^2 = 0.9998 \qquad (5.4)$$

$$VLScPC3 \qquad y = 0.1698x3 - 95.688x2 + 6488.2x + 5E+06 \quad R^2 = 0.9995 \qquad (5.5)$$

$$VLSnPC3 \qquad y = 0.2063x3 - 116.71x2 + 9117.5x + 5E+06 \quad R^2 = 0.9996 \qquad (5.6)$$

$$VLSncPC3 \qquad y = 0.2595x3 - 138.6x2 + 10645x + 5E+06 \quad R^2 = 0.9995 \qquad (5.7)$$

Where: $y$ is the TGMASC (in R'000) attainable under average water quality (ECiw) situation $x$.

The monthly water quality fluctuations follow the actual OVIB monthly average water quality fluctuations readings taken at Vaallus for 1998 as depicted in Figure 5.8. The impact of relaxing the production capital constraint (increasing it three-fold) results in a far greater impact under good ECiw values (124% improvement for O2Pre+) than under poor ECiw values (only 10% for H2Pre).

As Du Preez *et al* (2000) provide future scenario results for only the lower Vaal River as a whole and not for the specific sub-areas used in this research, this analysis is not conducted for the sub-areas, Bucklands, Atherton and New Bucklands. The impact of Du Preez *et al* (2000) scenarios for the Lower Vaal River on the TGMASC of these sub-areas are shown in the following section.

### 5.5.3. OVIB SUB-AREA COMPARISON

The impact of different predicted irrigation water qualities on the sub-area case study farms TGMASC is compared in Table 5. For all sub-area model runs returnflows are not constraining and fixed capital management options are not implemented so as to compare the optimal results for the case study farms for each sub-area under their current conditions, and not their potential optimal conditions.

**Table 5.38 The percentage change in sub-area TGMASC (R) for the predicted ECiw values determined by Du Preez *et al*, and with no fixed capital management options (2000:18))**

| | ***O2Pre+*** | ***OVIB*** | ***V4LT*** | ***V4Pre-*** | ***V4*** | ***V4Pre+*** | ***H2Pre*** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| NB | 0.06% | 0.06% | **876 963** | -0.20% | -1.99% | -3.18% | -33.49% |
| BL | 30.06% | 12.01% | **71 856** | -26.72% | -55.25% | -84.13% | -100.00% |
| AT | 0.00% | 0.00% | **102 786** | -9.92% | -38.72% | -57.61% | -100.00% |
| VL | 0.00% | 0.00% | **2 158 249** | 0.00% | -0.61% | -1.01% | -4.51% |
| OL-V4 | 1.60% | 1.09% | **683 796** | -3.42% | -9.28% | -15.84% | -40.79% |
| OL-R3 | 13.92% | 8.66% | 3.26% | **609 874** | -5.21% | -13.13% | -33.85% |
| VL-R3 | 0.62% | 0.62% | 0.00% | **2 144 990** | -0.21% | -1.29% | -3.92% |
| | ***O2Pre+*** | ***OVIB*** | ***R3Pre-*** | ***R3LT*** | ***R3Pre*** | ***R3Pre+*** | ***H2Pre*** |

Table 5. shows that under the worst-case water quality scenario (H2Pre), the Bucklands(BL) and Atherton(AT) case study farms will experience a 100% reduction in TGMASC from the V4LT value. The farm least affected by the H2Pre water quality scenario is the Vaallus (VL) farm, experiencing only a 4.51% reduction in TGMASC. The BL and AT farms are the smallest and the VL farm the largest. The reason, however, is not only farm size, but also natural resource endowment and most importantly the choice of crops to be grown. BL and AT farms are set in SALMOD to produce only lucerne and lucerne and wheat respectively, whereas the VL farm also has the option of including cotton, which is moderately tolerant to saline conditions. Similarly, as the BL farmer can grow only Lucerne, the impact on TGMASC of an improvement of irrigation water quality to O2Pre+ levels results in the largest (30.06%) potential increase.

Rows OL-V4 reflects the impact of the Vaal River segment 4 (V4) monthly water quality fluctuation patterns applied to the Olierivier case study farm. The same annual average water quality predictions are simply applied to different monthly water quality fluctuation patterns, resulting in an approximately 12.12% TGMASC improvement when using the Vaallus 1998 monthly ECiw pattern instead of the Olierivier ECiw pattern for Olierivier case study farm, while using the Riet River segment 3 (R3) monthly water quality fluctuation patterns for the Vaallus case study farm results in only a 0.61% reduction in TGMASC.

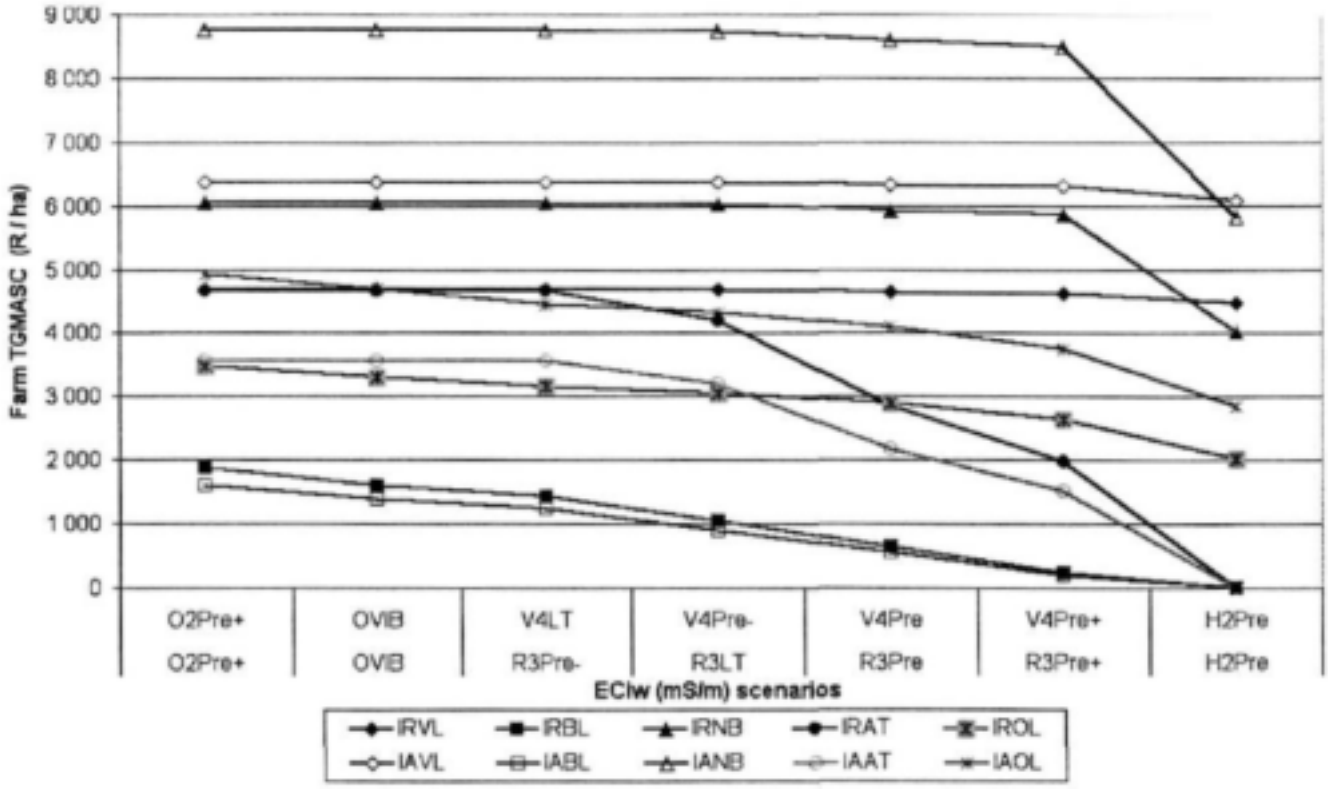



**Figure 5.10 TGMASC per hectare irrigable area (IA) and per hectare irrigation rights (IR) held for irrigation water salinity scenarios as determined by Du Preez et al, (2000)**

Figure 5.10 compares the 5 case study farms on a TGMASC per hectare irrigable area (IA..) and TGMASC per hectare irrigation water rights (IR..) basis. Case study farmers who have more hectares irrigation water rights (IR) than hectares irrigable land area (IA), will show better results on a per hectare irrigable land area (IA) basis.

On a per hectare irrigation water rights held basis (IR..), the New Bucklands case study farmer (IRNB) shows the best results, closely followed by the Vaallus case study farmer (IRVL) with TGMASC R6051-R4042 and R4682-R4470 respectively for the ECiw range of 20 to 160 mS/m. The Atherton case study farmer (IR-AT) does better than the Bucklands case study farmer (IRL) although holding half the hectares water right, and also does better than the Olierivier case study farmer (IROL) until V4Pre/R3Pre after which IR-AT quickly approaches zero at H2Pre. The Olierivier case study farmer (IROL) follows with much lower TGMASC results of between R2017 and R2434 for the ECiw range of 20 to 160 mS/m. Between an ECiw of 20 and 100 mS/m, TGMASC is around R4 600 for IR-AT but falls sharply after 100 mS/m and is zero at 328 mS/m (H2Pre). Between an ECiw of 20 and 100 mS/m, TGMASC gradually declines from around R1800 to nearly R1 000 for IR-BL and continues almost linearly to nearly R1 000 at and ECiw is 150 mS/m and is then zero at 328 mS/m.

On a per hectare irrigable area basis (IA..), TGMASC for IANB and IAVL are very similar at just below R8 000 with ECiw between 20 and 160 mS/m, but at the worst-case ECiw, IAVL outperforms IANB. IAAT TGMASC also outperforms IAOL TGMASC at an ECiw between 29 and 101 mS/m, but as ECiw deteriorates, IAAT TGMASC drops fast and reaches zero at 328 mS/m. IAOL TGMASC drops gradually from just below R5 000 at 29 mS/m to just above R3 000 at 328 mS/m. IABL TGMASC is only slightly better than IABL for an ECiw of 29 to 159 ES/m but also reaches zero at 328 mS/m.

It is of significance in Figure 5.10 that on the two small farms, AT and BL, TGMASC drops more rapidly than on the larger farms, and at the ECiw worst-case scenario level of 328 mS/m these two small farms have a TGMASC of zero, while the larger farms are not as dramatically affected. One of the reasons for this is the limited crop choice that the smaller farmers currently plant.

### 5.5.4. A SUMMARY OF SALMOD RESULTS USING PREDICTED SALINITY LEVELS FOR 2020

The impact of implementing the worst-case scenario of receiving the predicted Harts River water salinity from Spitskop Dam (328 mS/m) results in a major drop in TGMASC for all scenarios from the Lower Riet long-term average water salinity (136 mS/m).

Constraining production capital can have a large effect on TGMASC under ideal water salinity conditions, but as water salinity deteriorates the impact becomes less, while the impact of constraining irrigation returnflows on TGMASC increases as water quality decreases.

The third order polynomial functions derived for the Olierivier case study farmer for both returnflow and management options, and for the Vaallus case study farmer with both management, returnflow and production capital options, should prove useful in predicting the financial effect on the Olierivier and Vaallus case study farmers under any irrigation water salinity level within the analysed range.

Farming profitability of small farmers drops more rapidly than for larger farms, and by ECiw levels of 328 mS/m the smaller farms go out of production, while the larger farms are not as dramatically affected. One of the reasons for this is the limited crop choice that the smaller farmers currently plant as a result of management, labour and mechanisation constraints, and their generally poor resource endowment.

# CHAPTER 6. SUMMARY, CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

*Swarms of living creatures will live wherever the river flows. There will be large numbers of fish, because this water follows there and makes the salt water fresh; so where the river flows everything will live.*

***Ezekiel 47:8-10***

## 6.1. SUMMARY

In the Lower Vaal and Riet rivers, changing irrigation water quality has raised concern about the long-term sustainability of irrigation due to reduced crop yields of some crops and even the withdrawal of other crops in some regions.

The main aim of this research is to develop and apply models to determine the long-term financial and economic viability of irrigation farming in the Lower Vaal and Riet rivers, with specific aims being to: evaluate the relationship between changing water quality, soil conditions and crop production; determine the impact on yield, crop choice, agronomic and water management practices, expected income and costs; develop models for typical farms in different river reaches, and apply these models to test the outcome of alternative scenarios regarding internal water quality management practices and external policy measures.

This research proceeded as follows to achieve these aims: the term water quality was first defined to identify the key problematic constituent in the Lower Vaal and Riet rivers. The study area was delineated as the OVIB service area. A pilot survey was conducted to determine the magnitude and distribution of the problem and to identify case study farmers. Once the latter had been identified, financial data was collected from *inter alia* the case study farmers and inputted into SALMOD which was developed to simulate crop enterprise gross margins under a range of resource conditions and to maximise total farm gross margin above specified costs (TGMASC) by determining the optimal crop and management combinations subject to the resource constraints.

The term water quality was defined as a broad term used to encompass a range of constituents that can modify a volume of water resulting in a change in its utility value. In the Lower Vaal and Riet rivers the primary water quality constituent of concern impacting the financial status of irrigation farms was identified as salinity.

Du Preez *et al* (2000) identified the Spitskop Dam below the Vaal-Harts irrigation scheme as one of the water bodies within the Lower Vaal and Riet Rivers with the highest salinity levels and the greatest potential for further rapid decline. It was closely followed by the Lower Riet River and then the Lower Vaal River, both of which are situated in the OVIB region. As the Spitskop Dam serves only a very small irrigation community and very little water is released from the Spitskop Dam back into the Vaal River, the OVIB region was chosen as the study area as it is a very important irrigation region within South Africa, and the complex interaction of the hydraulic systems impacting on the area makes it a more applicable region.

The diversion of Orange River water into the Lower Vaal and Riet rivers has a major effect on improving the salinity in the study area. With the possibility of a reduction in Orange River supply following the outcome of the

Orange River Development Project Replanning Study (DWAF 1998), this crucial dilution effect could be reduced.

The OVIB has 178 irrigation farmer members communally holding 8097 ha of irrigation rights of which nearly one quarter (1861 ha) are either slightly or severely affected by waterlogging or salinisation. 49% of the land irrigated is either medium or low potential irrigation land; 28% of the area is flood irrigated and 70% sprinkler irrigated with the trend being conversion to centre pivot irrigation (Van Heerden *et al*, 2000).

Five case study farmers were selected, one from each of the different sub-areas of the OVIB. The case study farmers were representative of their sub-areas with regard to the hectares of irrigation water rights held, and jointly, also sufficiently representative of the OVIB region.

With the contradicting aims of improved water use efficiency and increased leaching for salinity management, the importance of a financial optimisation model was evident to solve the apparent paradox between saving water due to its scarcity value and "wasting" water to leach out salts that build up in soils through the process of irrigation.

SALMOD was constructed using GAMS. This consists of a simulation and an optimisation section that calculate the optimal crop enterprise, management and resource use combination that maximises farm returns under different water quality, management and policy scenarios.

The management options built into SALMOD are the appropriate leaching fraction to implement, and crop yield to accept for the optimal crop / resource combination calculated. The fixed capital management options included in SALMOD are the installation of artificial drainage, the change of irrigation system and the building of on-farm storage / evaporation dams for return-flow management.

From the results generated by SALMOD useful third order polynomial functions were derived to determine the financial impact on the variable cost component of irrigation water salinity for OVIB sub-areas.

The shadow prices for irrigation water of different qualities indicate what farmers can afford to pay for irrigation water of different qualities.

## 6.2. CONCLUSIONS

Irrigation water quality and particularly salinity, reaches levels in the Lower Vaal and Riet rivers that are harmful to certain crops irrigated. Yet, saline irrigation water irrigated onto soils is transpired as pure water, leaving the salts behind in the soil. These salts accumulate over the long term and reach levels rendering soils sub-optimal for crop production. A way to manage salt build-up in soils is to apply excess irrigation water to leach the accumulated salts out of the soils. Results from SALMOD show that it is feasible to leach. However, to leach however, soils have to have sufficient infiltrability. Irrigation systems, too, have to have extra excess capacity to irrigate sufficient water to cover the plant water requirements and the leaching fraction.

The option of installing artificial drainage in waterlogged and limited drainage fields is a fixed capital management option built into SALMOD. For the New-Bucklands case study farm where water quality is not a problem, results show that the installation of artificial drainage on waterlogged soils is feasible, while for the

Olierivier case study farmer where water quality is worst in the study area draining waterlogged soils is unfeasible.

The increased point-source returnflows generated by the installation of artificial drainage need to be managed, so as not to cause externalities to other farmers extracting irrigation water from where the returnflows re-enter the water source. Another fixed capital management option was built into SALMOD to manage irrigation returnflows: namely the construction of on-farm storage / evaporation dams. Results, however, also showed that with irrigation water returnflows constrained it was unfeasible for case study farmers to construct the on-farm storage dams. Financial losses incurred from not exceeding the maximum return-flow levels allowed were less than the financial gains from being able to continue to leach for optimal crop production minus the annualised costs of constructing on-farm storage dams.

The % reduction in TGMASC from the long-term average ECiw (74 mS/m) to the worst expected Vaal River ECiw as predicted by Du Preez *et al* (2000) for 2020 (159 mS/m), is 84 and 58% for the small farmers from Bucklands and Atherton respectively, between 13 and 16% for the Olierivier farmer, depending on whether the Vaal River or the Riet River has the major impact, 1% for the large and financially strong Vaallus farmer and 3% for the small yet resource strong New Bucklands farmer (see Table 5.38). These results clearly reflect that the small and resource poor farmers will be the most affected by irrigation water salinity deterioration.

Scenario results from SALMOD further show that:

- Leaching is financially viable for all case study farmers.
- Accepting lower yields on soils with insufficient leaching capacity is also financially viable.
- For farmers with limited area of well-drained soils it can be financially viable to install artificial drainage.
- The option of building on-farm storage dams when returnflows are constrained to 100 mm per hectare water rights held, is financially unfeasible for all case study farms and for all scenario.
- It is not financially viable for farmers to replace their current irrigation systems with more efficient systems, but in some instances with systems that can apply a greater leaching fraction.
- At the worst-case scenario salinity conditions, farmers with below 60 ha water rights, and who do not grow cotton, will go out of production.

SALMOD has proved to be a valuable farm level salinity management tool. SALMOD is also potentially useful at the regional and the national level for determining the farm level financial impacts of various water quality and quantity scenarios, where the farmers are affected by irrigation water salinity.

## 6.3. RECOMMENDATIONS

### 6.3.1. POLICY CONSIDERATIONS

#### *6.3.1.1 Reinstate subsidisation of irrigation drainage*

No irrigation system is sustainable without sufficient drainage. Unless natural drainage to below the root zone is sufficient and water tables are not rising, artificial drainage has to be installed. Quoting Du Preez *et al* (2000:154): "Results from these estimations (Szabolcs model) indicate that all the undrained soils will, due to excessive salt accumulation, become unsuitable for irrigation by approximately the year 2050." To reinforce this, Brady & Weil (1996:307) state, "If the irrigation system does not provide good internal drainage, soil salinity can increase to intolerable levels, as can the exchangeable sodium level. The latter engenders chemical and physical problems that, if not corrected, will render a soil virtually useless as a habitat for plants."

Subsidising irrigation drainage on its own, however, will lead to the exacerbation of the water quality problem, especially in closed hydraulic systems such as in the Lower Vaal and Riet rivers, because of the greater mobilisation of salts in the system facilitated through the artificial drainage.

A major advantage of managing / monitoring an irrigation systems with irrigation drainage is that, what was a non-point / diffuse pollution source is now a point-source pollution problem that can be measured, monitored, and controlled and accordingly there is a possibility of imposing waste discharge charge (WDC) system.

#### *6.3.1.2 Consider putting constraints on returnflows*

Subsidising irrigation drainage will lead to an increase in irrigation returnflows that in turn will increase the salinity levels in the rivers they flow into if controls are not placed on irrigation returnflows. The environment is also not protected from the agricultural chemicals and salts that these returnflows would deposit into the river if not managed. Coupled with artificial drainage subsidisation there therefore has to be a constraint on agricultural returnflows and possibly also the subsidisation and promotion of on-farm management practices to manage irrigation returnflows.

Putting a limit on the volume of irrigation returnflows allowed might solve the river water quality problem, but soil salinisation will proceed because the incentive for leaching is removed.

A waste discharge charge (WDC) system can be effective only where return-flows are point source – A model such a SALMOD can simulate the contribution of an irrigation practice to non-point source pollution, but the results will always be viewed with scepticism and perceived as untrustworthy by the perpetrator.

#### *6.3.1.3 Consider subsidisation of on-farm storage/evaporation ponds*

In the US and Australia there are stringent controls on irrigation returnflows from being allowed to re-enter the water source. There are either canals that transport the irrigation returnflows to irrigation scheme managed evaporation basins or wetlands, or the farmers have their own evaporation ponds and / or they practice serial biological concentration (SBC). In SBC the saline returnflows from a salt sensitive crop are used to irrigate a moderately tolerant crop, and the even more saline returnflows from this crop are used to irrigate salt tolerant

crops (halophytes) or woodlots or are used for aquaculture. This promotes greater water use efficiency, but requires large capital expenditure and considerable management expertise.

By implementing a policy to constrain returnflows, river and groundwater water quality will be improved and prevented from deteriorating further. Under these improved water quality conditions the returnflows from the resulting optimal crop compositions could be less than the maximum specified in the constraint, making the returnflows constraint no longer necessary once farmers are using and managing their on-farm storage dams properly. This constraint is however initially required to get farmers to install drainage and to build on-farm storage dams. Constraining irrigation returnflows must be coupled with the incentives of artificial drainage subsidisation and on-farm storage dam subsidisation.

### 6.3.2. PROVISION OF LASER LEVELLING AND SOIL SALINITY MAPPING SERVICES

The Provision of laser levelling and soil salinity mapping services need not be state supplied, but entrepreneurial opportunity exists in supplying these services. The Orange Vaal Water Users Association or GWK Ltd. could provide the service or put out a tender.

Although the model did not show that it was feasible to change the irrigation system for any case study farmers under any salinity scenario, it must be brought to the attention of irrigation system designers that they should make provision, in new centre pivot irrigation systems, for greater application capacities for the provision for sufficient irrigation leaching. This was identified as a problem in the study area in the Du Preez *et al* (2000) report.

What was not taken into account in SALMOD was the leaf wetting effects of sprinkler type irrigation systems. High concentrations for certain inorganic salts in the irrigation water can cause leaf scorching.

Although laser levelling and salinity mapping were not studied implicitly in this research, the latest literature and trends in salinity management reveal that these salinity management options are being widely used.

Laser levelling for flood irrigation could provide a cheaper, and very nearly as efficient method of irrigation as centre pivot irrigation without the leaf wetting effect and much greater capacities to leach. The installation of artificial drainage is also easier on a laser-levelled field.

Soil salinity mapping is conducted using a global positioning system (GPS) linked to an electrical conductivity field meter such as the Geonics EM-38 meter. The vehicle on which these instruments are mounted traverses the field, taking regular bulk soil electrical conductivity (ECa) readings. These spatial readings are statistically processed to provide soil salinity contours. A soil sample is then taken from each contour grouping and analysed to get the ECa and ECe correlation. Soil salinity mapping provides infield identification of problem areas so that with remediation only the problem areas need to be managed and with regular soil salinity readings the effectiveness of a leaching management strategy on salinity control can be gauged.

### 6.3.3. FURTHER RESEARCH NEEDS / SHORTCOMINGS OF THIS RESEARCH

The purpose of the National Water Act (39 of 1998) is to ensure that the Nation's water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled, *inter alia to* promote the efficient, sustainable and beneficial use of water. Further research to ensure the financial sustainability of irrigation schemes in South

Africa is essential to ensure national food security and employment in some otherwise barren area of the country. It has been predicted that, by the year 2025, South Africa will be the only surplus food producer in the whole of Sub-Saharan Africa, thus having the stability of food supply made possible by irrigated agriculture a stabilising force not only in South Africa but also in most of the rest of Africa. Yet, declining water quality levels in most of our rivers threaten the productive use of this water for food production.

With irrigation being the largest user of water, micro research that can contribute to more efficient water use and better water quality management is essential to maintain our most valuable resource and the agriculture it supports. However, macro research is also needed to place into perspective the national benefit of improving water use efficiency and better water quality management and the costs of not doing so, and to guide the public policy-making process in the right direction. Furthermore, macro research takes into consideration the secondary economic, socio-economic and environmental effects that stem from the results of the micro research.

The dynamics of water -use, -pollution and -control are so tightly interwoven by a multitude of external factors that the traditional style of mono-disciplinary research is no longer suited to achieve overall satisfactory results McKinney *et al* (2000). To proactively manage and implement policy to anticipate problems and sustainably introduce change, the correct research tools are necessary.

By understanding the full dynamics and interactions between irrigation water quality and the soil salinity status on crop yield over irrigated time, mistakes made in the past by choosing unsustainable irrigation sites can be prevented. Furthermore, the impact of various natural or artificial (e.g. policy mechanism) scenarios on existing schemes could be more accurately modelled, leading to increased economic efficiency and sustainability of the irrigation industry as a whole. However, "current USDA Salinity Laboratory evidence suggests these interactions are far more complex than originally thought. .... Rhoades, the doyen of soil/plant/salinity interactions, contends that no one has succeeded in combining all the refinements necessary to overcome the inherent problems of relatively simple salt balance models and geophysical sensors, to address the enormous field variability of infiltration and leaching rates" Blackwell, *et al* (2000).

Current literature and research on salinity management in irrigation agriculture also fails to capture the stochastic nature of inter-seasonal irrigation water quality as well as the cumulative economic and sustainability effects of irrigating with stochastic water quality levels. "Further limitations for setting criteria for salinity include: (i) the need to make assumptions about the relationship between soil saturation extract salinity (for which yield response data is available) and soil solution salinity. (ii) the deviation of the salinity of the soil saturation extract from the mean soil profile salinity, to which crops would respond. (iii) The criteria for crop salt tolerance do not consider differences in crop tolerance during different growth stages" (DWAF, 1996).

It was initially thought that the water quality problem to be studied would have as its main variable water quality changes of instream irrigation water. DWAF data recorded over many years was studied and incorporated into models, but the essence of the problem remained unresolved, being the indirect and long-term accumulation effects of irrigation water carried constituents within irrigated soils and their underlying water tables, and the effects of the resulting returnflows from these soils and groundwater on downstream irrigation water quality.

Salinity is the term used to represent a group of these constituents, namely the inorganic salts, comprising mainly Sodium (Na) and Chloride (Cl). Sodicity, usually coupled with salinity is measured by the ability of

Sodium to displace Calcium (Ca) and Magnesium (Mg) in soils, leading to a degradation of soil structure and an accumulation of sodium that is non-beneficial to plant growth. The only way to remediate these soils is to "flush" out the accumulated salts through leaching and to displace the sodium with calcium sources. However, "leaching to maintain an acceptable salt balance in the root zone is often considered by non-specialists as wasteful, especially as irrigation engineers and scientists appear to be to be in doubt about the required leaching rates and the efficiency of the leaching practise" Kijne, J.W. *et al* (1998).

And also, "if the irrigation systems do not provide good internal drainage, soil salinity can increase to intolerable levels, as can the exchangeable sodium levels. The latter engenders chemical and physical problems that, if not corrected, will render the soil virtually useless as a habitat for plants" (Brady & Weil, 1996).

Currently, degraded returnflows from 3 major irrigation schemes comprising ± 60 000 ha all come together at the Douglas Weir. At present some of  of the main focuses of the Orange River Project are to: "provide irrigation water to areas in the Riet River catchment, as well as water to alleviate water quality problems in the Vaal River at Douglas". Obviously, a large transfer of water from the upper reaches of the Orange River (due to the Orange River Replanning Project) will have a significant influence on the water availability further downstream and therefore influence the supply (and salt dilution) capabilities of the Orange River Project." (DWAF 1998).

Concerning land redistribution, areas within the study area are earmarked for resettlement of historically disadvantaged individuals. To avoid making mistakes of the past and designing irrigation schemes in areas that might not be economically and environmentally sustainable, a thorough understanding of potentially land degrading processes such as salinisation, sodification, waterlogging, etc. is essential.

# REFERENCES


AIHOON, J. K. (1994). Pollution insurance for the Agricultural sector: A study in the Loskop Valley. Masters Dissertation: University of Pretoria.

AIHOON, J. K., GROENEWALD, J. A. & SARTORIUS VON BACH, H. J. (1997). Agricultural Salinisation in the Olifants River at Loskop Valley, Mpumalanga. Agrekon, 36(3):268-282.

ARMOUR, R.J. & VILJOEN, M.F. (2000) Towards Quantifying the Economic Effects of Poor and Fluctuating Water Quality on Irrigation Agriculture: A Case Study of the Lower Vaal and Riet Rivers. Agrekon, Vol 39, No 1

ASCE (1990). Agricultural Salinity Assessment and Management. Manuals and Reports on Engineering Practise No. 71. Editor: TANJI, K.K. American Society of Civil Engineers: NY.

AYERS, R.S. & WESTCOT, D.W. (1985) Water Quality for Agriculture. FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper 29, Rev.1: Rome.

BACKEBERG, G.R. BEMBRIDGE, T.J., BENNIE, A.T.P., GROENEWALD, J.A., HAMMES, P.S., PULLEN, R.A. & THOMPSON, H. (1996). Policy Proposal for Irrigated Agriculture in South Africa. Discussion paper. July 1996. W.R.C. Report No. KV96/96. Beria Printers: Pretoria.

BACKEBERG, G.R.(1984) Besproeiingsontwikkeling in die Groot-Visriviervallei. Verhandeling (M.Sc. Agric.) - Universiteit van Pretoria, 1984

BACKEBERG, G.R.(2000) Planning of Research in the Field of Agricultural Water Management. www.wrc.org.za

BARTRAM, J. & BALANCE, R. (1996). Water Quality Monitoring: A Practical Guide to the Design and Implementation of Freshwater Quality Studies and Monitoring Programmes. Published on behalf of UNEF & the WTO. E&FN Spon, an imprint of Chapman & Hall: London.

BASSON, M. S., van Niekerk, P.H. & Van Rooyen, J.A. (1997). Overview of the Water Resources Availability and Utilisation in South Africa. Department of Water Affairs and Forestry Report P RSA/00/0197. Cape Town: CTP Book Printers.

BATH, A.J. & QUIBELL, G. (1997). Application of a hydrodynamic model to examine the hydro-salinity response of the Vaal Barrage to selected operating rules. Paper presented at the Eighth South African National Hydrology Symposium, 17 - 19 November 1997, Sanlam Conference Centre, University of Pretoria, South Africa.

BENDE, U. (1997) Regional hydro-chemical modelling by delineation of chemical hydrological response units (CHRUs) within a GIS: An approach of observing man-made impacts in the Broel River catchment (Germany). Mathematics and Computers in Simulation 40 (1997): 305-312

BLACKWELL, J., BISWAS, T.K., JAYAWARDANE, N.S. and TOWNSEND, J.T. (2000). Irrigation–getting the edge. CSIRO Land and Water, PMB No 3, Griffith, NSW

BRADY, N.C. & WEIL, R.R. (1996) The nature and properties of soils. Eleventh edition. Prentice Hall International Editions, New Jersey.

BRESLER, E., & HOFFMAN, G.C. (1986) Irrigation management for soil salinity control: theories and tests. Soil Sci. Soc. Am.J., 50:1552-1560.

BROOKE, A. DRUD, A. & MEERAUS, A. (1994) GAMS/BDMLP 1.1, Aug 1,1994 001.051.033-039.030 386/486 DOS-W. Analytic Support Unit, Development Research Department, World Bank, Washington, D.C. 20433, U.S.A.

COOPER, J.C., AND KEIM, R.W. (1996) Incentive Payments to Encourage Farmer Adoption of Water Quality Protection Practices. American Journal of Agricultural Economics, 78:54-64

COWEN, R. (2002) Book in preparation. Exploiting the Earth, under contract with Johns Hopkins University Press. CHAPTER 17: Ancient Irrigation, "Class notes" for Geology 115, UC Davis. http://www-geology.ucdavis.edu/~GEL115/115CH17oldirrigation.html

DANDY, G. & CRAWLY, P. (1992) Optimum Operation of a Multiple Reservoir System Including Salinity Effects. Water Resources Research. 28:4, p979-990.

DE WET, S. (2000) Personal discussion RE: Irrigation in-efficiencies. 12 June, 2000, 09h15. Tel: (051) 447 911, Ninham Shand, Bloemfontein.

DINAR, A., AILLERY, M.P. & MOORE, M.R. (1993) A Dynamic Model of Soil Salinity and Drainage Generation in Irrigation Agriculture: A Framework for Policy Analysis. Water Resources Research 29:6 p. 1527-1537.

DINAR, A. & KNAPP, K.C.(1986) A Dynamic Analysis of Optimal Water Use under Saline Conditions. Western Journal of Agricultural Economics, 11. p158-66.

DINAR, A. & ZILBERMAN, D. editors (1991) The Economics and Management of Water and Drainage. Kluwer Academic Publishers: Dordrecht.

DUDLEY, N.J. (2000) Personal communication RE Dynamic programming.

DU PLESSIS, H.M. (1982) Die uitwerking van verswakkende waterkwaliteit op die opbrengs van gewasse langs die Benede-Vaalrivier. Department of Agriculture. Confidential Report No. 987/174/82. Research Institute for Soil and Irrigation, Pretoria.

DU PREEZ. C.C. (2001) Personal communication RE: soil classes and terminology and irrigation and drainage efficiencies. UFS, Bloemfontein.

DU PREEZ, C.C., STRYDOM, M.G., LE ROUX, P.A.L., PRETORIUS, J.P., VAN RENSBURG. L.D. AND BENNIE, A.T.P.(2000) Effects of Water Quality on Irrigation Farming Along the Lower Vaal River: The Influence on Soils and Crops. WRC Report No. 740/1/00, Pretoria.

DU RANDT, J. (2000) Personal discussion RE: Cost of Agricultural drainage for different soil types. 16 February, 2000, 15h00. Tel: (051) 861 1244, Department of Agriculture, Glen.

DWAF (DEPARTMENT OF WATER AFFAIRS AND FORESTRY) (1993) South African Water Quality Guidelines. (First Edition). Volume 4: Agricultural use. The Government printer: Pretoria

DWAF (1996) South African Water Quality Guidelines, (2nd edn.). Volume 4: Agricultural use. The Government printer: Pretoria

DWAF (1998) Water quality aspects: Orange River. Volume 1: Expected water quality changes. Orange River Development Project Preplanning study, PD000/00/5997

DWAF (1998) Water quality aspects: Orange River. Volume 3: Assessment of Water Quality Monitoring. Orange River Development Project Preplanning study, PD000/00/5997

ENGEL, B.A., SRINIVASAN, R., ARNOLD, D., REWERTS, C. & BROWN, S.J. (1993) Non-point Source (NPS) Pollution Modelling using models integrated with Geographic Information Systems (GIS). Water Science and Technology 28(3-5): 685-690

FEINERMAN, E. & YARON, D. (1983) Economics of Irrigation Water Mixing Within a Farm Framework. Water Resources Research, Vol.19, No.2, p.337-345, April 1983.

FEINERMAN, E. (1994) Value of information on crop response function to soil salinity in a farm-level optimisation model. Agricultural Economics 10: 233-243

FRANCOIS & MAAS, E.V. (1994). *Crop Response and management on Salt-effected soils.* In: (Ed. M. Pessarakli) Handbook of plant and crop stress. Marcel Dekker, Inc.: NY.

GARDNER, R.L. & YOUNG, R.L. (1988) Assessing Strategies for Control of Irrigation-Induced Salinity in the Upper Colorado River Basin. American Journal of Agricultural Economics, p.37-49, February 1988.

GOUWS, J.A., NEL, P. & BROODRYK, S.W. (1998). Quantifying the impact of salinisation of South Africa's water resources with special reference to economic effects. Volume 3: Agricultural sector. Draft document for the WRC by Urban Econ.

HEROLD, C.E. & BAILEY, A.K. (1996). Long Term Salt Balance of the Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme. A Report To the Water Research Commission. Sandton: Stewart Scott Incorporated (Consulting Engineers).

HEYNIKE, J. J. C. (1987). Salination of Vaal River Water: Economic Effects. (A Desk Study). A Water Resource Commission Report.

JOHNSTON, M.A. (1994) An Evaluation of the Four-Electrode and electromagnetic induction techniques of soil salinity measurement. Water Research Commission Report No. 269/1/94. South Africa

JOHNSON, S.L., ADAMS, R.M. & PERRY, G.M. (1991) The on-farm costs of Reducing Groundwater Pollution. Amer. J. Agr. Econ. November 1991: 1063-1072

KIJNE, J.W., PRATHAPAR, S.A, WOPEREIS, M.C.S. & SAHRAWAT, K.L. (1998) How to Manage Salinity in Irrigated Lands: A Selective Review with Particular Reference to Irrigation in Developing Countries. SWIM Paper 2. International Irrigation Management Institute. Sri Lanka.

KNAPP, K.C. (1992) Irrigation Management and Investment Under Saline, Limited Drainage Conditions 3. Policy Analysis and Extensions. Water Resources Research 28:12 p3099-3109

LEE, D. J. & HOWITT, R. E. (1996). Modelling Regional Agricultural Production and Salinity Control Alternatives for Water Quality Policy Analysis. Amer. J. Agr. Econ. 78 (Feb. 1996):41-53.

MAAS. E.V. (1990) Crop Salt Tolerance. In K.K.Tanyi (ed.) Agricultural Salinity Assessment and Management. Am. Soc. of Civ. Eng., NY.

MAAS, E.V. & HOFFMAN, G.J. (1977) Crop salt tolerance – current assessment. *ASCE Journal of Irrigation and Drainage*. Div.103(IR2):115-134.

MAAS, E.V., HOFFMAN, G.J., CHABA, G.D., POSS, J.A. & SHANNEN, M.C. (1983) Salt Sensitivity of Corn at Various Growth Stages Irrigation Science 4:5-57.

MARSHALL, G. R. & JONES, R. E. (1997). Significance of Supply Response for Estimating Agricultural Costs of Soil Salinity. Agricultural Systems, 53:231-252.

McCARL, B.A. (1998) GAMSCHK Version 1.3 Developed by Dr.Bruce McCarl, mccarl@tamu.edu, Texas A&M University

McCAULEY, G. N. (1994). Evaluation of the Impact of No Salt Water Barrier in the Neches River on Agricultural and Non-Agricultural Water Users. Unpublished report to the Lower Neches Valley Authority (LNVA).

MOOLMAN, J. & QUIBELL, G. (1995). Salinity problems at the Douglas Weir and Lower Riet River. Institute for Water Quality Studies – DWAF. Report Number N/C900/29/DIQ1495

MOORE, C.V., SNYDER, J.H. & SUN, P. (1974) Effects of Colorado River Water Quality and Supply on Irrigated Agriculture. Water Resources Research, Vol.10, No.2, p.137-144, April 1974.

MURTAGH, B.A.* & GILL, P.E., MURRAY, W., SAUNDERS, M. A. & WRIGHT, H.H. (1996) GAMS/MINOS 5.4, Aug 1, 1996 002.105.033-039.030 386/486 DOS-W. *University of New South Wales & Systems Optimisation Laboratory, Stanford University.

NEGAHBAN, B., MOSS C.B., JONES, J.W., ZANG, J., BOGGESS, W.D. & CAMPBELL, K.L. (1996) Optimal field management for regional water quality planning. Third International Conference/Workshop on Integrating GIS and Environmental Modelling. January 21-25. Santa Fe, New Mexico.

NEL, J. P. (1995). Kriteria vir besproeingswater van gronde in die Rietrivier en Laer Vaalrivier wat deur die Oranje-Rietkanaal bedien word. Instituut vir Grond, Klimaat en Water. Verslag Nr. GW/A/95/5

OSTER, J.D. (1994) Irrigation with poor quality water. Agricultural Water Management 25:271-297

OSTER, J.D. (2000) Irrigation Sustainability. Paper presented at the 6th International Micro-Irrigation Congress. 22-27 October 2000. Cape Town.

OVIB (1997-2001) Personal communication. BRUWER, W., OVIB manager, Tel: (053) 298- 2112, e-mail: aqua@douglas.co.za, Douglas.

PERRY, J. & VANDERKLEIN, E. (1996). Water Quality: Management of a Natural Resource. Massachusetts: Blackwell Science.

PERCIA, C., ORON, G. & MEHREZ, A. (1997) Optimal Operation of Regional System with Diverse Water Quality Sources. Journal of Water Resources Planning and Management, Vol.123, No.2, p.105-114, March/April 1997.

PRATHAPAR, S.A., MEYER, W.S., MADDEN, J.C. & ALOCILJÁ, E. (1997) SWAGMAN Options: A Hierarchical Multicriteria Framework to Identify Profitable Land Uses that Minimize Water Table Rise and Salinisation. Applied Mathematics and Computation 83:217-240 May 1997. Elsevier Science Inc., NY.

RAGAB, R. (2001) Constraints and applicability of irrigation scheduling under limited water resources, variable rainfall and saline conditions. Downloaded 4 April 2001, http://www.fao.org/docrep/w4367e/w4367e0i.htm#TopOfPage Thematic paper, Institute of Hydrology, Wallingford, UK

RHOADES, J.D., KANDIAH, A. MASHALI, A.M. (1992) The use of Saline Waters for Crop Production. FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper 48: Rome.

RHOADES, J.D., CHANDUVI, F. & LESCH, S. (1999) Soil Salinity Assessment: Methods and interpretation of electrical conductivity measurements. FAO Irrigation and Drainage paper 57. Rome, Italy. ISSN 0254-5284

ROSEGRANT, M.W. (WWW - 1998) Dealing with water scarcity in the next Century http://www.cgiar.org/ifpri/2020/briefs/number21.htm?TOP

SAWQ Guidelines. (1993). See DEPARTMENT OF WATER AFFAIRS AND FORESTRY.

SECKLER, D., BARKER, R. & AMARASINGHE, U. (1999) Water Scarcity in the Twenty-first Century. International Journal of Water Resources Development Volume: 15 Number: 1 Page: 29 – 42. Carfax publishers.

SYMINGTON, H. N. (1993). Alternatiewe bestuursstrategieë tydens toestande van wissellende watervoorsiening in die Vaalhartsbesproeiingsgebied. M.Sc. Verhandeling, U.O.F.S. Bloemfontein

TAMU AGNEWS. (1998). Irrigation Water Quality Standards and Salinity Management Texas A&M University Internet Site. http://agnews.tamu.edu/drought/DRGHTPAK/SALINITY/HTM

TANJI, K.K. (Editor) (1990) Agricultural Salinity Assessment and Management. Manuals and Reports on Engineering Practise No. 71. American Society of Civil Engineers: NY.

TIETENBERG, T.H. (1992) Environmental and Natural Resource Economics. Third Edition. Harper Collins Publishers, NY.

VAN HEERDEN, P.S., CROSBY, C.T. & CROSBY, C.P. (2000) Using SAPWAT to Estimate Water Requirements of Crops in Selected Irrigation Areas Managed by the Orange-Vaal and Orange-Riet Water Users Association. WRC Report TT 163/01

VAN STADEN, J.J. (2000) Personal communication RE: Irrigation and drainage costs and efficiencies. UFS, Bloemfontein.

VILJOEN, M.F., SYMINGTON, H.M. & BOTHA, S.J. (1992). Verwantskappe tussen waterbeperkings en finansiële gevolge in die Vaalrivierwatervoorsieningsgebied met spesiale verwysing na besproeingsboerderye in die Vaalharts gebied. (Relationships between water restrictions and the resultant financial effects for the Vaal River water supply area with special reference to the Vaalharts area) Deel 2. W.N.K Verslag No 288/2/92.

WIID, J.A.(1999) Personal communication RE: Irrigation scheduling. GWK Ltd. Tel: (053) 298 1910. Date: 25/11/99, Douglas.

WOLFF-PIGGOTT, B. (1994) Coupling Geographical Information systems and Catchment Hydrological Models. M.Sc. Thesis, University of Stellenbosch.

# LITERATURE REVIEWED


AL-DADAH, J.Y. (1999) Irrigation scheduling to control soil salinity and nitrate leaching. Palestine water authority. International Water & Irrigation. 19:3 p31-38.

ANNANDALE, J.G., JOVANOVIC, N.Z., BENADÈ, N. & TANNER, P.D. (1999). Modelling the long-term effect of irrigation with gypsiferous water on soil and water resources. Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment 76, 109-119.

AYRES, R.U. (1996) Statistical Measures of Unsustainability. Ecological Economics 16, 239-255

BATH, A.J., DE SMIDT, K.O., GÖRGENS, A.H.M. & LARSEN, E.J. (1997). The applicability of hydrodynamic reservoir models for water quality management of stratified water bodies in South Africa: Application of DYRESM and CE-QUAL-W2. WCR Report No 304/2/97. Ninham Shand (Pty) Ltd.

BAUER, C.J. (WWW – 3/1999) WATER MARKETS AND THE PRINCIPLES OF DUBLIN Paper prepared for Miguel Solanes, United Nations Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean, on behalf of the Global Water Partnership. Dept. of Environmental Science, Policy, and Management University of California, Berkeley http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

BEARE, S.C., BELL, R. & FISHER, B.S. (1998) Determining the value of water: The Role of Risk, Infrastructure Constraints, and Ownership. Amer. J. Agr. Econ. 80(number 5, 1998):916-940

BELTRÁN, J.M. (1999) Irrigation with Saline Water: Benefits and Environmental Impact. Agricultural Water Management, 40 p183-194. Elsevier Science.

BEUSTER, J., GÖRGENS, A.H.M. & GREYLING, A.J. (1990a) Development of a Daily Hydro-salinity Model (DISA). Report No, H000/00/0790. Department of Water Affairs and Forestry. Pretoria

BEUSTER, J., GÖRGENS, A.H.M. & GREYLING, A.J.(1990b) DISA users guide. Report No, H000/00/0690. Department of Water Affairs and Forestry. Pretoria

BHATIA, R. (WWW – 3/1999) Water allocation among competing uses: an application of integrated water resources management to Subernarekha River Basin, India http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

BOSMAN, R. & GWK Bpk. (1997) Water uit ons riviere vir die Douglas-Noordkaap-Area: Hoe ons dit benodig en benut tot voordeel van ons gemeenkap, provinsie, land en al sy mense.

BOTES, J.H.F.(1994) A simulation and optimisation approach to estimating the value of irrigation information for decision-makers under risk. Ph.D. Thesis, Department Agricultural Economics, University of the Free Orange State. Bloemfontein.

BRANSCHEILD, V. (1989) Irrigation Water Management Briefs: 100 Collected Papers. FAO Investment Centre.

BRANSCHEILD, V. (Feb. 1997) Irrigation Investment Briefs. TCI Occasional Paper Series No.4. FAO, Investment Centre Division: Rome.

BROOK, A., KENDRICK, D., MEERAUS, A. & RAMAN, R. (1997) GAMS Release 2.25 Version 92 Language Guide. GAMS Development Corporation, Washington DC.

BUREAU OF SOILS AND WATER MANAGEMENT (1995) Proceedings of the international workshop on integrated soil management for sustainable use of salt affected soils.

CASSELL, E.A. & CLAUSEN, J.C. (1993) Dynamic Simulation Modelling for Evaluating Water Quality Response to Agricultural BMP Implementation. Water Science and Technology, 28(3-5): 635-648

CHEN, D.Y., McCUTCHEON, S.C., RASMUSSEN, T.C., NUTTER, W.L. & CARSEL, R.F. (1993) Integrating water Quality Modelling with Ecological Risk Assessment for non-point Source Pollution Control: A Conceptual Framework. Water Science and Technology, 28(3-5): 431-440.

CHHABRA, R. (1996) Soil Salinity and water Quality. AA Balkema Publishers, Brookfield: Rotterdam.

CHOE, K.A., WHITTINGTON, D. & LAURIA, D.T. (1996) The Economic Benefits of Surface Water quality Improvements in Developing Countries: A Case Study of Davao, Philippines. Land Economics, 72(4): 519-537, November 1996.

COOPER, J. C. & KEIM, R.W. (1996). Incentive Payments to Encourage Farmer Adoption of Water Quality Protection Practices. Amer. J. Agr. Econ. 78 (Feb. 1996):54-64.

DATTA, K.K., DE JONG, C. & SINGH, O.P. (2000) Reclaiming salt-affected land through drainage in Haryana, India: A financial analysis. Agricultural Water Management 46, 55-71.

DELLINK, R. (May 2000). GAMS for environmental-economic modelling. Environmental Economics Group, Department of Social Science, Wageningen University.

DENT, M.C. (1996) Individual and organisational behavioural issues relating to water resources simulation modelling and its role in integrated catchment management in Southern Africa. A Research Report presented to Graduate School of Business Leadership University of South Africa

GHD MANAGEMENT, ENGINEERING, ENVIRONMENT (Feb 1999). Salinity Impact Study. Final report for the Murray-Darling Commission. NSW Agriculture, Dubbo, Australia.

DINAR, A., RHOADES, J.D., NASH, P. & WAGGONER, B.L. (1991) Production Functions Relating Crop Yield, Water Quality and Quantity, Soil Salinity and Drainage Volume. Agricultural Water Management, 19, p.51-66. Elsevier.

DINAR, A. & ZILBERMAN, D. (Editors) (1991) *The Economics and Management of Water and Drainage in Agriculture*. Kluver Academic Publishers. ISBN: 0-7923-9171-3

DORFMAN, R., JAOBY, H.D. & THOMAS, H.A. (1972) Models for Managing Regional Water Quality. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts

DOUGHERTY, T.C. & HALL, A.W. (1995) Environmental Impact Assessment of Irrigation and Drainage Projects. FAO Irrigation and Drainage Paper 53: Rome.

DUDLEY, N.J. & MUSGRAVE, W.F. (1988) Capacity Sharing of Water Reservoirs. Water Resources Research 24(5): 649-658

DU PLESSIS, M.C.F. & VAN DER MERWE, A.J. (1970) Herwinning van sout-alkalie gronde van die Rietrivierbesproeiingskeme. Department of Agriculture, Technical Report No. 95.

EISEL, L.M. (1972) Chance Constrained Reservoir Model. Water Resources Research. 8(2): 339-347

EL-NAZER, T. & McCARL, B.A. (1986) The Choice of Crop Rotation: A Modelling Approach and Case Study. Amer. J. Agr. Econ (February 1986)

ERVIN, D. (1997). Agriculture, Trade and the Environment: Anticipating the Policy Challenges Directorate for Food, Agriculture and Fisheries, OECD: Paris.

FANGQUAN, M. (1997) Expectations and strategies for food security in China by the early 21st century. Paper represented at the 65th IFA annual Conference in Beijing.

FAO. (1995). *Use of Remote Sensing in Irrigation and Drainage. Water Reports No.4. Proceedings of the Expert* Consultation. Montpellier, France, 2-4 November 1993. Rome: Cemagref.

FERRER, F. & STOCKLE, C.O.(2001) A Model for Assessing Crop Response and Water Management in Saline Conditions. Downloaded 4 April 2001: http://www.fao.org/docrep/w4367e/w4367e0j.htm

FREDERICK, K.D. (1998) Marketing Water: The obstacles and the impetus. Resources for the future. 132: 7-10

FRENKEL, H. & MEIRI, A. (Editors) (1985) Soil Salinity: Two Decades of Research in Irrigated Agriculture. Van Nostrand Reinhold Company: NY.

GARDNER, R.L. & YOUNG, R.L. (1988) Assessing Strategies for Control of Irrigation-Induced Salinity in the Upper Colorado River Basin. American Journal of Agricultural Economics, p.37-49, February 1988.

GAHASSEMI, F., JAKEMAM, A.J. & NIX, H.A. (1995) Salinisation of Land & Water Resources: Human Causes, Extent, Management and case studies. Centre for Resource & Environmental Studies. The Australian National University: Canberra.

GILL, P.E., MURRAY, W., MURTAGH, B.A., SAUNDERS, MA. & WRIGHT M.H. (1988) "GAMS/MINOS", APPENDIX D in Brooke A., Kendrick D. and Meeraus A., GAMS: A User's Guide, The Scientific Press, Redwood City, California. http://www.gams.com/

GLOBAL WATER PARTNERSHIP (GWP) (WWW – 3/1999) Food security through irrigation: what analyses are required for policy makers? Note for discussion at the GWP TAC meeting in the ASEAN region. Manila, Philippines, 8-12 June 1997. http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

GOMBOSO, J., HERTZLET, G. & GHASSEMI, F. (1999) Salinity Management: Coupling Physical and Economic Modelling Approaches. In: Modelling Change in Integrated Economic and Environmental Systems. Edited by Mahendrarajah, S., Jakeman, A.J. & McAleer, M. John Wiley and Sons Ltd.

GÖRGENS, A.H.M., BATH, A.J., VENTER, A., DE SMIDT, K. & MARAIS, G v R (1993) The applicability of hydrodynamic reservoir models for water quality management of stratified water bodies in South Africa. WRC Report No. 304/1/93 ISBN 1 86845 004 X. Pretoria

GWP (WWW – 3/1999) The Dublin statement and report on the conference.International Conference on Water and the Environment: Development issues for the 21st century 26-31 January 1992, Dublin, Ireland http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

HÄGGLÖF, K. (1996) The implementation of the stochastic branch and bound method for applications in river basin Water Quality Management. Working Paper for the International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis

HANKS, R.J. & MILLS, R.W. (1980) Modelling Crop Response to Irrigation: In relation to Soils, Climate and Salinity. International Irrigation Information Centre. IIIC Publication No. 6.Keterpress: Jerusalem.

HANSON, J.D., AHUJA, L.R., SHAFFER, M.D., ROJAS, K.W., DeCOURSEY, D.G., FARAHANI, H. & JOHNSON, K. (1998) RZWQM: Simulating the Effects of Management on Water Quality and Crop Production. Agricultural Systems 57(2): 161-195

HANSON, B., GRATTAN, S.R. & FULTON, A. (1993) Agricultural Salinity and Drainage. A Handbook for Water Managers. Water management handbook series, publication number 93-01. University of California, Davis.

HOAG, D.L. & HUGHES-POPP, J.S. (1996 ?) Theory and Practise of Pollution Credit Trading in Water Quality Management. Review of Agricultural Economics 19(2): 252-262

HOLMES, J.W. & TALSMA, T. (Editors) (1981) Land and Stream Salinity. Developments in Agricultural Engineering 2: Elsevier.

JOVANOVIC, N.Z. & ANNANDALE, J.G. (1998). Soil and aerial environment affects crop salt tolerance – a modelling study. Applied Plant Science 12,2.

KANDIAH, A., FRENKEN, K. & WOLTER, H. (WWW – 3/1999) Water and food security: Some thoughts on strategy and practical actions following the Summit. GPW Technical Advisory Committee – Asian Region. http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

KATERJI, N., VAN HOORN, J.W., HAMDY, A. & MASTRORILLI, M. (2000) Salt tolerance classification of crops according to soil salinity and to water stress day index. Agricultural Water Management, 43(1)2000. P. 99-109.

KHAN, S., XEVI, E., O'CONNELL, N., MADDEN, J.C. & ZHOU,F. (2000) A farm scale Hydrologic Economic Optimisation Model to Manage Waterlogging and Salinity in Irrigation Areas. CSIRO Land and Water, Griffith, NSW, Australia.

KINDLER, J. (WWW – 3/1999) The environmental dimensions of integrated water resource management. arsaw University of Technology. April/May 1997. http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

KIJNE, J. (WWW - 1999) Water for food for Sub-Saharan Africa. Article prepared for FAO. http://www.fao.org/waicent/FaoInfo/Agricult/AGL/AGLW/webpub/watfood1.htm

KLINTWORTH, H. (1949) Riet River Irrigation Scheme. Survey of certain waterlogged areas on the settlement. SIRI Report No. 275, Pretoria.

KLOHN, W.E. & APPELGREN, B.G. (WWW – 3/1999) Challenges in the field of water resources management in agriculture. ood and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations http://www.fao.org/ag/agl/aglw/webpub/ath_kln/ATH_KLN1.htm

LAMSAL, K., PAUDYAL, G.N. & SAEED, M.(1999) Model for Assessing Impact of Soil Salinity on Soil Water Availability and Crop Yield. Agricultural Water Management, 41, p57-70.

LANG, H. (1997) Options for a new water rights system. Working document prepared for the Zimbabwe Government and presented during a visit to the UOVS, 4 November 1999.

LANG, H. (1999) The definition of water permits and the management of reservoirs in Zimbabwe - present state and future options. Working document prepared for the Zimbabwe Government and presented during a visit to the UOVS, 4 November 1999.

LEE, D.J., HOWITT, R.E. & MARIÑO, M.A. (1993) A Stochastic Model of River water quality: Application to Salinity in the Colorado River. Water Resources Research, Vol.29, No.12, p.3917-3923, December 1993.

LENCE, B.J. & RUSZCZYNSKI, A. (1996) Managing water quality under uncertainty: Application of a new stochastic branch and bound Method. Working Paper for the International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis (June 1996)

LETEY, J. & DINAR, A. (1986) Simulated Crop Water Production Functions of Several Crops when Irrigated with Saline Waters. Hilgardia, vol.54, No.1 January 1986.

MADRAMOOTOO, C.A., JOHNSTON, W.R. & WILLARDSON, L.S. (1997) Management of Agricultural Drainage Water Quality. FAO/ICID-CIID Water Reports 13: Rome.

MARÉ, H. G. & VAN ROOYEN, P. G. (1995). Economic Viability of Irrigation Determined by Using Stochastic Water Resource Analysis Techniques. Paper presented at the 7th National Hydrology conference: Grahamstown.

MARSHALL, G. & JONES, R. (1992) On-farm economics of laser landforming and topsoiling for rice farming in the Murrumbidgee Irrigation Area. Agricultural Economics Bulletin 10, NWS Agriculture.

MARSHALL, G. (1989) Rising watertables, salinisation, and irrigated agriculture in the Murray Basin: An Economic Perspective. Series No: 6/89, NSW Agriculture & Fisheries, Division of Rural & Resource Economics.

MDBC (1998) Structural adjustment pressure in irrigated broadacre farming in the Southern Murray-Darling Basin. Natural Resource Management Strategy, MDBC I&E Project No. I6041. Final Report to the Murray-Darling basin Commission. Prepared by: Economic Services Unit, NSW Agriculture and Economics Branch, Department of Natural Resources and Environment. June 1998.

MCKINNEY, D.C., CAI, X., ROSEGRANT, M.W., RINGLER, C. & SCOTT, C.A.(2000). Modelling Water Resource Management at the Basin Level: Review and Future Directions. SWIM Paper 6, IWMI System-Wide Initiative on water Management, Sri-Lanka.

MORENO, G. & SUNDING, D. (2000) Irrigation Technology Investment when the price of Water is Stochastic. Presented at the American Agricultural Economics Annual Meeting, August 2000

MUELLER, U., SCHILIZZI, S., TRAN, T. (1999) The dynamics of phase farming in dryland salinity abatement. Australian Journal of Agricultural and Resource Economics 43(1): 51-67

MURRAY, G. (1956) 'n Ondersoek na die versuiping en verbrakking van gronde op die Rietriviernedersetting. NIGB Report No. 482/259/56, Pretoria.

OSTER, J.(1999) SLPHYCHEM Notes. http://esce.ucr.edu/OSTER/Slphnot.html

PEGRAM, G.C., QUIBELL, G. & GÖRGENS, A.H.M. (WWW-1999) The Development of a Guide for the Assessment of Nonpoint Sources in South Africa. Water Resources Commission. Http://www.wrc.org.za/sanciahs/quibell.htm

PLANT, R.E., KERBY, T.A., ZELINSKI, L.J. & MONK, D.S. (1998) A qualitative simulation model for cotton growth and development. Computers and electronics in Agriculture 20: 165-183

POSTEL, Sandra. (1999) Pillar of Sand: Can the Irrigation Miracle Last? World Watch Institute. W.W. Norton & Company: NY.

PRETI, E. & LUBELLO, C. (1993) The distributed modelling of agricultural non-point pollution at basin scale: Experimental research and model validation. Water Science and Technology 28(3-5): 669-674

QUERNER, E.P. & MORÀBITO, J.A(2000) Evaluation of Salinity Control Measures in Irrigation Areas with the Regional Hydrological Model SIMGRO. Page 10, GRID Issue 15, February 2000.

RAGAB, R. (2000) An Integrated Modelling Approach for Irrigation Water Management Using Saline and Non-Saline Water: The SALTMED Model. Conference paper, sixth International Micro-Irrigation Congress, 22-27 October 2000. South Africa: Cape Town.

RAJU, K.S. & KUMAR, D.N. (1999) Multicriteria decision-making in irrigation planning. Agricultural Systems (62)2 pp. 117-129 http://www.elsevier.nl:80/inca/publications/store/4/0/5/8/5/1/

RICHARDSON, J.W., AND C.J. NIXON. (1981).The Farm Level Income Simulation Model: FLIPSIM. Departmental Technical Report, DTR No. 81-2, Department of Agricultural Economics, Texas A&M University.http://afpc1.tamu.edu/models.htm

ROBINSON, D., SINGH, J., MADDEN, J. CHRISTEN, E. & BLACKWELL, J. (2001) SBC economic evaluation spreadsheet model users manual. DRAFT REPORT. CSIRO Land and Water, Griffith NSW Australia.

ROSEGRANT, M. W. (1997) Water Resources in the Twenty-First Century: Challenges and Implications for Action. Food, Agriculture, and the Environment Discussion Paper 20. International Food Policy Research Institute: Washington, D.C.

ROSEGRANT, M.W., RINGLER, C. & GERPACIO, R.V. (WWW – 3/1999) Water and land resources and global food supply.International Food Policy Research Institute International Irrigation Management Institute May 1997 http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

ROSSOUW, J.N. & HOHLS, D.R. (WWW - 1998) Publication of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry water Quality database on CD-Rom
http://www-wrc.ccwr.ac.za/sanciahs/rossouw.htm

RUTHERFORD, R.J., SANDERSON, K.W., ANTROBUS, C.A. & BADENHORST, J.W. of Loxton, Venn and Associates.(1999) Vaal River Irrigation Study. Department of Water Affairs and Forestry. Directorate Water Resources. Pretoria. PC000/00/21599

RUTHERFORD, R.J., SANDERSON, K.W., ANTROBUS, C.A., WATSON, M.D. & RADEMEYER, J.I. (1999) Irrigation in the Vaal River catchment (crop water use efficiency) Extracts from a study undertaken for the Water Resources Planning Directorate of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry

SANDSTRÖM, K. & BHATIA, R. (WWW – 3/1999) Integrated water resources management: A preliminary review of allocation approaches and nistitutional mechanisms. orking Paper http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

SATPLES, R.C. & TOENNIESSEN, G.H. (Editors) (1984) Salinity Tolerance in Plants: Strategies for Crop Improvement. John Wiley & Sons: NY

SAVENIJE, H.H.G. (WWW - 1999) The role of green water in food production in Sub-Saharan Africa. Article prepared for FAO
http://www.fao.org/waicent/FaoInfo/Agricult/AGL/AGLW/webpub/greenwa1.htm

SCABOLCS, I. (1989) Salt Affected Soils. CRC Press: Florida

SHELA, O.N. (WWW – 3/1999) WATER RESOURCE MANAGEMENT AND SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT IN SOUTHERN AFRICA Issues for consideration in implementing the Dublin Declaration and Agenda 21 in Southern Africa Global Water Partnership Workshop, 6-7 November 1996, Windhoek, Namibia http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

SMIT, M. (1996) 'n Dinamiese lineêre programmeringsbeplanningsmodel vir gemengde vee-weiding-graanboerderye. Agrekon 35(3): 131-140

SMITH, E.G. & SHAYKEWICH, C.F. (1990) The economics of soil erosion and conservation on six soil groupings in Manitoba. Canadian Journal of Agricultural Economics 38: 215-231

SMITH, M., ALLEN, R. & PEREIRA, L. (1996) Revised FAO methodology for crop water requirements. http://www.fao.org

SOLANES, M. & VILLAREAL, F.G. (WWW – 3/1999) The Dublin principals for water as reflected in a comparative assessment of institutional and legal arrangements for integrated water resources management. Technical Advisory Committee. Global Water Partnership http://www.gwpforum.org/gwpef/gwpfiles.nsf?OpenDatabase

STEVENS, R.M., HARVEY, G., PARTINGTON, D.L. & COOMBE, B.G. (1999) Irrigation of grapevines with saline water at different growth stages. 1. Effects on soil, vegetative growth and yield. Australian Journal of Agricultural Resources 50: 343-355

STILES, G. (WWW - 1999) Demand-side Management, Conservation, and Efficiency in the use of Africa's Water Resources. http://www.idrc.ca/books/focus/804/chap1.html

TALSMA, T. & PHILIP, J.R. (Editors) (1971) Salinity and Water Use. A National Symposium on Hydrology, Sponsored by the Australian Academy of Science, 2-4 November 1971: Macmillan Press.

TAVIV, I., HEROLD, C., FOSTER, S., ROTH, J. & CLEMENT, K. (1999) A philosophy and methodology for the implementation of the polluter pays principle. WRC Report No. 793/1/99 ISBN 1 86845 612 9. Pretoria

TAYLOR, D.B. & ZUHAIR, S.M. (1998) Chance-constrained Programming: A simple way to incorporate risk in a linear programming model. Handout in AGEC 5124 class at Virginia Tech, USA

THOMANN, R. V. & MUELLER, J. A. (1987) Principles of Surface Water Quality Modelling and Control. New York: HarperCollins.

VAN BIEN, P. & VAN BO, N. (1997) Future food security and agricultural productivity in Vietnam through policies and measures for a strong fertilizer sector. 65th IFA Annual Conference - Beijing, May 19-22

VAN NIEKERK, P. H., STOFBERG, F. A. & WATSON, M. D.(1995) Replanning the Orange River Project. For the Department of Water Affairs & Forestry. Paper presented at the 7th National Hydrology conference: Grahamstown

VAN RENSBURG, R.J. & BREDENKAMP, B.V. (1997) Optimising nursery operation schedules with multi-period linear programming. Southern African Forestry Journal 79: 7-11

WEINBERG, M. & KLING, C.L. (1996) Uncoordinated agricultural and environmental policymaking: An application to irrigated agriculture in the West. Amer. J. Agr. Econ 78: 65-78

WINPENNY, J.T. (WWW - 1999) Managing water scarcity for water security. http://www.fao.org/waicent/FaoInfo/Agricult/AGL/AGLW/webpub/scarcit1.html

W.N.K Verslag No 288/2/92 (1992). Verwantskappe tussen waterbeperkings en finansiële gevolge in die Vaalrivierwatervoorsieningsgebied met spesiale verwysing na besproeingsboerderye in die Vaalharts gebied. Deel 2.

WOLFF-PIGGOTT, B. (1994) Coupling Geographical Information systems and Catchment Hydrological Models. M.Sc. Thesis, University of Stellenbosch.

WORLD WATCH NEWS RELEASE (1999) Emerging water shortages threaten food supplies, Regional Peace. July 17, 1999 http://www.worldwatch.org/alerts/990717.html

WU, J.J., MAPP, H.P. & BERNADO, D.J. (1996) Integrating Economic and Physical Models for Analysing Water Quality Impacts of Agricultural Policies in the High Plains. Review of Agricultural Economics Vol.18, No.3, p.353-372, September 1996.

XTH WORLD WATER CONGRESS (2000) Final Program and book of abstracts. 12-16 March 2000. Melbourne Convention Centre. (Also included: CD of conference proceedings).

YAKOWITZ, D.S., STONE, J.J., LANE, L.J., HEILMAN, P., MASTERSON, J., ABOLT, J. & IMAM, B. (1993) A decision support system for evaluating the effects of alternative farm management systems on water quality and economics. Water science and Technology 28(3-5): 47-54

YARON, D. (Editor) (1981) Salinity in irrigation and water resources. Marcel Decker Inc.: NY.

YARON, D. & OLIAN, A. (1973) Application of Dynamic Programming in Markov Chains to the Evaluation of Water Quality in Irrigation. American Journal of Agricultural Economics, p.465-471, August 1973.

YARON, D., BRESLER, E., BIELORAI, H. & HARPINIST, B. (1980) A Model for Optimal Irrigation Scheduling with Saline Water. Water Resources Research, Vol.16, No.2, p.257-262, April 1980.

ZANDER, P. & KaCHELE, H. (1999) Modelling multiple objectives of land use for sustainable development. Agricultural Systems 59: 311-325

# APPENDIX 1. SUB-AREA CASE STUDY FARMER CROP ENTERPRISE BUDGETS USED IN SALMOD, 1999

| *Wheat* | OL | VL | AT | BL | NB | GWK | Ave | Combud |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRICE | 1072 | 1022 | 1060 | 0 | 918 | 780 | 1018 | 650 |
| YIELD | 5 | 6 | 10 | 0 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 8 |
| SEED | 483 | 108 | 1900 | 0 | 247 | 237 | 685 | 182 |
| FERT | 950 | 1388 | 1300 | 0 | 1072 | 1214 | 1177 | 1045 |
| HERB | 158 | 98 | 300 | 0 | 6 | 61 | 141 | 27 |
| PEST | 0 | 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 408 | 5 | 36 |
| INSUR | 125 | 98 | 520 | 0 | 0 | 180 | 248 | 0 |
| HARV | 97 | 1 | 52 | 0 | 52 | 63 | 69 | 93 |
| MHLR | 16 | 16 | 16 | 0 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 16 |
| KWHR | 343 | 343 | 343 | 0 | 343 | 343 | 343 | 343 |
| WAT | 74 | 82 | 211 | 0 | 121 | 111 | 122 | 72 |
| ELEC | 245 | 123 | 253 | 0 | 198 | 345 | 205 | 597 |
| CAP | 87 | 51 | 211 | 0 | 97 | 0 | 111 | 178 |
| FUEL | 142 | 286 | 390 | 0 | 119 | 150 | 234 | 346 |
| MAINT | 393 | 530 | 172 | 0 | 279 | 51 | 343 | 0 |
| LABOR | 507 | 504 | 597 | 0 | 446 | 86 | 514 | 92 |

| *Maize* | OL | VL | AT | BL | NB | GWK | Ave | Combud |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRICE | 599 | 1253 | 570 | 0 | 895 | 580 | 829 | 650 |
| YIELD | 9 | 11 | 9 | 0 | 11 | 12 | 10 | 8 |
| SEED | 255 | 790 | 2000 | 0 | 219 | 411 | 816 | 182 |
| FERT | 1039 | 302 | 3250 | 0 | 1149 | 1346 | 1435 | 1045 |
| HERB | 0 | 294 | 750 | 0 | 6 | 321 | 350 | 27 |
| PEST | 0 | 200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 71 | 200 | 0 |
| INSUR | 0 | 401 | 625 | 0 | 0 | 209 | 513 | 0 |
| HARV | 0 | 0 | 69 | 0 | 52 | 72 | 64 | 93 |
| MHLR | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| KWHR | 329 | 329 | 329 | 329 | 329 | 329 | 329 | 329 |
| WAT | 121 | 330 | 228 | 0 | 95 | 128 | 194 | 72 |
| ELEC | 399 | 499 | 273 | 0 | 157 | 398 | 332 | 597 |
| CAP | 130 | 77 | 126 | 0 | 97 | 0 | 107 | 0 |
| FUEL | 212 | 429 | 234 | 0 | 119 | 236 | 249 | 150 |
| MAINT | 589 | 795 | 103 | 0 | 279 | 0 | 442 | 51 |
| LABOR | 760 | 757 | 358 | 0 | 446 | 75 | 580 | 86 |

| *Groundnuts* | OL | VL | AT | BL | NB | GWK | Ave | Combud |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRICE | 2167 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 864 | 0 | 1516 | 0 |
| YIELD | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| SEED | 1200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 383 | 0 | 792 | 0 |
| FERT | 1333 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 849 | 0 | 1091 | 0 |
| HERB | 67 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 6 | 0 | 36 | 0 |
| PEST | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| INSUR | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| HARV | 67 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 52 | 0 | 63 | 0 |
| MHLR | 312 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 312 | 0 | 312 | 0 |
| KWHR | 343 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 343 | 0 | 343 | 0 |
| WAT | 102 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 82 | 0 | 92 | 0 |
| ELEC | 336 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 135 | 0 | 235 | 0 |
| CAP | 260 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 145 | 0 | 203 | 0 |
| FUEL | 425 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 179 | 0 | 302 | 0 |
| MAINT | 1178 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 419 | 0 | 798 | 0 |
| LABOR | 1521 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 669 | 0 | 1095 | 0 |

| *Potato* | OL | VL | AT | BL | NB | GWK | Ave | Combud |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRICE | 633 | 955 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 794 | 1125 |
| YIELD | 30 | 45 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 38 | 28 |
| SEED | 1500 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1500 | 0 |
| FERT | 1000 | 17257 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 9129 | 0 |
| HERB | 700 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 700 | 0 |
| PEST | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| INSUR | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| HARV | 283 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 227 | 54 |
| MHLR | 424 | 424 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 424 | 424 |
| KWHR | 500 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 500 | 500 |
| WAT | 141 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 141 | 0 |
| ELEC | 466 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 466 | 0 |
| CAP | 521 | 307 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 414 | 178 |
| FUEL | 849 | 1717 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1283 | 346 |
| MAINT | 2356 | 3179 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2768 | 0 |
| LABOR | 3041 | 3026 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3034 | 92 |

| *Cotton* | OL | VL | AT | BL | NB | GWK | Ave | Combud |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRICE | 0 | 2631 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2631 | 0 |
| YIELD | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| SEED | 0 | 102 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 102 | 0 |
| FERT | 0 | 158 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 158 | 0 |
| HERB | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| PEST | 0 | 71 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 71 | 0 |
| INSUR | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| HARV | 0 | 501 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 501 | 0 |
| MHLR | 0 | 216 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 216 | 0 |
| KWHR | 0 | 329 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 329 | 0 |
| WAT | 0 | 173 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 173 | 0 |
| ELEC | 0 | 262 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 262 | 0 |
| CAP | 0 | 153 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 153 | 0 |
| FUEL | 0 | 859 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 859 | 0 |
| MAINT | 0 | 1590 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1590 | 0 |
| LABOR | 0 | 1513 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1513 | 0 |

| *Lucerne* | OL | VL | AT | BL | NB | GWK | Ave | Combud |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRICE | 413 | 0 | 393 | 375 | 115 | 0 | 324 | 0 |
| YIELD | 15 | 15 | 17 | 15 | 19 | 0 | 16 | 0 |
| SEED | 0 | 0 | 130 | 210 | 116 | 0 | 152 | 0 |
| FERT | 0 | 0 | 228 | 690 | 861 | 0 | 593 | 0 |
| HERB | 0 | 0 | 0 | 188 | 6 | 0 | 97 | 0 |
| PEST | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| INSUR | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| HARV | 0 | 0 | 0 | 60 | 0 | 0 | 56 | 0 |
| MHLR | 56 | 0 | 56 | 56 | 56 | 0 | 56 | 0 |
| KWHR | 357 | 0 | 357 | 357 | 357 | 0 | 357 | 0 |
| WAT | 186 | 0 | 398 | 196 | 82 | 0 | 216 | 0 |
| ELEC | 617 | 0 | 477 | 132 | 136 | 0 | 340 | 0 |
| CAP | 260 | 0 | 506 | 0 | 193 | 0 | 320 | 0 |
| FUEL | 425 | 0 | 937 | 653 | 239 | 0 | 563 | 0 |
| MAINT | 1178 | 0 | 412 | 0 | 558 | 0 | 716 | 0 |
| LABOR | 1521 | 0 | 1433 | 2683 | 892 | 0 | 1632 | 0 |

* Where: PRICE=price(R/t), YIELD=yield(t/ha), SEED=seed costs (R/ha), FERT=fertilizer costs(R/ha), HERB=herbicide costs(R/ha), PEST=pesticide costs(R/ha), INSUR=insurance costs(R/ha), HARV=harvesting costs (R/t), MHLR=Max.hours of labour required, KWHR=kilowatt hours required, WAT=water costs (R/ha), ELEC=electricity costs (R/ha) ,CAP=capital cost(R/ha), FUEL=fuel costs(R/ha), MAINT=maintenance costs (R/ha) and LABOR=labour costs (R/ha)

# APPENDIX 2. LIST OF SALMOD ABBREVIATIONS

| *Abbreviation* | *Ref* | *Key* | *Explanation* |
|---|---|---|---|
| ADDS(DS) | DS | SS | Individual soil drainage status |
| ADS | DS | SE | Artificially drained soils |
| AMT | PLD | SE | Amount |
| APR | T | SE | April |
| AT | SR | SE | Atherton (3) |
| AUG | T | SE | August |
| AY(T) | T | SS | After-Year |
| AYWU | | SC | Allowable After-year water use (%fraction) |
| BL | SR | SE | Bucklands (4) |
| C | | S | Main annual Crops produced in the study area |
| CAP | IO | SE | CAPITAL GOODS repayments |
| CLY | S | SE | Clay soils >45% Clay |
| COFSD | | SC | Total cost of 1 on-farm storage dam (R) |
| COSTDAT | | S | Cost Data |
| COTTON | C | SE | Cotton |
| CPI | IS | SE | Centre Pivot Irrigation System |
| CROP_DATA(C,*) | C,* | T | A table heading for crop data required in SALMOD |
| CROPDAT | | S | Crop Data |
| CSF | | S | Case study farmer data set |
| CSFD(SR,CSF) | SR,CSF | T | Sub-area land and cost data |
| CTI(IS) | IS | SS | Individual irrigation system |
| DEC | T | SE | December |
| DIS | IS | SE | DRIP Irrigation System |
| DS | | S | Soil drainage status |
| DTI(IS) | IS | SS | Individual irrigation system |
| EBTable(IO,C,SR) | | T | Enterprise budget table for OVIB region |
| ECRW | | SC | Electrical conductivity of rain water (mS per m) |
| ELEC | IO | SE | Electricity pumping costs in R per ha |
| EVAPY | | SC | Evaporation - surface water (ha-mm\dam\yr) |
| F | | S | Water Fines |
| FAY(F) | F | SS | After-Year fines |
| FC | | SE | Sub-area representative farm non-allocatable anual fixed costs (R per annum) |
| FEB | T | SE | February |
| FERT | IO | SE | Fertilizer costs in R per ha |
| FIS | IS | SE | Flood Irrigation System |
| FLR | | SC | Fuel cost:lubrication cost ratio (%) |
| FMR | | SC | Fuel cost: maintenance cost ratio (%) |
| FORCE | | SC | A constant used to eliminate an option if too high |
| FP | | SC | Fuel price (R \ litre) |
| FPY(F) | F | SS | Pre-year Fines |
| FRAY(FAY) | | P | After-year stepped fine (% of normal R per mm added to mm water |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | overused in each step |
| FRPY(FPY) | | P | Fixed Pre-year fine (R per mm) water overused |
| FTI(IS) | IS | SS | Individual irrigation system |
| FUEL | IO | SE | Fuel and lubrication costs calculated from farmer data |
| fuel | COSTDAT | SE | Fuel costs according to kWh |
| FVC | COSTDAT | SE | Fixed variable costs |
| GN(C) | C | SS | Individual Crop |
| GRAD | CROPDAT | SE | Gradient |
| GRNDNUT | C | SE | Groundnut |
| GWK | SR | SE | Regional budgets |
| HARV | IO | SE | Harvesting costs in R/ha |
| HC | COSTDAT | SE | Model calculated harvesting costs |
| HERB | IO | SE | Herbicide costs in R/ha |
| IA | | SE | Total current irrigable area (ha) |
| INSUR | IO | SE | Insurance costs in R/ha |
| INT | COSTDAT | SE | Interest |
| INT | IO | SE | Interest on production capital |
| IO | | S | Inputs and Outputs |
| IQ | | SC | Irrigation Quota size (ha-mm per annum per ha) |
| IR | | SE | Current irrigation rights per allocated quota (ha) |
| IS | | S | Type of Irrigation system |
| JAN | T | SE | January |
| JUL | T | SE | July |
| KWHR | IO | SE | Kilowatt hours required |
| LABC | | SE | Average Labour Costs (\person\ 24 working day month)(R) |
| LABOR | IO | SE | Labour costs |
| LDDS(DS) | DS | SS | Individual soil drainage status |
| LDS | DS | SE | Limited drainage soil |
| LF | | S | Leaching fractions |
| LF0 | LF | SE | Leaching fraction, set at 0% |
| LF10 | LF | SE | Leaching fraction, set at 10% |
| LF15 | LF | SE | Leaching fraction, set at 15% |
| LF20 | LF | SE | Leaching fraction, set at 20% |
| LF25 | LF | SE | Leaching fraction, set at 25% |
| LF5 | LF | SE | Leaching fraction, set at 5% |
| LFV(LF) | | P | Assigning values to leaching fraction variable names |
| LMS | S | SE | Loamy Sand soils <15% Clay |
| LMYS(S) | S | SS | Loamy sand only |
| LPKWH | | SC | Litres per kilowatt-hour (litres) |
| LTI | | SC | Long Term loan annual Interest rate (%) |
| LTT | | SC | Long Term loan term for drainage/irrigation (years) |
| LUC(C) | C | SS | Individual Crop |
| LUCERNE | C | SE | Lucerne |
| MAINT | IO | SE | Maintenance and repairs |
| MAINT | COSTDAT | SE | Maintenance |
| MAIZE | C | SE | Maize |

| MAP | T | SE | March |
|---|---|---|---|
| MASC | COSTDAT | SE | Margin above specified costs |
| MAXGN | | SC | Maximum area to plant to groundnuts (%fraction) |
| MAXPOT | | SC | Maximum area to plant to potatoes (%fraction) |
| MAXRF | | SC | Max. returnflows allowed\ha water right (ha-mm) |
| MAY | T | SE | May |
| MCL | | SE | Maximum Capital Improvement loan availability (R) |
| MEY | COSTDAT | SE | Maximum expected yield |
| MHLR | IO | SE | Man-hours of labour required |
| MPC | | SE | Maximum Production Capital availability (R) |
| NB | SR | SE | New Bucklands(5) |
| NDDS(DS) | DS | SS | Individual soil drainage status |
| NDS | DS | SE | Naturally drained soils |
| NODRIP(C) | C | SS | Can't drip irrigate Irrigation |
| NOTLMS(S) | S | SS | Not loamy sand |
| NOV | T | SE | November |
| NPDS(DS) | DS | SS | No potatoes to be drained on soils with this drainage status |
| NZERO | | SC | A very small constant used when dividing by 0 |
| OCT | T | SE | October |
| OL | SR | SE | Olierivier (1) |
| PC | | SE | Pumping costs - will vary within sub-area (R per mm) |
| PCI | | SC | Production capital interest rate (%) |
| PEST | IO | SE | Pesticide costs in R per ha |
| PL(IO) | IO | SS | Production loan |
| PLD | | S | Production loan data |
| POT(C) | C | SS | Individual Crop |
| POTATO | C | SE | Potato crop |
| PRICE | IO | SE | Price of product in R per ton |
| PRICE | COSTDAT | SE | Price (A new table is set up using the price from IO) |
| PY(T) | T | SS | Pre-year |
| PYWU | | SC | Allowable pre-year water use (%fraction) |
| S | | S | Soils classified according to clay % |
| SEED | IO | SE | Seed costs in R per ha |
| SEP | T | SE | September |
| SNC | S | SE | Sandy Clay soils 25-45% Clay |
| SNL | S | SE | Sandy Loam soils 15-25% Clay |
| SOIL_D(S,IS,DS,SR) | | T | Farm specific soil types |
| SR | SR | S | OVIB Sub-area names |
| SUMLH | | SC | Summer labour hours (working hours per day)(hrs) |
| SUMMER(T) | T | SS | Summer |
| T | | S | Time periods |
| TKWA | | SE | Total kilowatts available (kW) |
| TLA | | SE | Total labourers available (person) |
| TRM | PLD | SE | The loan term in Production Loan Data |
| TRSH | CROPDAT | SE | The salinity threshold for the different crops according to Maas & Hoffman |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| TRSH_FNCT(C,*) | | T | y = - V1 x + V2 * = V1, V2 |
| VL | SR | SE | Vaallus (2) |
| VOFSD | | SC | Total volume of 1 OFS dam (50x50x3m) (ha-mm) |
| WAT | IO | SE | Water costs in R per ha |
| WC | | SE | Water costs (R/mm) |
| WDPM | | SC | Working days per month (days) |
| WF1 | F | SE | The first tier of the water fine |
| WF2 | F | SE | The second tier of the water fine |
| WF3 | F | SE | The third tier of the water fine |
| WF4 | F | SE | The fourth tier of the water fine |
| WFI | | SC | Water overuse fine increment mm per annum per ha) |
| WFPY | F | SE | The only tier of water overuse allowed in the pre-year |
| WHEAT | C | SE | Wheat crop |
| WHT(C) | C | SS | Individual Crop |
| WINLH | | SC | Winter labour hours (working hours per day)(hrs) |
| WINTER(T) | | SS | Winter |
| WLDS(DS) | DS | SS | Individual soil drainage status |
| WLS | | SE | Waterlogged soils |
| WLSDF | | SC | Waterlogged Soils Drainage Factor (%) |
| WREQ_AFT | | SE | Water requirement in the after-year |
| WREQ_PRE | | SE | Water requirement in the pre-year |
| YIELD | | SE | Yield of product in ton per ha |
| YP | | S | Expected Yield percentages |
| YP1 | YP | SE | Yield % (adjustable) for this report set at 100% |
| YP2 | YP | SE | Yield % (adjustable) for this report set at 98% |
| YP3 | YP | SE | Yield % (adjustable) for this report set at 95% |
| YP4 | YP | SE | Yield % (adjustable) for this report set at 90% |
| YP5 | YP | SE | Yield % (adjustable) for this report set at 83% |
| YP6 | YP | SE | Yield % (adjustable) for this report set at 75% |
| YPER(YP) | | P | Assigning values to Yield% variable names |

# APPENDIX 3. SALMOD SCHEMATIC LAYOUT WITH MANAGEMENT OPTIONS

| | NR | Y | P2A | W2L | W2A | L2A | F2C | F2D | C2F | C2D | D2F | D2C | X | NPSD C | OFSD | Sign | RHS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| OBJN | + | + | | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | B | | + | = | 0 |
| LAND_BAL | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | <= | + |
| SIDBalWF | | | | + | + | | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | + |
| SIDBalWC | | | | + | + | | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| SIDBalWD | | | | + | + | | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| SIDBalLF | | | | - | | + | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | + |
| SIDBalLC | | | | - | | + | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| SIDBalLD | | | | - | | + | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| SIDBalAF | | | | | - | - | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | 0 |
| SIDBalAC | | | | | - | - | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| SIDBalAD | | | | | - | - | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| SIDBalNF | | | | | | | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | 0 |
| SIDBalNC | | | | | | | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| SIDBalND | | | | | | | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| DST_WF | | | | + | + | | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | + |
| DST_WC | | | | + | + | | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| DST_WD | | | | + | + | | | + | | + | - | - | + | | | <= | 0 |
| DST_LF | | | | - | | + | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | + |
| DST_LC | | | | - | | + | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | + |
| DST_LD | | | | - | | + | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | 0 |
| DST_AF | | | | | - | - | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | 0 |
| DST_AC | | | | | - | - | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| DST_AD | | | | | - | - | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| DST_NF | | | | | | | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | 0 |
| DST_NC | | | | | | | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| DST_ND | | | | | | | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| IST_WF | | | | + | + | | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | + |
| IST_WC | | | | + | + | | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| IST_WD | | | | + | + | | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| IST_LF | | | | - | | + | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | + |
| IST_LC | | | | - | | + | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| IST_LD | | | | - | | + | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| IST_AF | | | | | - | - | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | 0 |
| IST_AC | | | | | - | - | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| IST_AD | | | | | - | - | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| IST_NF | | | | | | | + | + | - | | - | | + | | | <= | 0 |
| IST_NC | | | | | | | - | | + | + | | - | + | | | <= | + |
| IST_ND | | | | | | | | - | | - | + | + | + | | | <= | 0 |
| ROTATION | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | <= | + |
| PotCons | | | | | - | - | - | - | + | | - | | + | | | <= | + |
| PotDS | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | = | 0 |
| PotIS | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | = | 0 |
| WhtMax | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | <= | + |
| GNMax | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | <= | + |
| GnSand | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | <= | 0 |
| GnDS | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | <= | 0 |
| DRIP_CONS | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | = | 0 |
| MAX_QUOTA | | - | | | | | | | | | | | + | | | <= | + |
| PY_QUOTA | | - | + | | | | | | | | | | + | | | <= | + |
| AY_QUOTA | | - | - | | | | | | | | | | + | | | <= | + |
| RFC | | | | | | | | | | | | | - | + | + | = | 0 |
| MRF | | | | | | | | | | | | | + | | - | <= | + |
| SDC | | | | | | | | | | | | | B | | | <= | 0 |
| PCC | | + | | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | | + | <= | + |
| FCLC | | | | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | | | + | <= | + |
| **Variable Type** | u | + | + | + | + | + | + | | + | + | + | + | + | + | + | | |

# APPENDIX 4. SALMOD FARM-LEVEL RESULTS WITH FIXED CAPITAL MANAGEMENT OPTIONS INCLUDED AND RETURNFLOWS CONSTRAINED

## A4.1. SUB-AREA 1: OLIERIVIER

## A4.2. SUB-AREA 2: VAALLUS

## A4.3. SUB-AREA 3: ATHERTON

## A4.4. SUB-AREA 4: BUCKLANDS

## A4.5. SUB-AREA 5: NEW BUCKLANDS

NOTE: The results displayed in Chapter 5 are the *status quo* results and do not have returnflows constrained – these results have returnflows constrained and will therefore be different to those displayed in Chapter 5.

The results for each sub-area consist of two files: firstly, the farm level results for the long-term water quality to which the particular case-study farm is exposed, followed by the water quality scenario/range file where the results are displayed of the impact of water quality predictions according to Du Preez *et al*, 2000.

## A4.1. SUB-AREA 1: OLIERIVIER

SALMOD (FARM LEVEL) Date run: 21.05.02 Time: 08:47:43

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

GENERAL INPUT DATA Olierivier (1)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Irrigable area | (ha) | 200.00 |
| Irrigation rights | (ha) | 141.00 |
| Water cost | (R/mm) | 0.17 |
| Pumping costs | (R/mm) | 0.56 |

Electrical Conductivity of the irrigation water - ECiw (mS/m)

| JAN | FEB | MAR | APR | MAY | JUN | JUL | AUG | SEP | OCT | NOV | DEC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 94 | 117 | 134 | 84 | 136 | 132 | 124 | 130 | 155 | 176 | 182 | 94 |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| SOIL TYPE : | LMS | 190.0 | SNL | 10.0 | SNC | 0.0 | CLY 0.0 |
| IRRIG.SYST.: | FIS | 35.0 | CPI | 165.0 | DIS | 0.0 | |
| DRAIN.CLASS: | NDS | 100.0 | ADS | 20.0 | LDS | 70.0 | WLS 10.0 |

MODEL RESULTS
Optimal crop composition:

| Crop | Soil | Class | Irrig | LF | Yield | HECTARES | GMASC | PYWater | AYWater |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| WHEAT | LMS | LDS | CPI | LF5 | 0.97 | 19.0 | 2333 | 13168 | 0 |
| MAIZE | LMS | LDS | CPI | LF15 | 0.87 | 0.0 | 2822 | 0 | 31 |
| POTATO | LMS | ADS | CPI | LF5 | 0.98 | 6.0 | 6177 | 0 | 3663 |
| LUCERNE | LMS | NDS | CPI | LF5 | 0.96 | 100.0 | 5126 | 52137 | 81547 |
| LUCERNE | LMS | ADS | CPI | LF5 | 0.96 | 14.0 | 5126 | 7299 | 11417 |
| LUCERNE | LMS | LDS | FIS | LF10 | 0.86 | 30.0 | 4522 | 16510 | 25823 |
| LUCERNE | LMS | LDS | CPI | LF10 | 0.86 | 9.9 | 4522 | 5462 | 8543 |
| Total water used (mm): | | | | | | | 225600 | 94576 | 131024 |
| Water shadow price,Max,pre-&aft-year: | | | | | | | 2.26 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Unused trans. from Pre- to Aft-year : | | | | | | | | | 12584 |
| Water Usage Cost (R): | | | | | | | 69040 | 16078 | 52962 |
| Water Pumping Cost (R): | | | | | | | 126336 | 52962 | 73374 |

| Water overuse fines: | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | WF1 | 14100 | 3596 | DUAL | 1.3769 |
| | WF2 | 14100 | 4794 | DUAL | 1.2847 |
| | WF3 | 14100 | 5993 | DUAL | 1.1926 |
| | WF4 | 14100 | 7191 | DUAL | 1.1004 |
| | WFPY | 14100 | 14100 | DUAL | 0.5692 |
| TOTAL WATER OVERUSE | | 70500 | TOTAL FINE 35673 | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Estimated optimal net revenue (R): | | 606390 | |
| Pre-determined fixed costs (R): | | 561000 | |
| FARM PROFIT (R): | | 45390 | |
| Production capital requirement (R): | (Max 300000) | 300000 | (DUAL= 0.0840) |
| Fixed capital loan requirement (R): | (Max 600000) | 0 | (DUAL= 0.0000) |

MANAGEMENT OPTIONS:

| Soil Trans.WL-LD | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Soil Trans.WL-AD | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Soil Trans.LD-AD | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-C | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-C | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

Number of On-Farm Storage dams (50x50x3m) required: 0.0 (Dual -4470.49 )

SALMOD (PARAMETRIC/RANGE) Date run: 21.05.02 Time: 08:47:43

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

PARAMETRIC MODEL RUN FOR: Olierivier (1)

| | | R3Pre | O2Pre+ | OVIB | R3Pre- | R3Pre+ | H2Pre | R3LT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total Gross Margin | (R) | 574057 | 694766 | 662312 | 627204 | 518143 | 351356 | 606390 |
| Total Water Fine | (R) | 25226 | 35673 | 35673 | 35673 | 25055 | 1851 | 35673 |
| Return Flows | (mm) | 14100 | 12158 | 14100 | 14100 | 14100 | 14100 | 14100 |
| Returnflows duals | (R) | 3.85 | 0.00 | 0.60 | 1.91 | 4.17 | 3.43 | 1.52 |
| Production capital | (R) | 300000 | 300000 | 300000 | 300000 | 300000 | 147666 | 300000 |
| Prod. capital dual | (R) | 0.15 | 0.34 | 0.28 | 0.14 | 0.02 | 0.00 | 0.08 |
| Fixed capital | (R) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Fixed capital dual | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER QUOTA SHADOW VALUE | | | | | | | | |
| Max Quota | | 1.80 | 2.89 | 2.53 | 2.28 | 1.55 | 0.82 | 2.26 |
| Pre-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.04 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| After-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER FINE SHADOW VALUES | | | | | | | | |
| WFPY | | 0.00 | 0.81 | 0.53 | 0.50 | 0.00 | -0.7 | 0.57 |
| WF1 | | 0.86 | 1.80 | 1.48 | 1.35 | 0.72 | 0.00 | 1.38 |
| WF2 | | 0.76 | 1.69 | 1.38 | 1.25 | 0.63 | -0.1 | 1.28 |
| WF3 | | 0.66 | 1.58 | 1.27 | 1.16 | 0.54 | -0.2 | 1.19 |
| WF4 | | 0.56 | 1.46 | 1.16 | 1.06 | 0.46 | -0.3 | 1.10 |
| OPTIMAL CROP COMPOSITION | | | | | | | | |
| WHEAT | | 31.72 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 18.91 | 31.93 | 0.00 | 18.95 |
| MAIZE | | 0.00 | 25.06 | 25.09 | 0.10 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.04 |
| GRNDNUT | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| POTATO | | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 | 6.00 |
| COTTON | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LUCERNE | | 139.08 | 151.51 | 149.97 | 153.92 | 138.84 | 114.00 | 153.92 |

## A4.2. SUB-AREA 2: VAALLUS

```
SALMOD (FARM LEVEL)                    Date run: 21.05.02 Time: 09:02:00

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

GENERAL INPUT DATA   Vaallus      (2)
Irrigable area    (ha)       461.00
Irrigation rights(ha)        339.00
Water cost       (R/mm)        0.17
Pumping costs    (R/mm)        0.56

Electrical Conductivity of the irrigation water - ECiw (mS/m)
  JAN   FEB   MAR   APR   MAY   JUN   JUL   AUG   SEP   OCT   NOV   DEC
   94   117   134    84   136   132   124   130   155   176   182    94

SOIL TYPE  : LMS    0.0  SNL  111.0  SNC  320.0  CLY   30.0
IRRIG.SYST.: FIS   30.0  CPI  370.0  DIS   61.0
DRAIN.CLASS: NDS  311.0  ADS  120.0  LDS   30.0  WLS    0.0

MODEL RESULTS
Optimal crop composition:
Crop      Soil Class Irrig LF     Yield HECTARES      GMASC  PYWater   AYWater
MAIZE     SNL  NDS   CPI   LF0     1.00     22.9      11137        0     16867
MAIZE     SNC  NDS   CPI   LF0     1.00     12.3      11137        0      9026
COTTON    SNL  NDS   DIS   LF0     1.00     61.0       5530     6377     49077
COTTON    SNC  NDS   CPI   LF0     1.00    187.7       5530    20455    157413
COTTON    SNC  ADS   CPI   LF0     1.00    120.0       5530    13074    100611
Total water used                  (mm):              372900    39906    332994
Water shadow price,Max,pre-&aft-year:                  0.88     0.00      0.00
Unused trans. from Pre- to Aft-year :                                        0
Water Usage Cost                   (R):               29131     6784     22347
Water Pumping Cost                 (R):              208824    22347    186477
Water overuse fines:     WF1          0                   0  DUAL -0.E+1
                         WF2          0                   0  DUAL -0.E+1
                         WF3          0                   0  DUAL -0.E+1
                         WF4          0                   0  DUAL -0.E+1
                         WFPY         0                   0  DUAL -1.E+1
    TOTAL WATER OVERUSE               0  TOTAL FINE       0
Estimated optimal net revenue (R):                  2158249
Pre-determined fixed costs    (R):                  2475015
FARM PROFIT                   (R):                  -316766
Production capital requirement(R):   (Max 500000)   500000  (DUAL= 3.6431)
Fixed capital loan requirement(R):   (Max1000000)        0  (DUAL= 0.0000)

MANAGEMENT OPTIONS:
Soil Trans.WL-LD   LMS     SNL     SNC     CLY
FIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
CPI                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
DIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00

Soil Trans.WL-AD   LMS     SNL     SNC     CLY
FIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
CPI                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
DIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00


Soil Trans.LD-AD   LMS     SNL     SNC     CLY
```

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-C | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-C | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

Number of On-Farm Storage dams (50x50x3m) required: 0.0 (Dual -2.78E+4 )

SALMOD (PARAMETRIC/RANGE) Date run: 21.05.02 Time: 09:02:00

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

PARAMETRIC MODEL RUN FOR: Vaallus (2)

| | | O2Pre+ | OVIB | V4Pre- | V4 | V4Pre+ | H2Pre | V4LT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total Gross Margin | (R) | 2158249 | 2158249 | 2158249 | 2144990 | 2136448 | 2061128 | 2158249 |
| Total Water Fine | (R) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 8434 | 0 |
| Return Flows | (mm) | 16427 | 16427 | 16427 | 19380 | 19380 | 18140 | 16427 |
| Returnflows duals | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Production capital | (R) | 500000 | 500000 | 500000 | 500000 | 500000 | 500000 | 500000 |
| Prod. capital dual | (R) | 3.64 | 3.64 | 3.64 | 3.44 | 3.31 | 2.00 | 3.64 |
| Fixed capital | (R) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 158 | 0 |
| Fixed capital dual | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER QUOTA SHADOW VALUE | | | | | | | | |
| Max Quota | | 0.88 | 0.88 | 0.88 | 1.11 | 1.26 | 2.44 | 0.88 |
| Pre-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| After-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER FINE SHADOW VALUES | | | | | | | | |
| WFPY | | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** |
| WF1 | | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | 0.00 | **** |
| WF2 | | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | -0.2 | **** |
| WF3 | | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | -0.5 | **** |
| WF4 | | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | -0.8 | **** |
| OPTIMAL CROP COMPOSITION | | | | | | | | |
| WHEAT | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| MAIZE | | 35.14 | 35.14 | 35.14 | 35.85 | 35.85 | 0.32 | 35.14 |
| GRNDNUT | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| POTATO | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| COTTON | | 368.75 | 368.75 | 368.75 | 364.91 | 364.91 | 430.68 | 368.75 |
| LUCERNE | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

## A4.3. SUB-AREA 3: ATHERTON

```
SALMOD (FARM LEVEL)                    Date run: 21.05.02 Time: 09:08:37

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

GENERAL INPUT DATA   Atherton      (3)
Irrigable area    (ha)          22.00
Irrigation rights (ha)          28.90
Water cost        (R/mm)         0.17
Pumping costs     (R/mm)         0.56

Electrical Conductivity of the irrigation water - ECiw (mS/m)
  JAN   FEB   MAR   APR   MAY   JUN   JUL   AUG   SEP   OCT   NOV   DEC
   94   117   134    84   136   132   124   130   155   176   182    94

SOIL TYPE  : LMS    0.0  SNL    0.0  SNC    0.0  CLY   22.0
IRRIG.SYST.: FIS   22.0  CPI    0.0  DIS    0.0
DRAIN.CLASS: NDS    0.0  ADS    0.0  LDS   22.0  WLS    0.0

MODEL RESULTS
Optimal crop composition:
Crop      Soil Class Irrig LF     Yield HECTARES      GMASC  PYWater   AYWater
WHEAT     CLY  LDS   FIS  LF5     1.00     22.0       5207    16133         0
Total water used                (mm):                16133    16133         0
Water shadow price,Max,pre-&aft-year:                 0.00     0.00      0.00
Unused trans. from Pre- to Aft-year :                                        0
Water Usage Cost                 (R):                11777     2743      9035
Water Pumping Cost               (R):                 9035     9035         0
Water overuse fines:     WF1        0                    0  DUAL -0.815
                         WF2        0                    0  DUAL -0.900
                         WF3        0                    0  DUAL -0.985
                         WF4        0                    0  DUAL -0.E+1
                         WFPY       0                    0  DUAL -0.E+1
    TOTAL WATER OVERUSE             0  TOTAL FINE        0
Estimated optimal net revenue (R):                  102786
Pre-determined fixed costs    (R):                  130000
FARM PROFIT                   (R):                  -27214
Production capital requirement(R):   (Max 150000)   108615  (DUAL= 0.0000)
Fixed capital loan requirement(R):   (Max 300000)        0  (DUAL= 0.0000)

MANAGEMENT OPTIONS:
Soil Trans.WL-LD   LMS     SNL     SNC     CLY
FIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
CPI                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
DIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00

Soil Trans.WL-AD   LMS     SNL     SNC     CLY
FIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
CPI                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
DIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00

Soil Trans.LD-AD   LMS     SNL     SNC     CLY
FIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
CPI                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00
DIS                0.00    0.00    0.00    0.00

Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-C   LMS     SNL     SNC     CLY
```

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-C | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

Number of On-Farm Storage dams (50x50x3m) required: 0.0 (Dual -5977.56 )

SALMOD (PARAMETRIC/RANGE) Date run: 21.05.02 Time: 09:08:37

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

PARAMETRIC MODEL RUN FOR: Atherton (3)

| | | O2Pre+ | OVIB | V4Pre- | V4 | V4Pre+ | H2Pre | V4LT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total Gross Margin | (R) | 102786 | 102786 | 92590 | 62984 | 43571 | 0 | 102786 |
| Total Water Fine | (R) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Return Flows | (mm) | 849 | 849 | 849 | 849 | 1634 | 0 | 849 |
| Returnflows duals | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Production capital | (R) | 108615 | 108615 | 108615 | 108615 | 31331 | 0 | 108615 |
| Prod. capital dual | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Fixed capital | (R) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Fixed capital dual | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER QUOTA SHADOW VALUE | | | | | | | | |
| Max Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Pre-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| After-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER FINE SHADOW VALUES | | | | | | | | |
| WFPY | | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** |
| WF1 | | -0.8 | -0.8 | -0.8 | -0.8 | -0.8 | -0.8 | -0.8 |
| WF2 | | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.9 |
| WF3 | | -1.0 | -1.0 | -1.0 | -1.0 | -1.0 | -1.0 | -1.0 |
| WF4 | | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** | **** |
| OPTIMAL CROP COMPOSITION | | | | | | | | |
| WHEAT | | 22.00 | 22.00 | 22.00 | 22.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 22.00 |
| MAIZE | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| GRNDNUT | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| POTATO | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| COTTON | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LUCERNE | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 22.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

## A4.4. SUB-AREA 4: BUCKLANDS

SALMOD (FARM LEVEL) Date run: 21.05.02 Time: 09:11:12

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

GENERAL INPUT DATA Bucklands (4)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Irrigable area | (ha) | 50.00 |
| Irrigation rights | (ha) | 58.40 |
| Water cost | (R/mm) | 0.17 |
| Pumping costs | (R/mm) | 0.56 |

Electrical Conductivity of the irrigation water - ECiw (mS/m)

| JAN | FEB | MAR | APR | MAY | JUN | JUL | AUG | SEP | OCT | NOV | DEC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 94 | 117 | 134 | 84 | 136 | 132 | 124 | 130 | 155 | 176 | 182 | 94 |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| SOIL TYPE : | LMS | 0.0 | SNL | 0.0 | SNC | 0.0 | CLY 50.0 |
| IRRIG.SYST.: | FIS | 50.0 | CPI | 0.0 | DIS | 0.0 | |
| DRAIN.CLASS: | NDS | 0.0 | ADS | 0.0 | LDS | 50.0 | WLS 0.0 |

MODEL RESULTS
Optimal crop composition:

| Crop | Soil | Class | Irrig | LF | Yield | HECTARES | GMASC | PYWater | AYWater |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| LUCERNE | CLY | LDS | FIS | LF5 | 0.90 | 50.0 | 2607 | 27517 | 43039 |
| Total water used (mm): | | | | | | | 70556 | 27517 | 43039 |
| Water shadow price,Max,pre-&aft-year: | | | | | | | 0.90 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Unused trans. from Pre- to Aft-year : | | | | | | | | | 0 |
| Water Usage Cost (R): | | | | | | | 20087 | 4678 | 15409 |
| Water Pumping Cost (R): | | | | | | | 39511 | 15409 | 24102 |
| Water overuse fines: | | | WF1 | | 5840 | | 1489 | DUAL 0.0850 | |
| | | | WF2 | | 476 | | 162 | DUAL 0.0000 | |
| | | | WF3 | | 0 | | 0 | DUAL -0.085 | |
| | | | WF4 | | 0 | | 0 | DUAL -0.170 | |
| | | | WFPY | | 0 | | 0 | DUAL -0.660 | |
| TOTAL WATER OVERUSE | | | | | 6316 | TOTAL FINE | 1651 | | |
| Estimated optimal net revenue (R): | | | | | | | 73659 | | |
| Pre-determined fixed costs (R): | | | | | | | 38000 | | |
| FARM PROFIT (R): | | | | | | | 35659 | | |
| Production capital requirement (R): | | | | | | (Max 200000) | 114447 | (DUAL= 0.0000) | |
| Fixed capital loan requirement (R): | | | | | | (Max 300000) | 0 | (DUAL= 0.0000) | |

MANAGEMENT OPTIONS:

| Soil Trans.WL-LD | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Soil Trans.WL-AD | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Soil Trans.LD-AD | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-C | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-C | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

Number of On-Farm Storage dams (50x50x3m) required: 0.0 (Dual -5977.56 )

SALMOD (PARAMETRIC/RANGE) Date run: 21.05.02 Time: 09:11:12

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

PARAMETRIC MODEL RUN FOR: Bucklands (4)

| | | O2Pre+ | OVIB | V4Pre- | V4 | V4Pre+ | H2Pre | V4LT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total Gross Margin | (R) | 97301 | 83106 | 52685 | 32157 | 11401 | 0 | 73659 |
| Total Water Fine | (R) | 1651 | 1651 | 1489 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1651 |
| Return Flows | (mm) | 3713 | 3713 | 3688 | 3381 | 3381 | 0 | 3713 |
| Returnflows duals | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Production capital | (R) | 114447 | 114447 | 113282 | 99479 | 99479 | 0 | 114447 |
| Prod. capital dual | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Fixed capital | (R) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Fixed capital dual | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER QUOTA SHADOW VALUE | | | | | | | | |
| Max Quota | | 0.90 | 0.90 | 0.82 | 0.50 | 0.18 | 0.00 | 0.90 |
| Pre-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| After-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER FINE SHADOW VALUES | | | | | | | | |
| WFPY | | -0.7 | -0.7 | -0.7 | **** | **** | **** | -0.7 |
| WF1 | | 0.09 | 0.09 | 0.00 | -0.3 | -0.6 | -0.8 | 0.09 |
| WF2 | | 0.00 | 0.00 | -0.1 | -0.4 | -0.7 | -0.9 | 0.00 |
| WF3 | | -0.1 | -0.1 | -0.2 | -0.5 | -0.8 | -1.0 | -0.1 |
| WF4 | | -0.2 | -0.2 | -0.2 | -0.6 | -0.9 | **** | -0.2 |
| OPTIMAL CROP COMPOSITION | | | | | | | | |
| WHEAT | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| MAIZE | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| GRNDNUT | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| POTATO | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| COTTON | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LUCERNE | | 50.00 | 50.00 | 49.66 | 45.52 | 45.52 | 0.00 | 50.00 |

## A4.5. SUB-AREA 5: NEW BUCKLANDS

SALMOD (FARM LEVEL) Date run: 09.06.02 Time: 22:40:46

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

GENERAL INPUT DATA New Bucklands(5)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Irrigable area | (ha) | 145.00 |
| Irrigation rights | (ha) | 100.00 |
| Water cost | (R/mm) | 0.17 |
| Pumping costs | (R/mm) | 0.56 |

Electrical Conductivity of the irrigation water - ECiw (mS/m)

| JAN | FEB | MAR | APR | MAY | JUN | JUL | AUG | SEP | OCT | NOV | DEC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 94 | 117 | 134 | 84 | 136 | 132 | 124 | 130 | 155 | 176 | 182 | 94 |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| SOIL TYPE : | LMS | 145.0 | SNL | 0.0 | SNC | 0.0 | CLY | 0.0 |
| IRRIG.SYST.: | FIS | 30.0 | CPI | 110.0 | DIS | 5.0 | | |
| DRAIN.CLASS: | NDS | 100.0 | ADS | 10.0 | LDS | 25.0 | WLS | 10.0 |

MODEL RESULTS
Optimal crop composition:

| Crop | Soil | Class | Irrig | LF | Yield | HECTARES | GMASC | PYWater | AYWater |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MAIZE | LMS | NDS | CPI | LF0 | 1.00 | 100.0 | 7292 | 0 | 73684 |
| MAIZE | LMS | ADS | CPI | LF0 | 1.00 | 10.0 | 7292 | 0 | 7368 |
| MAIZE | LMS | LDS | FIS | LF10 | 1.00 | 35.0 | 7267 | 0 | 27222 |
| Total water used (mm): | | | | | | | 108275 | 0 | 108275 |
| Water shadow price,Max,pre-&aft-year: | | | | | | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Unused trans. from Pre- to Aft-year : | | | | | | | | | 0 |
| Water Usage Cost (R): | | | | | | | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Water Pumping Cost (R): | | | | | | | 60634 | 0 | 60634 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Water overuse fines: | WF1 | 0 | 0 | DUAL -0.815 |
| | WF2 | 0 | 0 | DUAL -0.900 |
| | WF3 | 0 | 0 | DUAL -0.985 |
| | WF4 | 0 | 0 | DUAL -0.E+1 |
| | WFPY | 0 | 0 | DUAL -0.E+1 |
| TOTAL WATER OVERUSE | | 0 | TOTAL FINE 0 | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Estimated optimal net revenue (R): | | 974156 | |
| Pre-determined fixed costs (R): | | 1049109 | |
| FARM PROFIT (R): | | -74953 | |
| Production capital requirement (R): | (Max 600000) | 304069 | (DUAL= 0.0000) |
| Fixed capital loan requirement (R): | (Max1200000) | 17500 | (DUAL= 0.0000) |

MANAGEMENT OPTIONS:

| Soil Trans.WL-LD | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 10.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Soil Trans.WL-AD | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Soil Trans.LD-AD | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| FIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| CPI | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| DIS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-C | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-D | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-C | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

| Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-F | LMS | SNL | SNC | CLY |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| NDS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| ADS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LDS | 5.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WLS | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

Number of On-Farm Storage dams (50x50x3m) required: 0.0 (Dual -5977.56 )

SALMOD (PARAMETRIC/RANGE) Date run: 09.06.02 Time: 22:40:46

SALMOD Results
Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC

PARAMETRIC MODEL RUN FOR: New Bucklands(5)

| | | O2Pre+ | OVIB | V4Pre- | V4 | V4Pre+ | H2Pre | V4LT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total Gross Margin | (R) | 975031 | 975031 | 963524 | 915847 | 866446 | 682135 | 974156 |
| Total Water Fine | (R) | 0 | 0 | 382 | 383 | 3657 | 4888 | 0 |
| Return Flows | (mm) | 5485 | 6775 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 6775 |
| Returnflows duals | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 2.67 | 4.39 | 4.51 | 4.51 | 0.00 |
| Production capital | (R) | 304069 | 304069 | 307646 | 307646 | 379115 | 496594 | 304069 |
| Prod. capital dual | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| Fixed capital | (R) | 17500 | 17500 | 17500 | 17500 | 283649 | 893113 | 17500 |
| Fixed capital dual | (R) | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER QUOTA SHADOW VALUE | | | | | | | | |
| Max Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.82 | 0.82 | 0.90 | 0.90 | 0.00 |
| Pre-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| After-year Quota | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| WATER FINE SHADOW VALUES | | | | | | | | |
| WFPY | | **** | **** | -0.7 | -0.7 | -0.7 | -0.7 | **** |
| WF1 | | -0.8 | -0.8 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.08 | 0.08 | -0.8 |
| WF2 | | -0.9 | -0.9 | -0.1 | -0.1 | 0.00 | 0.00 | -0.9 |
| WF3 | | -1.0 | -1.0 | -0.2 | -0.2 | -0.1 | -0.1 | -1.0 |
| WF4 | | **** | **** | -0.3 | -0.3 | -0.2 | -0.2 | **** |
| OPTIMAL CROP COMPOSITION | | | | | | | | |
| WHEAT | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| MAIZE | | 145.00 | 145.00 | 145.00 | 145.00 | 145.00 | 145.00 | 145.00 |
| GRNDNUT | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| POTATO | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| COTTON | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |
| LUCERNE | | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 |

# APPENDIX 5. LIST OF PUBLICATIONS/PRESENTATIONS

ARMOUR, R.J. & VILJOEN, M.F. (1999a) Socio-Economic versus the Environmental Impacts of Irrigation Agriculture: Issues arising from Current Research on the Economic Effects of Salinity in the lower Vaal and Riet Rivers. Paper presented at the South African Affiliate, International Association for Impact Assessment (IAIAsa'99) Conference, 27th –29th September 1999: Bloemfontein. (Published in the Conference Proceedings IAIAsa'99 – Impact Assessment as related to poverty and development issues in Southern Africa – what do we know and need to know?)

ARMOUR, R.J. & VILJOEN, M.F. (1999b) Towards quantifying the economic effects of poor and fluctuating water quality on irrigation agriculture: A case study of the lower Vaal and Riet Rivers. Poster presented at the 37th Annual Conference of the Agricultural Economics Association of South Africa (AEASA), 28th – 30th September 1999: Langebaan, Western Cape. (Published in the conference proceedings CD).

ARMOUR, R.J. & VILJOEN, M.F. (2000a) The Economic Effects of Stochastic Irrigation Water Quality: A South African Case Study. X$^{th}$ World Water Congress, 12$^{th}$-17$^{th}$ March 2000, Melbourne: Australia

ARMOUR, R.J. & VILJOEN, M.F. (2000b) Towards Quantifying the Economic Effects of Poor and Fluctuating Water Quality on Irrigation Agriculture: A Case Study of the Lower Vaal and Riet Rivers. Agrekon, Vol 39, No 1

ARMOUR, R.J. & VILJOEN, M.F. (2000c) Economic effects of changing water quality on an irrigation scheme: a case study from South Africa. FAO Land-Water Linkages in Rural Watersheds Electronic Workshop. Case study number 6. 18 September – 27 October 2000 http://www.fao.org/ag/agl/watershed/papers/case6.pdf

ARMOUR, R.J. & VILJOEN, M.F. (2001) SALMOD, a Salinity Management Tool for Irrigated Agriculture. Presentation made at the International Symposium on Sustained Management of Irrigated Land for Salinity and Toxic Element Control, 25-27 June 2001, Riverside, CA.

ARMOUR, R.J. & VILJOEN, M.F. (2002a) The Leaching Paradox and Return Flow Management Options for Sustainable Irrigated Agriculture. Paper presented at the first FEE (Forum for Economics and the Environment) conference, 11-12 February, Cape Town.

ARMOUR, R.J. & VILJOEN, M.F. (2002b) SALMOD, a Salinity Management Tool for Irrigated Agriculture. Paper presented at the 13$^{th}$ IFMA (International Farm Management Association) conference 7 - 12 July 2002, the Netherlands

# APPENDIX C. GAMS CODING FOR SALMOD

```
$Title SALMOD Salinity and Leaching Model for Optimal irrigation Management
$ontext
  An LP model to determine the optimal crop enterprise combination when
  irrigating with changing water salinities on non-uniform soil types.

  Developed by R.J. Armour, Department of Agricultural Economics,
  University of the Orange Free State, South Africa.
  Project funded by the Water Research Commission.

  (Farm level model run for "NB")
       OL = Olierivier case study farm
       VL = Vaallus case study farm
       AT = Atherton case study farm
       BL = Bucklands case study farm
       NB = New Bucklands case study farm
$offtext
$offlisting
$offinclude
$offsymlist

OPTION BRatio=0;
OPTION LimCol=0;
OPTION LimRow=0;

*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
*   ~~~~DECLARATION OF SETS (Leave unchanged for all farmers)~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

SETS
   C         Main annual Crops produced in the study area
                              /WHEAT,MAIZE,GRNDNUT,POTATO,COTTON,LUCERNE/
   S         Soils clasified according to clay %
                             /LMS    Loamy Sand soils <15%    Clay
                              SNL    Sandy Loam soils  15-25% Clay
                              SNC    Sandy Clay soils  25-45% Clay
                              CLY    Clay soils          >45% Clay/
   DS        Soil drainage status
                             /NDS    Naturally drained soils
                              ADS    Artificially drained soils
                              LDS    Limited drainage naturally drained soil
                              WLS    Waterlogged soils /
   IS        Type of Irrigation system
                             /FIS    Flood Irrigation System
                              CPI    Centre Pivot Irrigation System
                              DIS    DRIP Irrigation System /
   F         Water Fines     /WF1,WF2,WF3,WF4,WFPY/
   T         Time periods    /JAN,FEB,MAR,APR,MAY,JUN,JUL,AUG,SEP,OCT,NOV,DEC/
   CROPDAT   Crop Data       /WREQ_PRE,WREQ_AFT,TRSH,GRAD/
   COSTDAT   Cost Data       /PRICE,MEY,HC,FVC,MASC,FUEL,MAINT /
   IO        Inputs and Outputs
                             /WHEAT,MAIZE,GRNDNUT,POTATO,COTTON,LUCERNE
                              PRICE    PRICE OF PRODUCT IN RANDS PER TON
                              YIELD    YIELD OF PRODUCT IN TONS PER HECTARE
                              SEED     SEED COSTS IN RANDS PER HECTARE
                              FERT     FERTILIZER COSTS RANDS PER HECTARE
                              HERB     HERBICIDE COSTS IN R PER HA
                              PEST     PESTICIDE COSTS IN R PER HA
                              INSUR    INSURANCE COSTS IN RANDS PER HECTARE
                              HARV     HARVESTING COSTS IN RANDS PER TON
```

```
                                INT      INTEREST ON PRODUCTION CAPITAL
                                WAT      WATER COSTS IN RANDS PER HECTARE
                                ELEC     ELECTRICITY PUMPING COSTS IN R PER HA
                                LABOR    Labour costs
                                MHLR     Man-hours of labour required
                                FUEL     Fuel and lubrication
                                KWHR     Kilowatt hours required
                                MAINT    Maintainance and repairs
                                CAP      CAPITAL GOODS repayments  /
   SR OVIB Sub-Region NAMES    /OL  Olierivier    (1)
                                VL  Vaallus       (2)
                                AT  Atherton      (3)
                                BL  Bucklands     (4)
                                NB  New Bucklands(5)
                                GWK Regional budgets /
   PLD Production loan data    /AMT,TRM,INT/

*SUBSETS
   POT(C)      Ind.Crop          /POTATO/
   LUC(C)      Ind.Crop          /LUCERNE/
   WHT(C)      Ind.Crop          /WHEAT/
   GN(C)       Ind.Crop          /GRNDNUT/
   NODRIP(C)   Can'T DRIP Irri   /WHEAT,MAIZE,LUCERNE/
   LMYS(S)     Loamy sand only   /LMS/
   NOTLMS(S)   Not loamy sand    /SNL,SNC,CLY/
   NPDS(DS)    NoPotDrain.state  /WLS,LDS/
   WLDS(DS)    Ind.Drain.state   /WLS/
   LDDS(DS)    Ind.Drain.state   /LDS/
   ADDS(DS)    Ind.Drain.state   /ADS/
   NDDS(DS)    Ind.Drain.state   /NDS/
   DTI(IS)     Ind.Irrig.Sys.    /DIS/
   CTI(IS)     Ind.Irrig.Sys.    /CPI/
   FTI(IS)     Ind.Irrig.Sys.    /FIS/
   FPY(F)      PreYear Fines     /WFPY/
   FAY(F)      AftYear Fines     /WF1,WF2,WF3,WF4/
   PY(T)       PreYear           /JUL,AUG,SEP,OCT,NOV/
   AY(T)       AftYear           /DEC,JAN,FEB,MAR,APR,MAY,JUN/
   SUMMER(T)   Summer            /NOV,DEC,JAN,FEB,MAR,APR/
   WINTER(T)   Winter            /MAY,JUN,JUL,AUG,SEP,OCT/
   PL(IO)      Prod. Loan        /SEED,FERT,HERB,PEST,INSUR,INT/    ;
*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
*   ~~~CONSTANTS DEFINED (Change values between backslashes /......./ )       .
*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
SCALARS
*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~  REGIONAL / FARM SPECIFIC DATA    ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
   IQ      Irrigation Quota size     (ha-mm per anum per ha) /    1100.00 /
*  1mm/ha = 10cubic meters        in cubic metres = 11000.00 - this constant can
*            also be changed to test the effect of quota size changes on TGMASC
   MAXPOT  Maximum area to plant to potatoes    (%fraction) /       0.05 /
   MAXGN   Maximum area to plant to groundnuts  (%fraction) /       0.25 /
   WLSDF   Waterlogged Soils Drainage Factor             (%) /       0.10 /
*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~  MOSTLY CONSTANT FOR ALL FARMERS ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
   FP      Fuel price                          (R \ liter) /       3.70 /
   FLR     Fuel cost:Lubrication cost ratio              (%) /       0.01 /
   FMR     Fuel cost:Maintainance cost ratio             (%) /       0.05 /
   LPKWH   Liters per kilowatt-hour                (liters) /       0.35 /
   SUMLH   Summer labour hours (working hours per day)(hrs) /      10.00 /
   WINLH   Winter labour hours (working hours per day)(hrs) /       8.00 /
   WDPM    Working days per month                   (days) /      25.00 /
   LTT     Long Term loan Term for drainage\irig.   (years) /      10.00 /
   LTI     Long Term loan annual Interest rate           (%) /       0.15 /
   PCI     Production capital interst rate               (%) /       0.17 /
   PYWU    Allowable PreYear water use          (%fraction) /       0.60 /
```

```
   AYWU   Allowable AftYear water use          (%fraction) /       0.40 /
   WFI    Water overuse fine increment(mm per anum per ha) /     100.00 /
   ECRW   Electrical conductivity of rain water (mS per m) /       1.00 /
   FORCE  A constant used to eliminate OPTION'cause too hi /     -0.001 /
   NZERO  A very small constant used when dividing by 0    /   0.00001 /
*~~~~~~~  SCENARIO DATA ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~   To free RF constraint~~ADD EXTRA 0~~~~~
   MAXRF  Max. return flows allowed\ha water right (ha-mm) /     100.00 /
   COFSD  Total cost of 1 on-farm storage dam          (R) /   30000.00 /
   VOFSD  Total volume of 1 OFS dam (50x50x3m)     (ha-mm) /     750.00 /
   EVAPY  Evaporation - surface water       (ha-mm\dam\yr) /     575.00 / ;

SET   CSF    Case study farmer data set
/IA    Total current irrigable area                                      (ha)
 IR    Current irrigation rights per allocated quota                     (ha)
 WC    Water costs - CAN BE VARIED FOR EACH SUB-REGION                 (R per mm)
 PC    Pumping costs - will vary within sub-region                     (R per mm)
 FC    Sub-regional representative farm nonalloc.anual fixed costs(R per anum)
 MPC   Maximum Production Capital  availability                           (R)
 MCL   Maximum Capital Improvement loan availability                      (R)
 TKWA  Total killowatts available                                        (kW)
 TLA   Total labourers available                                      (person)
 LABC  Average Labour Costs (\person\ 24 working day month)              (R)/;

TABLE CSFD(SR,CSF) Sub-region land and cost data
*CS Farm ha   ha R\mm\ha R\mm\ha    R       R       R    kW   Man  R\month
         IA   IR     WC     PC      FC     MPC     MCL  TKWA  TLA   LABC
OL      200  141   0.17   0.56  561000  300000  600000   280   16   1000
VL      461  339   0.17   0.56 2475015  500000 1000000   720   18   1000
BL       50 58.4  0.17   0.56   38000  100000  200000    46    2   1000
AT       22 28.9  0.17   0.56  130000  150000  300000   120    4   1000
NB      145  100   0.17   0.56 1049109  600000 1200000   300   14   1000 ;
*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~ E N D   S C A L A R S ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

* See origional table at the end
TABLE EBTable(IO,C,SR) Enterprise budget table for OVIB region
*   Farm values for WAT & ELEC are filled in for comparison, but are calculated
*   separately in model. Model values are used in the model calculations.
*   NB All values are per ha except harvesting costs which are per ton
          WHEAT.OL    WHEAT.VL    WHEAT.AT    WHEAT.BL    WHEAT.NB    WHEAT.GWK
PRICE         1072        1022        1060           0         918          780
YIELD            5           6          10           0           7            7
SEED           483         108        1900           0         247          237
FERT           950        1388        1300           0        1072         1214
HERB           158          98         300           0           6          212
PEST             0           5           0           0           0          302
INSUR          125          98         520           0           0          154
HARV            97           1          52           0          52           45
MHLR            16          16          16           0          16           16
KWHR           343         343         343           0         343          343
WAT             74          82         211           0         121          150
ELEC           245         123         253           0         198          345
CAP             87          51         211           0          97            0
FUEL           142         286         390           0         119          246
MAINT          393         530         172           0         279           51
LABOR          507         504         597           0         446           30
+         MAIZE.OL    MAIZE.VL    MAIZE.AT    MAIZE.BL    MAIZE.NB    MAIZE.GWK
PRICE          599        1253         570           0         895          580
YIELD            9          11           9           0          11          9.5
SEED           255         790        2000           0         219          411
FERT          1039         302        3250           0        1149         1346
HERB             0         294         750           0           6          321
PEST             0         200           0           0           0           71
INSUR            0         401         625           0           0          165
```

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| HARV | 0 | 0 | 69 | 0 | 52 | 50 |
| MHLR | 40 | 40 | 40 | 0 | 40 | 40 |
| KWHR | 329 | 329 | 329 | 0 | 329 | 329 |
| WAT | 121 | 330 | 228 | 0 | 95 | 180 |
| ELEC | 399 | 499 | 273 | 0 | 157 | 413 |
| CAP | 130 | 77 | 126 | 0 | 97 | 0 |
| FUEL | 212 | 429 | 234 | 0 | 119 | 236 |
| MAINT | 589 | 795 | 103 | 0 | 279 | 0 |
| LABOR | 760 | 757 | 358 | 0 | 446 | 75 |
| + | GRNDNUT.OL | GRNDNUT.VL | GRNDNUT.AT | GRNDNUT.BL | GRNDNUT.NB | GRNDNUT.GWK |
| PRICE | 2167 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 864 | 2414 |
| YIELD | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 3 |
| SEED | 1200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 383 | 675 |
| FERT | 1333 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 849 | 725 |
| HERB | 67 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 6 | 295 |
| PEST | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 396 |
| INSUR | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 217 |
| HARV | 67 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 52 | 340 |
| MHLR | 312 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 312 | 312 |
| KWHR | 343 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 343 | 343 |
| WAT | 102 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 82 | 128 |
| ELEC | 336 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 135 | 307 |
| CAP | 260 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 145 | 203 |
| FUEL | 425 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 179 | 246 |
| MAINT | 1178 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 419 | 798 |
| LABOR | 1521 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 669 | 90 |
| + | POTATO.OL | POTATO.VL | POTATO.AT | POTATO.BL | POTATO.NB | POTATO.GWK |
| PRICE | 633 | 955 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 950 |
| YIELD | 30 | 45 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 35 |
| SEED | 1500 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 6800 |
| FERT | 1000 | 17257 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2710 |
| HERB | 700 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| PEST | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2760 |
| INSUR | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| HARV | 283 | 63 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 63 |
| MHLR | 424 | 424 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 424 |
| KWHR | 500 | 500 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 500 |
| WAT | 141 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 144 |
| ELEC | 466 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 318 |
| CAP | 521 | 307 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 296 |
| FUEL | 849 | 1717 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 359 |
| MAINT | 2356 | 3179 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2768 |
| LABOR | 3041 | 3026 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 795 |
| + | COTTON.OL | COTTON.VL | COTTON.AT | COTTON.BL | COTTON.NB | COTTON.GWK |
| PRICE | 0 | 2631 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 2057 |
| YIELD | 0 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3.4 |
| SEED | 0 | 102 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 141 |
| FERT | 0 | 158 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1022 |
| HERB | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 299 |
| PEST | 0 | 71 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 496 |
| INSUR | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 902 |
| HARV | 0 | 501 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 333 |
| MHLR | 0 | 216 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 216 |
| KWHR | 0 | 329 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 329 |
| WAT | 0 | 173 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 212 |
| ELEC | 0 | 262 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 468 |
| CAP | 0 | 153 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 153 |
| FUEL | 0 | 859 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 236 |
| MAINT | 0 | 1590 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| LABOR | 0 | 1513 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 405 |
| + | LUCERNE.OL | LUCERNE.VL | LUCERNE.AT | LUCERNE.BL | LUCERNE.NB | LUCERNE.GWK |
| PRICE | 413 | 0 | 393 | 375 | 115 | 345 |
| YIELD | 15 | 0 | 17 | 15 | 19 | 18 |

```
SEED            0          0        130        210        116         91
FERT            0          0        228        690        861        650
HERB            0          0          0        188          6        264
PEST            0          0          0          0          0         15
INSUR           0          0          0          0          0          0
HARV           23          0         23         60         32         23
MHLR           56          0         56         56         56         56
KWHR          357          0        357        357        357        357
WAT           186          0        398        196         82        299
ELEC          617          0        477        132        136        702
CAP           260          0        506          0        193        192
FUEL          425          0        937        653        239        240
MAINT        1178          0        412          0        558        274
LABOR        1521          0       1433       2683        892        120
;
TABLE  SOIL_D(S,IS,DS,SR) Farm specific soil types
* The model will not solve if the SUM of the values in this table do not equal
* the farm size as specified in the SCALAR IA.
* The full martix is given for OL only-for VL, AT, BL & NB on necessary fields
          NDS.OL  ADS.OL  WLS.OL  LDS.OL
LMS.FIS                           30
LMS.CPI    100      20            40
LMS.DIS
SNL.FIS                    5
SNL.CPI                    5
SNL.DIS
SNC.FIS
SNC.CPI
SNC.DIS
CLY.FIS
CLY.CPI
CLY.DIS
+          NDS.VL  ADS.VL  WLS.VL  LDS.VL
SNL.CPI      50
SNL.DIS      61
SNC.CPI      200      120
CLY.FIS                             30
+          NDS.AT  ADS.AT  WLS.AT  LDS.AT
CLY.FIS                             22
+          NDS.BL  ADS.BL  WLS.BL  LDS.BL
CLY.FIS                             50
+          NDS.NB  ADS.NB  WLS.NB  LDS.NB
LMS.FIS                       10        20
LMS.CPI      100      10
LMS.DIS                               5

*********************************** FIXED DATA ***********************************
SET         LF       Leaching fract. /LF0,LF5,LF10,LF15,LF20,LF25/;
PARAMETER   LFV(LF)  Assigning values to leaching fraction variable names
          / LF0    0.00
            LF5    0.05
            LF10   0.10
            LF15   0.15
            LF20   0.20
            LF25   0.25   /;
PARAMETER   FRPY(FPY)  Fixed PreYear fine (R per mm) water overused
          / WFPY   1.00 /;
PARAMETER   FRAY(FAY)  AftYear stepped fine (% of normal R per mm added
          / WF1    0.50
            WF2    1.00
            WF3    1.50
            WF4    2.00  /;
TABLE TRSH_FNCT(C,*) y = - V1 x + V2
```

```
                          V1          V2
            WHEAT       1400.00    2000.00
            MAIZE        843.17    1011.50
            GRNDNUT      344.49     663.79
            POTATO       843.17    1011.50
            COTTON      1874.00    2658.30
            LUCERNE     1356.80    1558.50  ;
TABLE       CROP_DATA     (C, *)
          WREQ_PRE   WREQ_AFT    TRSH     GRAD
*         mm/PreYr   mm/AftYr    mS/m   %/mS/m
WHEAT          660          0     600   0.071
MAIZE            0        700     170    0.12
GRNDNUT          0        590     320    0.29
POTATO           0        580     170    0.12
COTTON         220        680     770   0.052
LUCERNE        479        791     200   0.073   ;


* ---------------------------- EC SCENARIO DATA ----------------------------
TABLE  MAveECiw(T,SR) Here farm specfic data needs to be filled in.(EC in mS\m)
                 OL       BL       AT       VL       NB
*Best '98     OVIB     DWAF     DWAF     OVIB     DWAF
Jan              96       51       52       45       19
Feb              91       50       52       56       20
Mar              72       38       42       64       18
Apr              54       43       44       40       19
May             102       65       68       65       20
Jun             109       85       91       63       21
Jul              97       94       91       59       20
Aug              99       86       86       62       19
Sep             119       68       77       74       19
Oct             130       23       28       84       20
Nov             113       47       53       87       20
Dec              97       75       80       45       20
*Ave:          98.3     60.4     63.7     62.0     19.6

*************************************************************************
PARAM
*   ----------------------   SET   PARAMETRIC   RANGES   ------------------------
PARAM
*************************************************************************
PARAM
SET EC Electrical Conductivity Parameters /MN3,MN2,MN1,PL1,PL2,PL3,EC98/;
PARAMETER PP(EC) Parameter percentage
           /MN3  -0.3
            MN2  -0.2
            MN1  -0.1
            EC98  0.0
            PL1   0.1
            PL2   0.2
            PL3   0.3 /;

PARAMETER RAIN(T) Rainfall doesn't vary significantly to have seperate values
          / JAN   29.4
            FEB   76.0
            MAR   70.5
            APR   27.9
            MAY    5.7
            JUN    3.6
            JUL    1.8
            AUG    7.5
            SEP   12.3
            OCT   28.4
```

```
            NOV    29.3
            DEC    42.3 /;
***************** VALUE JUDGEMENT / CALIBRATION DATA ************************
PARAMETER PCLT(C) Production Capital Loan Term (months)
        / WHEAT       6
          MAIZE       6
          GRNDNUT     9
          POTATO      5
          COTTON      7
          LUCERNE     3  /  ;
PARAMETER ADTC(S)   The total per ha cost of installing artificial drainage on
        / LMS     15000
          SNL     17000
          SNC     20000
          CLY     25000 / ;
Parameter ISMLF(IS)  The Irrigation system max.% leaching capacity
        / FIS   0.60
          CPI   0.20
          DIS   0.15  /;
TABLE   ISTC(IS,*) Irrigation system transfer costs
                TSC     SALV     MAINT    LIFE  MINHA      MAXHA      INTRVL
*       R/ha  % of TSC R/Ha/Yr    YRS      HA         HA         HA
        FIS      500    0.60       10     100        1         50          1
        CPI     5000    0.10      100      20       20         80         10
        DIS     8000    0.03      500       5      0.5         10       0.25   ;

TABLE  IR_EF(C,IS) Plant irrigation water use efficiencies
*           of different types of irrigation systems(IS) on different crops (C)
*           Can be different for various crops depending on planting density.
                     FIS    CPI    DIS
        WHEAT       0.90   0.95   0.99
        MAIZE       0.90   0.95   0.99
        GRNDNUT     0.90   0.95   0.99
        POTATO      0.90   0.95   0.99
        COTTON      0.90   0.95   0.99
        LUCERNE     0.90   0.95   0.99  ;

TABLE  MLFS(S, DS)  The max.% that soils in table SOIL_DATA can be leached
                    NDS    ADS    WLS     LDS
        LMS        0.50   0.55   0.05    0.35
        SNL        0.35   0.40   0.05    0.25
        SNC        0.25   0.30   0.05    0.20
        CLY        0.15   0.20   0.05    0.10

TABLE  SWCF(S,DS,LF)  The EC_IW to ECe conversion factor.
*Determined by farm specific in field measurements(Controled Dept.Soil Science)
              LF0      LF5     LF10     LF15     LF20     LF25
LMS.NDS      2.35     2.30     2.20     1.60     1.10     1.00
LMS.ADS      2.35     2.30     2.20     1.60     1.10     1.00
LMS.LDS      6.00     4.50     3.60     3.20     2.90     2.50
LMS.WLS     10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00
SNL.NDS      2.75     2.60     2.40     1.80     1.60     1.40
SNL.ADS      2.75     2.60     2.40     1.80     1.60     1.40
SNL.LDS      6.25     4.75     4.00     3.50     3.20     2.75
SNL.WLS     10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00
SNC.NDS      3.35     3.30     3.20     2.80     2.10     1.80
SNC.ADS      3.35     3.30     3.20     2.80     2.10     1.80
SNC.LDS      6.50     5.35     4.60     3.90     3.30     2.85
SNC.WLS     10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00
CLY.NDS      4.35     4.30     4.20     3.80     3.10     1.80
CLY.ADS      4.35     4.30     4.20     3.80     3.10     1.80
CLY.LDS      7.00     5.75     5.40     4.60     4.10     3.55
CLY.WLS     10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00    10.00  ;
```

```
TABLE  LAND(T,C)  Crop LAND req. per month (1 month is 1 - 1 week is 0.25 etc.)
    WHEAT MAIZE GRNDNUT POTATO COTTON LUCERNE
JAN         1         1       1      1       1
FEB         1         1       1      1       1
MAR         1         1       1      1       1
APR         1         1       1      1       1
MAY         1         1       1              1
JUN  0.5    0.5                            1
JUL  1                                     1
AUG  1                                     1
SEP  1               0.5           0.5     1
OCT  1               1             1       1
NOV  1               1             1       1
DEC  0.25   0.75     1             1       1;

TABLE  KWHDIST(T,C)  Crop kWH distribution per month in % (NB sum crop must=1)
    WHEAT MAIZE  GRNDNUT   POTATO COTTON LUCERNE
JAN         0.1                0.2          0.1
FEB         0.1                0.1   0.05   0.1
MAR         0.05               0.1   0.1    0.2
APR                   0.2      0.2   0.25   0.1
MAY                   0.2      0.4          0.1
JUN  0.5    0.25
JUL  0.1
AUG  0.1
SEP  0.05             0.4            0.5    0.1
OCT                   0.1            0.05   0.1
NOV                   0.1            0.05   0.1
DEC  0.25   0.5                              0.1;

TABLE  LABDIST(T,C)  Labour distribution per month in % (NB sum crop must=1)
    WHEAT MAIZE  GRNDNUT   POTATO COTTON LUCERNE
JAN         0.1                0.2          0.1
FEB         0.1                0.1   0.05   0.1
MAR         0.05               0.1   0.1    0.2
APR                   0.2      0.2   0.25   0.1
MAY                   0.2      0.4          0.1
JUN  0.5    0.25
JUL  0.1
AUG  0.1
SEP  0.05             0.4            0.5    0.1
OCT                   0.1            0.05   0.1
NOV                   0.1            0.05   0.1
DEC  0.25   0.5                              0.1;

TABLE WAT_PER(T,C)  %water requirement per crop
     Wheat  Maize Potato Cotton   GRNDNUT  Lucerne
Jan          0.246  0.130  0.337    0.357    0.174
Feb          0.314  0.138  0.175    0.192    0.081
Mar          0.301  0.294  0.148    0.095    0.084
Apr          0.099  0.273  0.042    0.036    0.079
May                 0.165           0.009    0.055
Jun
Jul  0.029
Aug  0.075                                   0.055
Sep  0.206                                   0.083
Oct  0.347                  0.032    0.026   0.115
Nov  0.343                  0.083    0.052   0.137
Dec          0.040          0.183    0.233   0.137  ;

*   ------------------------------------------------------------------------
*                        PARAMETER DEFINITION SECTION
```

```
*  ------------------------------------------------------------------------------
PARAMETERS
   VARCOSTS(C,SR)          Variable costs                                    (R\ha)
   CCDAT(COSTDAT,C,SR)     Sub-regional crop cost data set                   (R\ha)
   CROP_COST(COSTDAT,C)    Farm crop cost data-Marg.AboveSpec.Costs-(Wat+Elec&Int)
   SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS)      Sub-regional specific data set from table SOIL_D   (ha)
   PLOAN(PLD,C,SR)         Production Loan required                          (R\ha)
   WATCHK(C)               Checks that SUM of %'S in Table WAT_PER = 1
   kWHDCHK(C)              Checks that SUM of %'S in Table kWHDIST = 1
   LABCHK(C)               Checks that SUM of %'S in Table LABDIST = 1
   SOILCHK                 Checks that values in table SOIL_DATA add up to IA
   PARAM(T,EC)             EC Parameter generator (See table MAveECiw)       (mS\m)
   COUNT(C)                Formulation Loop counter
   SOIL_D(S,IS,DS)         Equates Table SOIL_DATA to 1                       (ha)
   ST_COUNT(S)             Counts # of Ha'S to Soil Type S                    (ha)
   IS_COUNT(IS)            Counts # of Ha'S under Irrigation System IS        (ha)
   DS_COUNT(DS)            Counts # of Ha'S that are Drainage Status DS       (ha)
   STAC(S,DS)              Counts Ha'S to SoilType S and Drainage status DS   (ha)
   ADC(S)                  Annual Artificial Drainage costs on SoilType S    (R\ha)
   WSDC(S)                 Annual Artificial Drainage Costs on WL Soils      (R\ha)
   AOFSC                   Annualised On-Farm Storage costs                    (R)
   ATCFC                   Annualised Transfer Cost - Flood to Center Pivot  (R\ha)
   ATCFD                   Annualised Transfer Cost - Flood to Drip Irrigat  (R\ha)
   ATCCD                   Annualised Transfer Cost - Center Pivot to Drip   (R\ha)
   ATCCF                   Annualised Transfer Cost - Center Pivot to Flood  (R\ha)
   ATCDC                   Annualised Transfer Cost - Drip to Center Pivot   (R\ha)
   ATCDF                   Annualised Transfer Cost - Drip to Flood irrigat  (R\ha)
   TDS_IW                  Total Disolved Solids - irrigation water          (mg\l)
   EC_IW                   Electical Conductivity - irrigation water         (mS\m)
   ECe(C,S,DS,LF)          EC - soil saturation extract                      (mS\m)
   A_TDS_IW                Annual average TDS_IW              (see Table MAveECiw)
   A_EC_IW                 Annual average EC_IW             (derived from A_TDS_IW)
   M_TDS_IW(T)             Monthly Average TDS_IW             (see Table MAveECiw)
   M_EC_IW(T)              Monthly Average  EC_IW             (see Table MAveECiw)
   LAND_ONE(T,C)           Equates fractions in Table LAND_ONE to 1
   CA_EC_IW(C)             Crop Average EC_IW over months crop in soil       (mS\m)
   SUM_CW(C)               Total water applied to crop (Rainfall accntd for)  (mm)
   SUM_WR(C)               SUM of Pre&Aftyear Irrig.wat.req.(Tab.CROP_DATA)   (mm)
   SUM_TCWR                Checks if Tab.s LAND & WAT_PER are correct
   SPYIWR(C)               SUM of PRE-year irrig.water requ.(after rain)      (mm)
   SAYIWR(C)               SUM of AFT-year irrig.water requ.(after rain)      (mm)
   MRAIN(T)                Monthly Rainfall (from table MONTH_DATA)           (mm)
   A_EC_CW(C)              Average EC of irrig. + Rain Water on Crops        (mS\m)
   MC_IW_R(T,C)            Monthly crop irrigation requirement     7         (mm\ha)
   MC_W_R(T,C)             Monthly crop irrig.+Rain water applied            (mm\ha)
   MA_EC_CW(T,C)           Monthly ave. EC of crop water applied             (mS\m)
   NLF(C)                  Natural leaching factor                             (%)
   RCY(C,S,DS,LF)          Relative Crop Yield                  (Max = 1 or 100%)
   RY(C,S,DS,LF)           Transition equation for RCY         (not limited to 1)
   MLF(S,DS,IS)            Min. of soil & irrig. system max. leaching capacity (%)
   PPWR(C,LF)              Total PreYear Plant Water Requirement LF          (mm\ha)
   APWR(C,LF)              Total AftYear Plant Water Requirement LF          (mm\ha)
   PIWR(C,IS)              Total PreYear Irrigation Water Requirement        (mm\ha)
   AIWR(C,IS)              Total AftYear Irrigation Water Requirement        (mm\ha)
   LFR(C,S,DS,IS,LF)       Leaching fraction requirements                    (mm\ha)
   PID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)       PreYear Irrigation Depth                          (mm\ha)
   AID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)       AftYear Irrigation Depth                          (mm\ha)
   PWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF)       PreYear Water Loss (irrig.effic. + leaching)      (mm\ha)
   AWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF)       AftYear Water Loss (irrig.effic. + leaching)      (mm\ha)
   PWEC(C,S,DS,IS,LF)      PreYear Water+Electricity costs of PID              (R)
   AWEC(C,S,DS,IS,LF)      AftYear Water+Electricity costs of AID             (R)
   FINE_AY(FAY)            Determines volume of each AftYear Fine increment   (mm)
   GMASC(C,S,DS,IS,LF)     Gross Margin Above Specified Costs -(wat.+elec.)  (R\ha)
```

```
   I                    A variable value
;
*  ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
*  ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~ PARAMETER FORMULATION SECTION ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
*  ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

* -- Setting up table CROP_COST --
  CCDAT("PRICE",C,SR)=EBTable("PRICE",C,SR);
  CCDAT("MEY"  ,C,SR)=EBTable("YIELD",C,SR);
  CCDAT("HC"   ,C,SR)=EBTable("HARV" ,C,SR);
  CCDAT("FUEL" ,C,SR)=(EBTable("KWHR" ,C,SR)*LPKWH*FP)
                     +(EBTable("KWHR" ,C,SR)*LPKWH*FP)*FLR;
  CCDAT("MAINT",C,SR)=(EBTable("KWHR" ,C,SR)*LPKWH*FP)*FMR;
  VARCOSTS(C,SR)=
           SUM(PL, EBTable(PL,C,SR))+CCDAT("FUEL",C,SR)+CCDAT("MAINT",C,SR)
        +((SUM(PL, EBTable(PL,C,SR))+CCDAT("FUEL",C,SR)+CCDAT("MAINT",C,SR))
          *PCI*(PCLT(C)/12));
  CCDAT("FVC"  ,C,SR)= VARCOSTS(C,SR);
  CCDAT("MASC" ,C,SR)= (CCDAT("PRICE",C,SR)*CCDAT("MEY",C,SR))
                       -(CCDAT("HC",C,SR)   *CCDAT("MEY",C,SR))
                       - CCDAT("FVC",C,SR);
* -- Calculating the production loan required per ha in "NB" --          GWK---
* -- using either GWK CEBs or case study farm CEBs                       GWK---
  CROP_COST(COSTDAT,C)=CCDAT(COSTDAT,C,"NB");
  PLOAN  ("AMT",C,"NB")= SUM(PL, EBTable(PL,C,"NB"))
                       + CCDAT("FUEL" ,C,"NB")+CCDAT("MAINT",C,"NB");
  PLOAN  ("TRM",C,"NB")= PCLT(C);
  PLOAN  ("INT",C,"NB")= PLOAN("AMT",C,"NB")*PCI*(PCLT(C)/12);
  EBTable("INT",C,"NB")= PLOAN("INT",C,"NB");
*End of GWK CEBs                                                         GWK---
* -- Calculating the production loan required per ha in all the sub-regions ---
  PLOAN  ("AMT",C,SR)= SUM(PL, EBTable(PL,C,SR));
  PLOAN  ("TRM",C,SR)= PCLT(C);
  PLOAN  ("INT",C,SR)= PLOAN("AMT",C,SR)*PCI*(PCLT(C)/12);
  EBTable("INT",C,SR)= PLOAN("INT",C,SR);

* -- Setting up table SOIL_DATA --
SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS)=SOIL_D(S,IS,DS,"NB");

*CHECKS MONTHLY WATER USAGE% PER CROP = 1 & SUM OF SOIL TYPES AND CLASSES=IA
*-------------------------------------------------------------------------
  WATCHK (C)=SUM((T),       WAT_PER(T,C)      );
  kWHDCHK(C)=SUM((T),       kWHDIST(T,C)      );
  LABCHK (C)=SUM((T),       LABDIST(T,C)      );
  SOILCHK   =SUM((S,IS,DS), SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS));
LOOP (C,
   abort$(round(WATCHK(C),2) <> 1)
      "Crop monthly water usage %s must add up to 1"
   abort$(round(kWHDCHK(C),2) <> 1)
      "kW hour usage %s must add up to 1"
   abort$(round(LABCHK(C),2) <> 1)
      " Labour usage %s must add up to 1"
      );
abort$(round(SOILCHK,0)<>CSFD("NB","IA"))
      "Areas in table SOIL_DATA must add up to scalar IA";

ST_COUNT(S)=0; IS_COUNT(IS)=0; DS_COUNT(DS)=0; STAC(S,DS)=0;
LOOP ((S,IS,DS),
   If (SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS)>0,
       SOILD(S,IS,DS)=SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS)/SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS);
       ST_COUNT(S)=ST_COUNT(S)+SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS);
       IS_COUNT(IS)=IS_COUNT(IS)+SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS);
       DS_COUNT(DS)=DS_COUNT(DS)+SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS);
```

```
      STAC(S,DS)=STAC(S,DS)+SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS);
   Else
      SOILD(S,IS,DS)=0;     ));

*---------------------- DRAINAGE COSTS ANUALIZED -----------------------------
 ADC(S)=ADTC(S)*( (LTI*(1+LTI)**LTT) / (((1+LTI)**LTT)-1) );
 WSDC(S)=ADC(S) * WLSDF;
*--------------------- ON-FARM STORAGE DAM COST ANUALIZED ---------------------
 AOFSC=COFSD *( (LTI*(1+LTI)**LTT) / (((1+LTI)**LTT)-1) );

*---------------------- IRRIGATION SYSTEM COSTS ANUALIZED ---------------------
 ATCFC=((ISTC("CPI","TSC")-(ISTC("FIS","TSC")*ISTC("FIS","SALV")))
      *( (LTI*(1+LTI)**LTT) / (((1+LTI)**LTT)-1) ))+ISTC("CPI","MAINT");
 ATCFD=((ISTC("DIS","TSC")-(ISTC("FIS","TSC")*ISTC("FIS","SALV")))
      *( (LTI*(1+LTI)**LTT) / (((1+LTI)**LTT)-1) ))+ISTC("DIS","MAINT");
 ATCCD=((ISTC("DIS","TSC")-(ISTC("CPI","TSC")*ISTC("CPI","SALV")))
      *( (LTI*(1+LTI)**LTT) / (((1+LTI)**LTT)-1) ))+ISTC("DIS","MAINT");
 ATCCF=((ISTC("FIS","TSC")-(ISTC("CPI","TSC")*ISTC("CPI","SALV")))
      *( (LTI*(1+LTI)**LTT) / (((1+LTI)**LTT)-1) ))+ISTC("FIS","MAINT");
 ATCDC=((ISTC("CPI","TSC")-(ISTC("DIS","TSC")*ISTC("DIS","SALV")))
      *( (LTI*(1+LTI)**LTT) / (((1+LTI)**LTT)-1) ))+ISTC("CPI","MAINT");
 ATCDF=((ISTC("FIS","TSC")-(ISTC("DIS","TSC")*ISTC("DIS","SALV")))
      *( (LTI*(1+LTI)**LTT) / (((1+LTI)**LTT)-1) ))+ISTC("FIS","MAINT");

* -------------------- CALCULATING THE THRESHOLD % FROM TABLE TRSH_FNCT -------
TRSH_PER(C,YP)=-TRSH_FNCT(C,"V1")*YPER(YP)+TRSH_FNCT(C,"V2");

*  ---------------------- WATER REQUITEMENT PARAMETERS -------------------------
   SUM_WR(C)=CROP_DATA(C,"WREQ_PRE")+CROP_DATA(C,"WREQ_AFT");
   MC_IW_R(T,C)   = WAT_PER(T,C)*SUM_WR(C);
   MC_W_R(T,C)    = MC_IW_R(T,C)+(RAIN(T)*LAND(T,C));
   SUM_CW(C)      = SUM(T, MC_W_R(T,C));

*  --------To determine the natural leaching factor (NLF) that does occur-------
   NLF(C)= (-(SUM(T, MIN((MC_IW_R(T,C)-(RAIN(T)*LAND(T,C))),0)))) / SUM_WR(C);
   SPYIWR(C) = SUM( (PY), MC_IW_R(PY,C));
   SAYIWR(C) = SUM( (AY), MC_IW_R(AY,C));
   MLF(S,DS,IS)=MIN(ISMLF(IS),MLFS(S,DS));
   PARAM(T,EC)=MAveECiw(T,"NB")+(MAveECiw(T,"NB")*PP(EC));

*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~OPTIMIZATION SECTION ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
*   ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

FREE VARIABLES
  NR                    Net Revenue
POSITIVE VARIABLES
  FINES(F)               Water overuse steps F-different FINES are charged (mm)
  TRANS_P2A              Pre-Year water not used transfered to Aft-Year    (mm)
  TRANS_W2L(S,IS)        Soil Transfer - WL to Ltd.drained soils           (ha)
  TRANS_W2A(S,IS)        Soil Transfer - WL to Artific.drained soils       (ha)
  TRANS_L2A(S,IS)        Soil Transfer - Ltd. to Artific.drained soils     (ha)
  TRANS_F2C(S,DS)        Irrigation system transfer. Flood to Center Pivot (ha)
  TRANS_F2D(S,DS)        Irrigation system transfer. Flood to a Drip System(ha)
  TRANS_C2F(S,DS)        Irrigation system transfer. Center Pivot to Flood (ha)
  TRANS_C2D(S,DS)        Irrigation system transfer. Center Pivot to a Drip(ha)
  TRANS_D2F(S,DS)        Irrigation system transfer. Drip to Center Pivot  (ha)
  TRANS_D2C(S,DS)        Irrigation system transfer. Drip to Flood         (ha)
  ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF) Ha'S of crop C to grow on S DS IS YP              (ha)
  NPSD                  Non-Point Source Discharge counter                (mm)
  OFS                   On Farm Storage management OPTION
EQUATIONS
  LAND_BAL           LAND Balance
```

```
  SIDBalWF(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - WL\FLOOD
  SIDBalWC(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - WL\CP
  SIDBalWD(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - WL\
  SIDBalLF(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - LD\FLOOD
  SIDBalLC(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - LD\CP
  SIDBalLD(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - LD\DRIP
  SIDBalAF(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - AD\FLOOD
  SIDBalAC(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - AD\CP
  SIDBalAD(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - AD\DRIP
  SIDBalNF(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - ND\FLOOD
  SIDBalNC(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - AD\CP
  SIDBalND(S,IS,DS) Soil Irrigation and Drainage status Balance - AD\DRIP
  DST_WF(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from waterlogged to limited drainage - Flood
  DST_WC(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from waterlogged to limited drainage - CP
  DST_WD(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from waterlogged to limited drainage - Drip
  DST_LF(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from waterlogged to limited drainage - Flood
  DST_LC(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from waterlogged to limited drainage - CP
  DST_LD(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from waterlogged to limited drainage - Drip
  DST_AF(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from ltd. drainage to artif. drainage-Flood
  DST_AC(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from ltd. drainage to artif. drainage-CP
  DST_AD(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from ltd. drainage to artif. drainage-Drip
  DST_NF(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from nat. drainage to artif. drainage-Flood
  DST_NC(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from nat. drainage to artif. drainage-CP
  DST_ND(S,IS,DS)   Soil transfer from nat. drainage to artif. drainage-Drip
  IST_WF(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Waterlogged - Flood
  IST_WC(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Waterlogged - Center Pivot
  IST_WD(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Waterlogged - Drip
  IST_LF(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Limited drainage - Flood
  IST_LC(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Limited drainage-Center Pivot
  IST_LD(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Limited drainage - Drip
  IST_AF(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Artificially drained - Flood
  IST_AC(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Artif. drained - Center Pivot
  IST_AD(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Artificially drained - Drip
  IST_NF(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Naturally drained - Flood
  IST_NC(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Naturally drained-Center Pivot
  IST_ND(S,IS,DS)   Irrigation system transfer. Naturally drained - Drip
  ROTATION(T)       To make sure only 1 crop planted per ha in any season
  PotCons           POTATO Constraint
  PotDS             No Potatoes on soils not naturally or Artificially drained
  PotIS             No Potatoes under flood Irrigation Systems  WhtMax
  WhtMax            Max. WHEAT that can be planted
  GNMax(GN)         Max. ha of GROUNDNUTS that can be planted
  GnSand(GN)        Groundnuts only to be planted on LOAMY SAND type soils
  GnDS(GN)          Constraining groundnuts to only be grown on sandy soils
  DRIP_CONS         Limits crops that can be grown under DRIP Irrigation
  MAX_QUOTA         Maximum water quota constraint
  PY_QUOTA          Max PreYear withdrawls
  AY_QUOTA          Max AftYear withdrawls
  RFC               Irrigation water Return Flows Counter
  MRF               Maximum Return Flows allowed constrainer
  SDC(C,S,DS,IS,LF) Soil Drainage Constraint
  PCC               Production Capital Constraint
  FCLC              Fixed Capital Loan Constraint
  OBJN              Objective Function              ;

* ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~ EQUATIONS   I M P L E M E N T A T I O N ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
*------------------------------ L A N D  constraints -------------------------
LAND_BAL..              SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF))
                                    =l= CSFD("NB","IA")*2;
SIDBalWF(S,FTI,WLDS).. SUM((C,LF), ACTIVITY(C,S,WLDS,FTI,LF))
                              +TRANS_W2L(S,FTI) +TRANS_W2A(S,FTI)
                              +TRANS_F2C(S,WLDS)+TRANS_F2D(S,WLDS)
                              -TRANS_C2F(S,WLDS)-TRANS_D2F(S,WLDS)
```

```
                                =l= SOIL_DATA(S,FTI,WLDS);
SIDBalWC(S,CTI,WLDS)..                          "
SIDBalWD(S,DTI,WLDS)..                          "
SIDBalLF(S,FTI,LDDS)..                          "
SIDBalLC(S,CTI,LDDS)..                          "
SIDBalLD(S,DTI,LDDS)..                          "
SIDBalAF(S,FTI,ADDS)..                          "
SIDBalAC(S,CTI,ADDS)..                          "
SIDBalAD(S,DTI,ADDS)..                          "
SIDBalNF(S,FTI,NDDS)..                          "
SIDBalNC(S,CTI,NDDS)..                          "
SIDBalND(S,DTI,NDDS)..                          "

DST_WF(S,FTI,WLDS).. SUM((C,LF), ACTIVITY(C,S,WLDS,FTI,LF))
                                +TRANS_W2L(S,FTI) +TRANS_W2A(S,FTI)
                                +TRANS_F2C(S,WLDS)+TRANS_F2D(S,WLDS)
                                -TRANS_C2F(S,WLDS)-TRANS_D2F(S,WLDS)
                                =l= SOIL_DATA(S,FTI,WLDS);
DST_WC(S,CTI,WLDS)..                            "
DST_WD(S,DTI,WLDS)..                            "
DST_LF(S,FTI,LDDS)..                            "
DST_LC(S,CTI,LDDS)..                            "
DST_LD(S,DTI,LDDS)..                            "
DST_AF(S,FTI,ADDS)..                            "
DST_AC(S,CTI,ADDS)..                            "
DST_AD(S,DTI,ADDS)..                            "
DST_NF(S,FTI,NDDS)..                            "
DST_NC(S,CTI,NDDS)..                            "
DST_ND(S,DTI,NDDS)..                            "

IST_WF(S,FTI,WLDS).. SUM((C,LF), ACTIVITY(C,S,WLDS,FTI,LF))
                               +TRANS_W2L(S,FTI) +TRANS_W2A(S,FTI)
                               +TRANS_F2C(S,WLDS)+TRANS_F2D(S,WLDS)
                               -TRANS_C2F(S,WLDS)-TRANS_D2F(S,WLDS)
                               =l= SOIL_DATA(S,FTI,WLDS);
IST_WC(S,CTI,WLDS)..                            "
IST_WD(S,DTI,WLDS)..                            "
IST_LF(S,FTI,LDDS)..                            "
IST_LC(S,CTI,LDDS)..                            "
IST_LD(S,DTI,LDDS)..                            "
IST_AF(S,FTI,ADDS)..                            "
IST_AC(S,CTI,ADDS)..                            "
IST_AD(S,DTI,ADDS)..                            "
IST_NF(S,FTI,NDDS)..                            "
IST_NC(S,CTI,NDDS)..                            "
IST_ND(S,DTI,NDDS)..                            "

*-------------------- C R O P   R O T A T I O N  Constraints -----------------
ROTATION(T)..     SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*LAND(T,C))
                                      =l=CSFD("NB","IA") ;
PotCons..         SUM((POT,S,DS,IS,LF), ACTIVITY(POT,S,DS,IS,LF))=l= MAXPOT
                 *(SUM((S,IS,DS),    SOIL_DATA(S,IS,DS))
                  -SUM((S,IS,NPDS), SOIL_DATA(S,IS,NPDS))
                 + SUM((S,IS), TRANS_L2A(S,IS) + TRANS_W2A(S,IS) )
                 + SUM((S,DS), TRANS_F2C(S,DS) + TRANS_F2D(S,DS) )
                 - SUM((S,DS), TRANS_C2F(S,DS) - TRANS_D2F(S,DS) ) );
PotDS..           SUM((POT,S,NPDS,IS ,LF), ACTIVITY(POT,S,NPDS,IS ,LF)) =e=0;
PotIS..           SUM((POT,S,  DS,FTI,LF), ACTIVITY(POT,S,  DS,FTI,LF)) =e=0;
WhtMax..          SUM((WHT,S,DS,IS,LF),    ACTIVITY(WHT,S,DS,IS,LF))
                                            =l=CSFD("NB","IR") ;
GnSand(GN)..    SUM((NOTLMS,DS,IS,LF),   ACTIVITY(GN,NOTLMS,DS  ,IS,LF))=l=0;
GnDS(GN)..      SUM((S,NPDS,DS,IS,LF),   ACTIVITY(GN,S     ,NPDS,IS,LF))=l=0;
GnMax(GN)..     SUM((S,DS,IS,LF),        ACTIVITY(GN,S,DS,IS,LF))
```

```
* ----------------- W A T E R  U S E  &  F I N E  Constraints ---------------
DRIP_CONS..    SUM((NODRIP,S,DS,DTI,LF), ACTIVITY(NODRIP,S,DS,DTI,LF))=e= 0;
MAX_QUOTA..   (SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), PID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
             +(SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), AID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
             -(SUM(FPY, FINES(FPY)))
             -(SUM(FAY, FINES(FAY)))              =l= CSFD("NB","IR")*IQ;
PY_QUOTA..    (SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), PID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
             -(SUM(FPY, FINES(FPY)))+ TRANS_P2A =l= CSFD("NB","IR")*IQ*PYWU;
AY_QUOTA..    (SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), AID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
             -(SUM(FAY, FINES(FAY)))- TRANS_P2A =l= CSFD("NB","IR")*IQ ;
RFC.. NPSD=e=(SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), PWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF))
             )+(SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), AWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF))
             )- (VOFSD*OFS)
              - (EVAPY*OFS);
MRF..        (SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), PWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))+
             (SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), AWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
             - (VOFSD*OFS)
             - (EVAPY*OFS)
               =L= MAXRF*CSFD("NB","IR") ;
SDC(C,S,DS,IS,LF).. LFR(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)
                    =l= (MLF(S,DS,IS)-NLF(C))*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF);

* -------------------- F I N A N C I A L  Constraints ----------------------
PCC..    +(SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), PLOAN("AMT",C,"NB")*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
         +(SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), PID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
                                        *(CSFD("NB","WC")+CSFD("NB","PC"))
         +(SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), AID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
                                        *(CSFD("NB","WC")+CSFD("NB","PC"))
         +(SUM(FAY, FINES(FAY)*(CSFD("NB","WC")+(FRAY(FAY)*CSFD("NB","WC")))))
         +(SUM(FPY, FINES(FPY)*FRPY(FPY)))
         +(SUM(FAY, FINES(FAY)*CSFD("NB","PC")))
         +(SUM(FPY, FINES(FPY)*CSFD("NB","PC")))
         +(SUM((S,IS), TRANS_W2L(S,IS) * WSDC(S)))
         +(SUM((S,IS), TRANS_L2A(S,IS) *(ADC(S)-WSDC(S))))
         +(SUM((S,IS), TRANS_W2A(S,IS) * ADC(S)))
         +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_F2C(S,DS))* ATCFC)
         +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_F2D(S,DS))* ATCFD)
         +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_C2F(S,DS))* ATCCF)
         +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_C2D(S,DS))* ATCCD)
         +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_D2F(S,DS))* ATCDF)
         +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_D2C(S,DS))* ATCDC)
         + (OFS * AOFSC)
          =l= CSFD("NB","MPC");
*~Production capital includes the anualised cost of management options, water ~
*~costs & fines while:                                                        ~
*~Fixed capital includes the total capital costs of the management options    ~

FCLC..           (OFS * COFSD)
                 +(SUM((S,IS), TRANS_W2L(S,IS) *(ADTC(S)*WLSDF)))
                 +(SUM((S,IS), TRANS_L2A(S,IS) *(ADTC(S)-(ADTC(S)*WLSDF))))
                 +(SUM((S,IS), TRANS_W2A(S,IS) * ADTC(S)))
                 +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_F2C(S,DS))* ISTC("CPI","TSC"))
                 +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_F2D(S,DS))* ISTC("DIS","TSC"))
                 +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_C2F(S,DS))* ISTC("FIS","TSC"))
                 +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_C2D(S,DS))* ISTC("DIS","TSC"))
                 +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_D2F(S,DS))* ISTC("FIS","TSC"))
                 +(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_D2C(S,DS))* ISTC("CPI","TSC"))
                 =l= CSFD("NB","MCL");

OBJN.. NR=e=(SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), GMASC(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)
         ))-(SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), PID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
                                        *(CSFD("NB","WC")+CSFD("NB","PC"))
```

```
          -(SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), AID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY(C,S,DS,IS,LF)))
                                        *(CSFD("NB","WC")+CSFD("NB","PC"));
          -(SUM(FAY, (CSFD("NB","WC")+(FRAY(FAY)*CSFD("NB","WC")))*FINES(FAY)))
          -(SUM(FPY, FINES(FPY)*FRPY(FPY)))
          -(SUM(FAY, FINES(FAY)*CSFD("NB","PC")))
          -(SUM(FPY, FINES(FPY)*CSFD("NB","PC")))
          -(SUM((S,IS), TRANS_W2L(S,IS) * WSDC(S)))
          -(SUM((S,IS), TRANS_L2A(S,IS) *(ADC(S)-WSDC(S))))
          -(SUM((S,IS), TRANS_W2A(S,IS) * ADC(S)))
          -(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_F2C(S,DS))* ATCFC)
          -(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_F2D(S,DS))* ATCFD)
          -(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_C2F(S,DS))* ATCCF)
          -(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_C2D(S,DS))* ATCCD)
          -(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_D2F(S,DS))* ATCDF)
          -(SUM((S,DS), TRANS_D2C(S,DS))* ATCDC)
          -(OFS * AOFSC) ;

Model SMLF /ALL/ ;
  SMLF.workspace = 12;
  FINES.UP(F) = WFI*CSFD("NB","IR");

*     ------- P A R A M E R T I C A L   R E S U L T S -------------------------
SET     ITEMS    / X   Ha's Crop Produced
                   TF  Total Water Fine     (R)
                   RF  Return Flows        (mm)
                   QDm Max Quota dual      (ha)
                   QDp Pre-year Quota dual(ha)
                   QDa Aft-year Quota dual(ha)
                   PC  Production capital   (R)
                   PCd Prod. capital dual   (R)
                   FC  Fixed capital        (R)
                   FCd Fixed capital dual   (R)
                   TGM Total Gross Margin   (R) /;
PARAMETER
          TGMRESULT(ITEMS,EC)  Total gross margin for each level of WQ
          TFRESULT(ITEMS,EC)   Total Fines for each level of Water quality
          FSPPY(FPY,EC)        Fine Shadow Prices for the Pre-Year
          FSPAY(FAY,EC)        Fine Shadow Prices for the Aft-Year
          RFRESULT(ITEMS,EC)   Total Leaching for each level of Water quality
          RFDUAL(ITEMS,EC)     Returnflow constraints dual
          QUOTAmDUAL(ITEMS,EC) Maximum water quota dual values
          QUOTApDUAL(ITEMS,EC) Pre-year water quota dual values
          QUOTAaDUAL(ITEMS,EC) Aft-year water quota dual values
          ProdCap(ITEMS,EC)    Production capital requirements
          PCDual(ITEMS,EC)     Production capital dual values
          FixdCap(ITEMS,EC)    Fixed capital requirements
          FCDual(ITEMS,EC)     Fixed capital dual values
          XRESULT(C,EC)        Optimal crop composition for each level of WQ ;

* ---------------------------------------------------------------------------
* -------------------- S T A R T   O F   E C   L O O P ----------------------
LOOP (EC,
      M_EC_IW(T)=PARAM(T,EC);
      MA_EC_CW(T,C) = ((M_EC_IW(T)*MC_IW_R(T,C))+(RAIN(T)*LAND(T,C)*ECRW))
                      /((MC_IW_R(T,C)+(RAIN(T)*LAND(T,C))+nzero));
      A_EC_CW(C)    = (SUM(T, M_EC_IW(T)*MC_IW_R(T,C) + RAIN(T)*LAND(T,C)*ECRW))
                      /(SUM_CW(C));
*     ---------------------------------------------------------------------
*     *************** CORE FORMULA OF THE LF MODEL ************************
*     ---------------------------------------------------------------------

*     -------------WHERE SOIL WATER CONVERSION FACTORS ARE USED -------------
*     --Effect of rainfall taken into account in the calculation of A_EC_CW(C)-
```

```
      ECe(C,S,DS,LF) = A_EC_CW(C) * SWCF(S,DS,LF);

*     --------------CALCULATION OF REALTIVE CROP YIELD-------------------------
*     -----------Not taking leaf burm factor into account---------------------
      RY(C,S,DS,LF)=(100-CROP_DATA(C,"GRAD")*(ECe(C,S,DS,LF)
                        -CROP_DATA(C,"TRSH")))/100;
      RY(C,S,DS,LF)=MIN(1,RY(C,S,DS,LF));
      RY(C,S,DS,LF)=MAX(0,RY(C,S,DS,LF));

*     ---- Crop\Irrigation Water and wastage calculations---------------------
      PPWR(C,LF)=SPYIWR(C)/(1-LFV(LF));
      APWR(C,LF)=SAYIWR(C)/(1-LFV(LF));
      PIWR(C,IS)=SPYIWR(C)/IR_EF(C,IS);
      AIWR(C,IS)=SAYIWR(C)/IR_EF(C,IS);

*     -ASSIGNING PID\AID THE HIGHEST VALE - PLANT OR IRRIG. WATER REQUIREMENT--
      PID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=MAX(PIWR(C,IS),PPWR(C,LF) );
      PWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=MAX((PIWR(C,IS)-PPWR(C,LF)),(PPWR(C,LF)-SPYIWR(C)));
      AID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=MAX(AIWR(C,IS),APWR(C,LF) );
      AWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=MAX((AIWR(C,IS)-APWR(C,LF)),(APWR(C,LF)-SAYIWR(C)));
      LFR(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=(PWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF)+AWL(C,S,DS,IS,LF))
                        /(PID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)+AID(C,S,DS,IS,LF));

*     --------------- CALCULATING WATER AND PUMPING COSTS ---------------------
      PWEC(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=PID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*(CSFD("NB","WC")+CSFD("NB","PC"));
      AWEC(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=AID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*(CSFD("NB","WC")+CSFD("NB","PC"));

*     ----------------------- CALCULATING THE GROSS MARGIN --------------------
  GMASC(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=(CROP_COST("PRICE",C)*CROP_COST("MEY",C)*RY(C,S,DS,LF))
                      -(CROP_COST("hc"  ,C)*CROP_COST("MEY",C)*RY(C,S,DS,LF))
                      - CROP_COST("fvc" ,C);
      SMLF.solprint = 0.;
      Solve SMLF using LP maximizing NR;
   TGMRESULT("TGM",EC)=NR.L;
   TFRESULT("TF",EC)=SUM((FAY), (CSFD("NB","WC")+(FRAY(FAY)*CSFD("NB","WC")))
                     *FINES.L(FAY))+SUM((FPY), FINES.L(FPY)*FRPY(FPY));
   FSPPY(FPY,EC)=FINES.M(FPY);
   FSPAY(FAY,EC)=FINES.M(FAY);
   RFRESULT("RF",EC)=NPSD.l;
   RFDUAL("RF",EC)=MRF.m;
   QUOTAmDUAL("QDm",EC)=MAX_QUOTA.m;
   QUOTApDUAL("QDp",EC)=PY_QUOTA.m;
   QUOTAaDUAL("QDa",EC)=AY_QUOTA.m;
   ProdCap("PC",EC)=PCC.l;
   PCdual("PCd",EC)=PCC.m;
   FixdCap("FC",EC)=FCLC.l;
   FCDual("FCd",EC)=FCLC.m;
   XRESULT(C,EC)=SUM((S,DS,IS,LF), ACTIVITY.l(C,S,DS,IS,LF));                );
* ----------------------- E N D   O F   E C   L O O P ----------------------
* --------------------------------------------------------------------------

* ---------------------------- S T A R T -----------------------------------
* ------------------------- PARAMETRIC RESULTS -----------------------------
  FILE SMP /C:\SALMOD\nb\SMPOL.prn/ ;
  PUT  SMP ;
  PUTTL SYSTEM.TITLE '      Date run: ',SYSTEM.DATE, ' Time: ', SYSTEM.TIME //;
  PUT
  'SALMOD DRAFT Results (Leaching Fractions Methodology - PARAMETRIC ANALYSIS)'
 /'Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC' //
  'PARAMETRIC MODEL RUN FOR:           ', SR.te("NB")      //;
  I=19; LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, EC.tl;                     );      PUT /;
  I=18; LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, PP(EC):5:2;                );      PUT /;
  PUT  ITEMS.te("TGM");
```

```
  I=16; LOOP (EC,I=I+8;  PUT @I, TGMRESULT("TGM",EC):7:0;   );       PUT /;
  PUT  ITEMS.te("TF");
  I=16; LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, TFRESULT ("TF" ,EC):7:0;   );       PUT /;
  PUT  ITEMS.te("RF");
  I=16; LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, RFRESULT ("RF" ,EC):7:0;   );       PUT /;
  PUT  'Returnflows duals   (R)';
  I=19; LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, RFDUAL   ("RF" ,EC):4:2;   );       PUT /;
  PUT  ITEMS.te("PC");
  I=16; LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, ProdCap  ("PC" ,EC):7:0;   );       PUT /;
  PUT  ITEMS.te("PCd");
  I=19; LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, PCDUAL   ("PCd",EC):4:2;   );       PUT /;
  PUT  ITEMS.te("FC");
  I=16; LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, FixdCap  ("FC" ,EC):7:0;   );       PUT /;
  PUT  ITEMS.te("FCd");
  I=19; LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, FCDUAL   ("FCd",EC):4:2;   );       PUT /;
  PUT /, 'WATER QUOTA SHADOW VALUE' /;
  PUT 'Max Quota'; I=19;
  LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, QUOTAmDUAL("QDm",EC):4:2          );     PUT /;
  PUT 'Pre-year Quota'; I=19;
  LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, QUOTApDUAL("QDp",EC):4:2          );     PUT /;
  PUT 'After-year Quota'; I=19;
  LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, QUOTAaDUAL("QDa",EC):4:2          );     PUT /;
  PUT /, 'WATER FINE SHADOW VALUES' / ;
  LOOP (FPY,  PUT FPY.tl;   I=19;
      LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, FSPPY(FPY,EC):4:2          );       PUT /;  );
  LOOP (FAY,  PUT FAY.tl;   I=19;
      LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, FSPAY(FAY,EC):4:2          );       PUT /;  );
  PUT /, 'OPTIMAL CROP COMPOSITION' / ;
  LOOP (C,  PUT C.tl;  I=16;
       LOOP (EC, I=I+8; PUT @I, XRESULT  (C   ,EC):7:2;    );       PUT /; );
* -------------------------- PARAMETRIC RESULTS -------------------------------
* ------------------------------- E N D -----------------------------------------

*------------------ F A R M   L E V E L   R E S U L T S ----------------------
*---------------- YIELD PERCENTAGE MODEL OUTPUT FILE GENERATOR ----------------
Parameter
   PWU(C,S,DS,IS,LF)      Pre-year water usage per crop system
   AWU(C,S,DS,IS,LF)      Pre-year water usage per crop system
   TPWU                   Total Pre-year water use
   TAWU                   Total Aft-year water use
   TWU                    Total water use
   TPWUC                  Total Pre-year water use cost
   TAWUC                  Total Aft-year water use cost
   TPWPC                  Total Pre-year water pumping cost
   TAWPC                  Total Aft-year water pumping cost
   TWUC                   Total water use cost
   TWPC                   Total water pumping cost
   TWOF                   Total water overuse fine
   FVAL(F)                Value of each fine increment
   TFVAL                  Total value of the fines
   GNW                    Growth in net worth   ;
file SMF /C:\SALMOD\nb\SMFOL.prn/;
PUT  SMF ;
PUTTL SYSTEM.TITLE '      Date run: ', SYSTEM.DATE, ' Time: ', SYSTEM.TIME //;
PUT 'SALMOD DRAFT Results (Leaching Fraction Methodology)'/
    'Model by the RAPIDS team, Dept.Ag.Econ.UFS for the WRC'//
    'GENERAL INPUT DATA   ', SR.te("NB")      /
    'Irrigable area    (ha)', CSFD("NB","IA") /
    'Irrigation rights(ha)', CSFD("NB","IR") /
    'Water cost      (R/mm)', CSFD("NB","WC") /
    'Pumping costs   (R/mm)', CSFD("NB","PC") //
    'Electrical Conductivity of the irrigation water - ECiw (mS/m)' /;
I=3; LOOP (T, PUT @I, T.tl;                  I=I+6;)     PUT /;
```

```
I=1; LOOP (T, PUT @I, MAveECiw(T,"NB"):5:0; I=I+6; )      PUT //;
PUT'SOIL TYPE  :'; I=14; LOOP (S,  PUT @I, S.tl;  I=I+4;
                                   PUT @I, ST_COUNT(S):6:1;  I=I+8; );PUT /;
PUT'IRRIG.SYST.:'; I=14; LOOP (IS, PUT @I, IS.tl; I=I+4;
                                   PUT @I, IS_COUNT(IS):6:1; I=I+8; );PUT /;
PUT'DRAIN.CLASS:'; I=14; LOOP (DS, PUT @I, DS.tl; I=I+4;
                                   PUT @I, DS_COUNT(DS):6:1; I=I+8; );PUT //;
PUT 'MODEL RESULTS'/ ;
PUT 'Optimal crop composition:'/
    'Crop'@11'Soil'@16'Class'@22'Irrig'@28'LF'@35'Yield%'@40' HECTARES'
    @50'    GMASC'@60' PYWater'@70' AYWater' /;
LOOP ((C,S,DS,IS,LF),
       PWU(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=PID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY.l(C,S,DS,IS,LF);
       AWU(C,S,DS,IS,LF)=AID(C,S,DS,IS,LF)*ACTIVITY.l(C,S,DS,IS,LF);
   if (ACTIVITY.l(C,S,DS,IS,LF)>0,
     PUT C.tl, @11, S.tl, @16, DS.tl, @22, IS.tl, @28, LF.tl,
       @35,  RY(C,S,DS,LF):4:2
       @40,  ACTIVITY.l(C,S,DS,IS,LF):8:1
       @50,  GMASC(C,S,DS,IS,LF):8:0
       @60,  PWU(C,S,DS,IS,LF):8:0
       @70,  AWU(C,S,DS,IS,LF):8:0 /                                    ) );
  TPWU=SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), PWU(C,S,DS,IS,LF));
  TAWU=SUM((C,S,DS,IS,LF), AWU(C,S,DS,IS,LF));
  TWU=TPWU+TAWU;
  TPWUC=TPWU*CSFD("NB","WC");
  TPWPC=TPWU*CSFD("NB","PC");
  TAWUC=TPWU*CSFD("NB","PC");
  TAWPC=TAWU*CSFD("NB","PC");
  TWUC=TAWUC+TPWUC;
  TWPC=TAWPC+TPWPC;
  PUT 'Total water used                (mm):', @50, TWU:8:0  @60, TPWU:8:0,
                                               @70, TAWU:8:0  /
      'Water shadow price,Max,pre-&aft-year:'  @50, Max_Quota.m:8:2
                                               @60, PY_Quota.m:8:2
                                               @70  AY_Quota.m:8:2 /
      'Unused trans. from Pre- to Aft-year :'  @70, TRANS_P2A.l:8:0 /
      'Water Usage Cost                 (R):', @50, TWUC:8:0 @60, TPWUC:8:0,
                                               @70, TAWUC:8:0 /
      'Water Pumping Cost               (R):', @50, TWPC:8:0 @60, TPWPC:8:0,
                                               @70, TAWPC:8:0 / ;
PUT   'Water overuse fines:' ;
  FVAL(FAY)=(CSFD("NB","WC")+(FRAY(FAY)*CSFD("NB","WC")))*FINES.L(FAY);
  FVAL(FPY)=FINES.L(FPY)*FRPY(FPY);
  TFVAL=SUM(F, FVAL(F));
LOOP (F,
PUT @25, F.tl,
    @30, FINES.l(F):8:0,
    @50, FVAL(F):8:0,
    @60, 'DUAL', @65, FINES.m(F):6:7      /       );
  TWOF=SUM(F, FINES.l(F));
PUT @5, 'TOTAL WATER OVERUSE',
    @30, TWOF:8:0,
    @40, 'TOTAL FINE',
    @50, TFVAL:8:0            / ;
 GNW=NR.l-CSFD("NB","FC");
PUT 'Estimated optimal net revenue (R):', @50, NR.l:8:0 /
    'Pre-determined fixed costs    (R):', @50, CSFD("NB","FC"):8:0 /
    'FARM PROFIT                   (R):', @50, GNW:8:0 /
    'Production capital requirement(R):', @50, PCC.l:8:0,
                          @38,  '(Max', CSFD("NB","MPC"):7:0, ')',
                          @60,'(DUAL=', @67, PCC.m:6:7,       ')' /
    'Fixed capital loan requirement(R):', @50, FCLC.l:8:0,
                          @38,  '(Max', CSFD("NB","MCL"):7:0, ')',
```

```
                              @60,'(DUAL=', @67, FCLC.m:6:7,      ')' // ;
PUT  'MANAGEMENT OPTIONS:' /;
PUT  'Soil Trans.WL-LD';  I=12;  LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, S.tl; ); PUT /;
LOOP (IS, I=1; PUT @I, IS.tl;
      I=8; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, TRANS_W2L.L(S,IS):8:2; ); PUT /; ); PUT /;
PUT  'Soil Trans.WL-AD';  I=12;  LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, S.tl; ); PUT /;
LOOP (IS, I=1; PUT @I, IS.tl;
      I=8; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, TRANS_W2A.L(S,IS):8:2; ); PUT /; ); PUT /;
PUT  'Soil Trans.LD-AD';  I=12;  LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, S.tl; ); PUT /;
LOOP (IS, I=1; PUT @I, IS.tl;
      I=8; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, TRANS_L2A.L(S,IS):8:2; ); PUT /; ); PUT //;
PUT  'Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-C'; I=16; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, S.tl; ); PUT /;
LOOP (DS, I=1; PUT @I, DS.tl;
      I=12; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, TRANS_F2C.L(S,DS):8:2; ); PUT /; ); PUT /;
PUT  'Irrig.Syst.Trans.F-D'; I=16; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, S.tl; ); PUT /;
LOOP (DS, I=1; PUT @I, DS.tl;
      I=12; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, TRANS_F2D.L(S,DS):8:2; ); PUT /; ); PUT /;
PUT  'Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-D'; I=16; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, S.tl; ); PUT /;
LOOP (DS, I=1; PUT @I, DS.tl;
      I=12; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, TRANS_C2D.L(S,DS):8:2; ); PUT /; ); PUT /;
PUT  'Irrig.Syst.Trans.C-F'; I=16; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, S.tl; ); PUT /;
LOOP (DS, I=1; PUT @I, DS.tl;
      I=12; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, TRANS_C2F.L(S,DS):8:2; ); PUT /; ); PUT /;
PUT  'Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-C'; I=16; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, S.tl; ); PUT /;
LOOP (DS, I=1; PUT @I, DS.tl;
      I=12; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, TRANS_D2C.L(S,DS):8:2; ); PUT /; ); PUT /;
PUT  'Irrig.Syst.Trans.D-F'; I=16; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, S.tl; ); PUT /;
LOOP (DS, I=1; PUT @I, DS.tl;
      I=12; LOOP (S, I=I+8; PUT @I, TRANS_D2F.L(S,DS):8:2; ); PUT /; );PUT //;
PUT 'Number of On-Farm Storage dams (50x50x3m) required: ',
    OFS.l:4:1 PUT @60, '(Dual ', OFS.m:8:2, ' )';
* ---------------- F A R M   L E V E L   R E S U L T S -----------------------
* -------------------------------    E N D    ------------------------------------
```

# Other related WRC reports available:

**Effect of water quality on irrigation farming along the lower Vaal River: The influence on soils and crops**

CC du Preez, MG Strydom, PAL le Roux, JP Pretorius, LD van Rensburg and ATP Bennie

It is foreseen that increasing water demand and salinisation in the Vaal River system could negatively affect irrigators in the Lower Vaal River in that they will increasingly have to contend with a water supply that is less assured and of lower quality. This exploratory investigation found the trend for water quality to deteriorate, to be much less pronounced than anticipated and to be dominated by annual and multi-year wet and dry cycles. Only isolated river stretches were exposed to relatively serious water quality problems. A comparison of a limited sample of virgin and irrigated soil profiles from irrigated areas showed that the salt content of soils was reduced under irrigation when they contained more than 4 t salt/ha$m in the virgin state, and increased under irrigation, when the virgin state salinity was lower. No decrease in crop yield was calculated with the present crop mix and the best observed water quality in various river segments, while crop yield was calculated to be reduced under the worst water quality conditions in most river stretches. Long-term model predictions indicated that all undrained soils could become unsuitable for crop production over the next 50 years as a result of excessive salt accumulation.

**Report Number: 740/1/00** **ISBN: 1 86845 673 0**

TO ORDER: Contact **Rina** or **Judas** - Telephone No: 012 330 0340
Fax Number: 012 331 2565
E-mail: publications@wrc.org.za

Water Research Commission
Private Bag X03, Gezina, 0031, South Africa
Tel: +27 12 330 0340, Fax: +27 12 331 2565
Web: http://www.wrc.org.za